

SWAHILI

BASIC COURSE

SECOND EDITION



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

E. W. STEVICK J. G. MLELA F. N. NJENGA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1968

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

BASIC COURSE SERIES

Edited by

CARLETON T. HODGE


P R E F A C E

This text is a part of the Foreign Service Institute's program in the preparation of teaching materials for certain of the most important languages of Sub-Saharan Africa. It has been produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act. The course is intended for general use by speakers of English of many occupational backgrounds who are living or expect to live in the areas where Swahili is used.

The Swahili sentences in this course were provided by F. J. Kazi and Johannes G. Mlela of Tanganyika, and by Frederick A. Njenga of Kenya. The linguist in charge was Earl W. Stevick, Coordinator of the Special African Language Program. Anicet Nkuabi and Daudi Ballali of Tanganyika, and John Ngumbi of Kenya assisted in the teaching and checked the original version of the manuscript. The original was also sent for verification to United States Foreign Service posts in Swahili-speaking areas, and Unit 1 - 80 were kindly checked by a representative of the East African Swahili Committee.

Suggestions from all the above mentioned sources have been used in the preparation of the present edition. Where there appeared to be clear disagreement among two or more critics of the original draft, the alternative wordings have usually been indicated in the text. The Foreign Service Institute, while gratefully acknowledging the generous help of the many readers of the earlier version, takes full responsibility for the present edition.

The recordings which accompany the text were made in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory, under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.

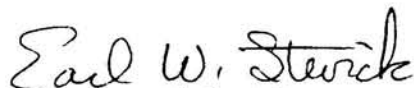

Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

The second edition incorporates certain changes and local corrections suggested by James L. Brain of Syracuse University and the State University of New York, New Paltz, who was at one time official examiner in Swahili for Tanganyika; by Margaret Bryan of the School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London; and by Frederick K. Kamoga, Instructor in Swahili at Makerere University. The changes have not been numerous enough to require preparation of a new set of tapes to replace those that accompanied the original edition.

The Institute wishes to thank these three experts for their help. Time unfortunately has not permitted some of the more fundamental changes which the authors recognize to be desirable.

The corrections were typed by Donna Kowalski and checked by Daria Pana.


Earl W. Stevick

Introduction

Swahili Basic Course aims first of all at assisting the student to develop ability in understanding and speaking everyday Swahili of a standard variety. On the basis of well-established speech habits, he can then go on with relatively high efficiency to the further skills of reading and writing.

The course is designed for use in any of three general types of study situation: (1) a full-time language program of thirty or more hours per week, (2) a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, and (3) (much the least desirable) individual study in the absence of any speaker of the language.

In any of these situations, the class should be guided in such a way that it concentrates on one small task at a time. For this reason, the 150 units of the course are comparatively short. Each unit is in turn divided into a brief dialogue (with notes) and a series of short exercises. The dialogues and exercises are further broken up into individual lines. In most of the exercises, there is a further division into two or three columns. The word or phrase at the left is called the 'cue.' The sentence in the next column is the 'desired response' to that cue. In those exercises having a third column in Swahili, the sentence in the second column is intended to serve as a secondary cue, and the corresponding sentence in the third column is the desired response to it.

In teaching with these materials, it is suggested that the instructor emphasize the following activities:

With dialogues:

1. Individual and group repetition of the dialogue line-by-line, immediately after the instructor. Books should be closed at first, so that the students may become accustomed to depending on their ears. The instructor may correct errors by repeating the mispronounced word as it should have been said.

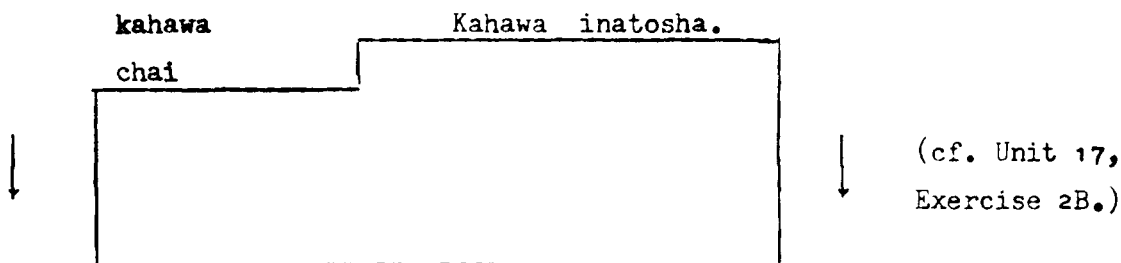
2. When the students are able to repeat the lines of the dialogue correctly, they should open their books. The instructor reads the dialogue and the class repeats, line-by-line, at the same time following with their eyes the printed words.
3. After going through the dialogue two or three times in this way, students should take turns reading aloud.
4. Finally, students should close their books, and practice assuming one of the roles in the dialogue until they are able to do it from memory--without mistakes.

With exercises:

1. Students repeat after the instructor the 'desired response' sentences of the exercise.
2. The instructor gives only the 'cue' for each line. Individual students give the desired responses.

It should be noted that very little English is needed in any of these activities. In fact, the instructor or the student who finds that more than 20% of the words he uses in class are in English, may be sure that he is proceeding with less than maximum efficiency.

For individual study, tape recordings of the dialogues and the exercises are available. It is also suggested that while practicing the exercises, the student make use of a notched card which can be slid down the page as he goes along. As soon as he has given his own response to a particular cue word or phrase, he slides the card down to reveal the answer, thus receiving immediate confirmation or correction of his own reply. At the same time, the next cue word or phrase appears in the notch:



Rate of progress and total achievement, then, should be measured in terms of answers given to the following questions:

Concerning each dialogue:

Level 1. Can the student repeat the dialogue accurately, line-by-line, after the instructor, with book closed?

Level 2. Can the student read the dialogue aloud independently of the instructor, with excellent pronunciation and intonation?

Level 3. Can the student take any role in the dialogue, without hesitation or mistakes, book closed?

Concerning each exercise:

Level 1. Can the student repeat the Swahili sentences of the dialogue accurately, line-by-line, after the instructor?

Level 2. Can the student give the Swahili sentence after hearing the Swahili cue word, or the English translation, with his book closed?

General Hints to the Instructor

1. When you speak to a student, look directly at him, and insist that he speak directly to you when he replies.

2. Don't spend too long with one student; if a student continues to make the same mistake after three or four tries, go on to another student. Later, come back to the student who made the error.

3. The students should learn to understand and speak Swahili at a normal rate of speed. For this reason, do not speak to them more slowly or clearly than the slowest and clearest style in which you might speak with another speaker of Swahili.

4. The students' books should be closed about 80% of the time in class.

5. Don't try to explain how the language works: teach the language, not the grammar.

6. Emphasize:

hearing before understanding,
hearing and understanding before repetition,
repetition before independent production,
speaking before reading and writing.

The Pronunciation of Swahili

The pronunciation of Swahili varies slightly from one geographical area to another. In addition, since most speakers of Swahili have learned it after first learning some other language, there are noticeable discrepancies among the speech of persons with different national or tribal backgrounds. The following notes do not attempt to set forth any of these variations but only to indicate those points which are essential to an intelligible and widely acceptable pronunciation of the language.

The standard treatment of this subject is A. N. Tucker and E. O. Ashton, Swahili Phonetics (Johannesburg: University of the Witwatersrand Press, 1942). It consists of bound reprints of two major articles which appeared originally in African Studies for that year.

Vowels. There are five vowels.

<u>Letter</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Examples</u>
a	When stressed, similar to <u>a</u> in <u>father</u> , or <u>ɔ</u> in (American English) <u>odd</u> . Technically: a low central unrounded vowel.	basi 'only' kitab <u>a</u> 'book'
	When unstressed, between <u>a</u> of <u>father</u> and <u>u</u> of <u>up</u> . Technically: a slightly raised low central unrounded vowel. Speakers of English must still take care not to 'reduce' the quality of unstressed /a/ as	kusoma 'to need' birika 'water vessel'

much as they would in English.

<u>Letter</u>	<u>Description</u>	<u>Examples</u>
e	<p>Similar to <u>e</u> in <u>bet</u>.</p> <p>Technically: a lax lower-mid front vowel. Other varieties of this sound have been reported in certain environments, but those allophones are absent from the speech of the two speakers who served as principal sources for this investigation.</p>	<p>kuleta 'to bring'</p> <p>kujenga 'to build'</p> <p>embe 'mango'</p>
i	<p>Roughly similar to the vowel of English <u>eat</u>.</p> <p>Technically: a high front unrounded vowel, unglided, and less tense than its nearest English counterpart.</p>	<p>vita 'war'</p> <p>rafiki 'friend'</p>
o	<p>Between the vowels of English <u>boat</u> and <u>bought</u>.</p> <p>Technically: a lax, lower-mid, back rounded vowel, unglided.</p>	<p>mtoto 'child'</p> <p>ng'ombe 'ox'</p>
u	<p>Reminiscent of the vowel of English <u>too</u>, but lying somewhere between that vowel and the vowel of <u>took</u>.</p> <p>Technically, a slightly lowered high-back rounded vowel, unglided.</p>	<p>bure 'free'</p> <p>kuruhusu 'to permit'</p>

Consonants

b, d, j, g These sounds may be pronounced as in English bow, dough, Joe, go respectively.

Technically: Bilabial, alveolar, palatal, and velar voiced stops. When not in combination with a nasal consonant, these sounds are pronounced implosively by most speakers. The sound represented by the letter j has little or no affrication.

baba 'father'
dada 'sister'
jambo 'matter'
gogo 'lag'

p, t, ch, These sounds may be pronounced as
k in English peas, tease, cheese, keys respectively.

Technically: Bilabial, alveolar, palatal, and velar unvoiced stops. The palatal stop has strong affrication. The degree of aspiration associated with these sounds varies. None of the speakers consulted in the preparation of this course has a contrast of aspirated vs. unaspirated unvoiced stops, however.

panga 'large knife'
tisa '9'
chache 'few'
kaka 'elder brother'

m, n These sounds may be pronounced as in English.

Technically: There is no noticeable difference between these sounds and the corresponding nasal sounds of English.

mama 'married woman'
nene 'fat'

ng' This sound is pronounced like ng in English sing. But in English, this sound never occurs at the beginning of a word, while in Swahili it may occur there.

ng'ombe 'ox'
ngozi 'leather'

Technically: A dorso-velar nasal resonant. Before vowels this sound

is spelled ng', but before other consonants, it is spelled n.

ny	<p>As in Spanish ca<u>ñ</u>on, Portuguese nen<u>h</u>um, French ga<u>gn</u>er. Technically: A palatal nasal. Before vowels, this sound is spelled <u>ny</u>, but before other consonants, it is spelled n.</p>	<p>nyumba 'house' ñchi 'land, country' ñje 'outside'</p>
th, dh	<p>These sounds are like the initial sounds of English <u>th</u>in and <u>th</u>en, respectively. Technically: Unvoiced and voiced ungrooved dental fricatives.</p>	<p>thelathini '30' kadhalika 'likewise'</p>
s, z,	<p>Like the initial sounds of English <u>s</u>ue, <u>z</u>oo, respectively. Technically: Alveolar grooved unvoiced fricatives.</p>	<p>saa 'hour' kuzaa 'to produce offspring'</p>
sh	<p>Like the sound spelled the same way in English <u>sh</u>e, with accompanying lip-rounding. Technically: An unvoiced palatal grooved fricative. (Note the lack of a voiced counterpart.)</p>	<p>shamba 'farm' kurusha 'to cause to fly'</p>
h	<p>Like the initial sound of English <u>h</u>ow.</p>	<p>kuhama 'to change residence'</p>

- f, v Like the initial sounds of English fine, vine, respectively. Technically: Unvoiced and voiced labio-dental fricatives.
- kuficha 'to hide'
vivu 'idle'
- r This sound is pronounced like the sound written with the same letter in the standard British pronunciation of very. It is thus not very different from the sound written tt in the common American pronunciation of witty. Technically: A voiced apico - alveolar flap.
- kuruka 'to fly'
- l, w, y These sounds may be pronounced as in English.
- kulala 'to lie down'
sawa 'equal'
haya 'these'
- gh This is the only Swahili sound that is likely to cause noticeable difficulty for speakers of English. It is made with the back of the tongue against the soft palate, in the same position as for English 'golly.' For English 'g', however, the tongue makes momentary contact with the soft palate, completely cutting off the flow of air. For Swahili gh, on the other hand, the back of the tongue does not make contact all the way across the soft palate. Instead, it comes so close to it that the flow of air from the
- ghali 'expensive'
gharama 'amount of money'

lungs is constricted. This gives rise to audible turbulence, or 'friction.'

Technically: A voiced dorso-velar fricative.

Syllabic Nasals.

In some words in which they precede other consonants, the nasal sounds may be pronounced as separate syllables. In these materials, syllabic nasals are indicated by a grave accent. This seems to be true for n, ny and ng' only when they are at the beginning of a word and when only one vowel comes after them in the word. It is also true of these three nasals that the consonants before which they occur are those which are formed at the same position of articulation as the nasal:

ñ	ñne	'four'
ny	nychi	'land'
ng'	nge	'scorpion' (pronounced ng'ge)

The sound m, on the other hand, may be syllabic in words of any length:

mgéni	'stranger'
mletée	'bring to him'
hamjúi	'he doesn't know him'

Syllabic and non-syllabic m contrast with one another in:

mbovu	'bad' (personal class singular)
mbóvu	'bad' (N class)

These are not distinguished from one another in the customary spelling of Swahili.

Stress

In general, the next to last syllable of a Swahili word or phrase receives a stress, which consists of a slight increase in loudness, usually with some increase also in length. In those instances where the stress falls

on some other syllable, its location is indicated in these materials by an acute accent: *lázima* 'necessary.'

In Swahili, each vowel counts as a syllable, and in addition, pre-consonantal nasals are sometimes syllabic. These facts must be taken into account in calculating which syllable is the next-to-last. Examples:

	<i>simletéi</i>	'I don't bring to him'
	<i>kukáa</i>	'to stay'
	<i>nilimpa</i>	'I gave to him'
	<i>kuómba</i>	'to request'
	<i>náina</i>	
or:	<i>namna</i>	'kind, sort'
	<i>hamna</i>	'you don't have'

Word Juncture.

In Swahili, there exist, at least for some speakers, two distinct pronunciations for a number of pairs of expressions which are identical with respect to their vowels and consonants. One such pair of expressions is spelled with the letters:

w a f a n y a g h a s i a

One of the pronunciations corresponding to these letters means 'they create a disturbance,' while the other means 'rioters.' The most conspicuous difference between them is that in the first, the syllable *fa* is more prominent than it is in the second. In neither pronunciation is *fa* as prominent--as heavily stressed--as the syllable *si*. We may attribute the differing degrees of stress on *fa* to the presence or absence of word boundary, writing the two pronunciations respectively:

<i>wafanya ghasia</i>	'they create a disturbance'
<i>wafanyaghasia</i>	'rioters'

In so doing, of course, we have introduced into our inventory of the Swahili sound system an entity which might be called word juncture.

Some linguists may prefer to do without the word juncture, introducing instead an intermediate degree of stress, which might be called 'secondary.' Morphological word boundaries (for almost all words) would then fall after the first syllable following a primary or secondary stress. A strictly phonemic

transcription of utterances would then contain no word spaces, and each stress would be marked explicitly.

The lessons in this book do not employ that kind of transcription. Instead, they make use of a pedagogical orthography, which is thought to be most suitable for the use of foreign learners of the language. In it, word space sets apart units (words) which have been established on a non-phonological basis; stress is written only when it does not occur on the next-to-last syllable of a word which has been established on this basis.

A practical writing system, unlike either the phonemic transcription or the pedagogical orthography, can afford to do away with the marking of any and all stresses. It is important not to confound these three types of graphic representation of a language.

Pitch Phenomena.

Swahili, unlike other Bantu languages, is not a tone language. That is to say, there do not exist in the language pairs of words which are identical in their vowels and consonants, but different in musical pitch patterns and in meaning. Swahili does make use of a system of sentence intonation which is comparable to the intonation systems of Indo-European languages, although the details of Swahili sentence intonation are, **of course**, peculiar to Swahili. This aspect of the language has been discussed in some detail by Mrs. Ashton, and will not be described further here.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page	
Unit 1	'Routine greeting sequence.'	1
Unit 2	'Midday greetings.'	3
Unit 3	'Routine evening greetings.'	4
Unit 4	'Greetings to a lady.'	5
Unit 5	'Some variants on the greeting routine.'	6
Unit 6	'One more common variant in routine greetings.'	7
Unit 7	'Test'	8
Unit 8	'Breakfast in the dining room of the hotel.'	9
	A. <u>Je</u> at the beginning of a yes-no question.	
	B. The subject prefix slot: <u>ni</u> (1 sg.) vs <u>u</u> (2 sg.)	
	C. <u>Tafadhali</u> .	
	D. <u>Ni</u> as subject or object prefix.	
Unit 9	'Breakfast at the hotel, revisited.'	12
Unit 10	'Aramian enters the dining room, in company of his friend Beltrano, who speaks no Swahili.'	14
	A. Subject prefix <u>m</u> (2 plu.).	
	B. Subject and object prefix <u>tu</u> (1 plu.).	
Unit 11	'Aramian brings his children into the dining room between meals.'	16
	A. Subject prefixes with <u>-na</u> .	
	B. Subject and object prefix <u>wa</u> (3 plu.).	
Unit 12	'One of the hungry children.'	19
	A. Subject prefix <u>a</u> (3 sg.).	
	B. Object prefix <u>m</u> (3 sg.).	
Unit 13	'Luncheon or dinner at the New Africa.'	21
	A. Negative prefix <u>ha-</u> .	
	B. Combinations of <u>ha</u> with <u>a-</u> , <u>u-</u> and <u>ni-</u> .	
	C. The linking word <u>-a</u> .	

		Page
	D. Negative present forms, including change of final <u>a</u> of affirmative stem to <u>i</u> .	
Unit 14	'Afternoon tea.'	27
	A. Independent subject pronoun <u>mimi</u> .	
	B. More concerning negative counterparts of the <u>na</u> - tense.	
Unit 15	'Bread and butter with the tea.'	31
	A, B Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.	
Unit 16	'Preparing to buy food at the door.'	35
	A. 'Applied' or 'prepositional' stem.	
	B. The N class singular.	
	C. Affirmative vs. negative forms of a verb with vowel-final root.	
	D. Concord shown in object prefix, N class.	
	E. Object prefix for singular of WA class.	
	F. ConCORDS: N class singular <u>vs.</u> plural.	
	G. Table of animate subject and object prefixes.	
	H. Literal meaning of <u>hapana</u> .	
Unit 17	'How are the oranges?'	41
	A. (1) A verb with stem final <u>i</u> in the affirmative. (2) An example of the <u>a</u> -tense.	
	B. Concord exemplified in possessives.	
	C. Concord exemplified with certain adjective stems.	
	D. Table of conCORDS encountered in preceding lessons.	
	E. <u>Si</u> as negative of <u>ni</u> .	
Unit 18	'What do we need?'	48
	A. Concord exemplified in 'objects' of <u>na</u> .	
	B. Details of concord with certain adjective stems.	
	C. N conCORDS with adjective stems beginning in a consonant.	
	D. The VI class.	
Unit 19	'Buying at the door.'	52
	A. Use of WA class conCORDS for all nouns denoting	

	Page
living beings.	
B. Contrast between <u>mb-</u> and <u>mb</u> .	
Unit 20 'Where do you live?'	58
A. Adjective used, without antecedent, in a noun position.	
B. Demonstratives in <u>h-</u> <u>-o</u> .	
Unit 21 'Where is Morogoro from here?'	63
A. Polite <u>yes-no</u> replies in Swahili and English.	
Unit 22 'In a village.'	66
A. Demonstratives in <u>hV₁-V₁</u> .	
B. The locative stems <u>-ko</u> , <u>-po</u> .	
C. Phrases with linking <u>-a</u> used without antecedent.	
D. Special form of 3 sg. animate subject prefix with the locative stems.	
Unit 23 'Where are you going?'	72
A. The locative suffix <u>-ni</u> .	
B. <u>ku-</u> as 'sign of the infinitive.'	
C. Use of <u>kw</u> in inflected forms with the stem <u>-enda</u> .	
Unit 24 'Where has Juma gone?'	76
A. Adjectives which do not take concordial prefixes.	
B. Adjective stems preceded by subject prefixes.	
C. The <u>me-</u> tense.	
D. Use of <u>kw</u> in inflected forms with the stem <u>-isha</u> .	
Unit 25 'Gone to pay taxes.'	82
A. <u>-mekwisha</u> plus verb stem.	
B. The <u>-ja-</u> negative counterpart of the <u>me-</u> tense.	
Unit 26 'Where has Hamisi gone?'	86
A. Regular formation of applied stems.	
Unit 27 'Who is that?'	91
A. Use of <u>ku</u> in certain inflected forms of verbs with monosyllabic stems.	
Unit 28 'An introduction.'	94
A. <u>Ewana</u> used with given names.	

	Page
B. <u>Me</u> -forms of certain verbs translated into English with present tense.	
C. <u>Na</u> with personal pronoun stems.	
Unit 29 'Do you know Mr. _____?'	96
A. Difference between concords used with <u>m̂ji</u> and <u>m̂jini</u> .	
B. Some prepositions.	
C. 'Animate' and 'personal' subdivisions of the N class of nouns.	
D. Difference between <u>m̂ji</u> and <u>kijiji</u> .	
Unit 30 'Mr. Ochieng.'	101
A. Special form (<u>mw</u>) of 3 sg. object prefix before a verb stem that begins with a vowel.	
Unit 31 'What kind of work do you do?'	104
A. Noun plus <u>-a</u> plus infinitive.	
Unit 32 'You're a farmer, aren't you?'	108
A. Complete sentence consisting of absolute personal pronoun plus noun.	
B. Contrast in meaning between <u>-panda</u> and <u>-otesha</u> .	
Unit 33 'What do you do with your crops?'	112
A. The adjective <u>~ingine</u> as an equivalent for both 'some' and 'other.'	
Unit 34 'I'm a cook nowadays.'	115
A. Complete sentences consisting of first or second person subject prefix plus noun.	
Unit 35 'He's a day laborer.'	118
A. <u>Hu</u> -tense.	
B. 'VI-animate' nouns.	
C. The word <u>juu</u> .	
Unit 36 'Where were you yesterday?'	123
A. <u>Li</u> -tense.	
B. Locatives with <u>-ni</u> corresponding to 'at' 'to' 'from' depending on the context.	
C. Literal translation of <u>saa ngapi</u> ?	

SWAHILI

		Page
Unit 37	'What is your tribal background?'	129
	A. Articulation of <u>gh</u> .	
	B. Past negative forms with <u>-ku-</u> .	
Unit 38	'Where have you been?'	133
Unit 39	'Do you speak Luo?'	135
	A. The prefix <u>ki-</u> in the names of languages.	
Unit 40	'Planning a holiday trip.'	139
	A. <u>Ta</u> -tense.	
Unit 41	'Getting ready for church.'	147
	A. <u>Peke y-</u>	
	B. Use of <u>ijapokuwa</u> .	
	C. Negative of <u>ta</u> -tense.	
	D. The <u>mahali</u> class.	
	E. <u>~o ~ote</u> .	
Unit 42	'Trouble in the kitchen.'	153
	A. Subjunctive forms.	
	B. <u>Lázima</u> plus subjunctive.	
Unit 43	'More trouble in the kitchen.'	158
	A. Neuter stems.	
	B. <u>Afadhali</u> plus subjunctive.	
	C. Negative subjunctive with <u>-si-</u> .	
Unit 44	'Bicycle trouble.'	163
	A. Some additional pairs of simple and neuter stems.	
Unit 45	'Trouble with a pen.'	167
	A. An additional pair of simple and neuter stems.	
	B. <u>-lazimu</u> plus subjunctive or infinitive.	
Unit 46	'I've lost a letter.'	171
	A. Causative stems.	
Unit 47	'Broken dishes.'	176
Unit 48	'Lighting the lamp.'	181
	A. Imperative of one verb, followed by subjunctive of a second.	
Unit 49	'Lighting the lamp.'	186

		Page
Unit 50	'I'm not hungry.'	190
	A. The phrase <u>sasa hivi</u> .	
Unit 51	'What grade are you in?'	195
	A. <u>Juu</u> with no possessive following it.	
	B. First and second person subject prefixes used with locative stems.	
Unit 52	'If you don't drink too much...'	199
	A. The distal demonstratives (<u>-le</u>).	
	B. The <u>ki</u> -tense.	
Unit 53	'Juma hurt his leg.'	204
	A. Passive stems.	
	B. Passive stems formed on roots which contain vowels.	
	C. Difference in meaning between <u>-umwa</u> and <u>umia</u> .	
	D. The reflexive prefix <u>-ji-</u> .	
Unit 54	'Where have you been recently?'	210
	A. <u>Huko</u> with names of places.	
	B. Verb phrases in which the first verb is <u>-wa</u> .	
Unit 55	'How's the family?'	214
	A. Numerals which take concordial prefixes.	
	B. Stating the ages of persons.	
Unit 56	'When are you coming to see us?'	218
	A. The days of the week.	
	B. The noun <u>baada</u> .	
Unit 57	'Where will you go after your leave?'	223
	A. Statements in indirect discourse.	
Unit 58	'Why didn't you come to see us?'	227
	A. Concordial agreement involving numeral phrases.	
Unit 59	'Is your wife feeling better?'	230
	A. <u>-po-</u> as an equivalent for 'when.'	
Unit 60	'The children have coughs.'	234
	A. <u>-faa</u> with 'impersonal prefix.'	
	B. The phrase <u>-pa pole</u> .	
Unit 61	'I don't feel too well.'	244

		Page
Unit 62	'You've hurt your finger!'	247
	A. Grammatical subject <u>vs.</u> logical subject.	
Unit 63	'Late to class.'	250
	A. Plural imperative.'	
	B. <u>Kitako</u> .	
Unit 64	'Classroom routine.'	254
	A. The prefix <u>-ka-</u> with subjunctives.	
Unit 65	'A letter from a student abroad.'	258
	A. The prefix <u>-ka-</u> with indicatives.	
	B. <u>-tuma</u> and <u>-peleka</u> .	
Unit 66	'My parents are going to night school.'	263
Unit 67	'What is it like at night school?'	267
	A. Relative counterparts of the <u>na</u> and <u>li-</u> tenses.	
Unit 68	'What about the fees?'	272
	A. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem <u>-na-</u> .	
Unit 69	'A shortage of professional people.'	276
	A. Relative counterparts of the <u>a-</u> tense.	
Unit 70	'A day off.'	280
Unit 71	'Let's visit the farm.'	286
	A. Further example of the meaning of <u>-ka-</u> .	
	B. <u>Hivi</u> 'about'.	
Unit 72	'The farm needs rain and fertilizer.'	290
	A. The MU, KU and PA locative concords.	
Unit 73	'Should I get a crop loan?'	294
	A. Relative affixes in agreement with the objects of verbs.	
	B. <u>Ndi-</u> plus relative affix.	
	C. Combination of the constructions described in Notes A and B.	
	D. Concords of VI (plu.) class in expression of manner.	
Unit 74	'Farm implements.'	299
	A. Locative concord plus possessive stem, with no antecedent.	

	Page
	B. The spelling of <u>-ki(i)sha</u> .
Unit 75	'Times for planting and weeding.' 303
Unit 76	'Boy or Girl?'
	A. <u>Wala</u> between negatives.
Unit 77	'Prenatal care.' 311
	A. Sequence of verbs joined by <u>na</u> .
Unit 78	'Post-natal care.' (cont'd from Unit 77) 314
Unit 79	'When are you getting married?' 317
	A. Relative future forms with <u>-taka-</u> .
	B. Two verbs that are followed by subjunctive forms.
Unit 80	'Come along to the wedding!' 321
	A. Relative phrases with <u>amba-</u> .
	B. Object affix(es) for second person plural.
Unit 81	'Getting into town from the airport.' 331
	A. The stem <u>~enye</u> .
Unit 82	'A trip to Tanga.' 335
Unit 83	'How much is the basket?' 338
Unit 84	'Settling on a price.' (continued) 341
Unit 85	'Settling on a price.' (concluded) 344
Unit 86	'Buying trousers.' 347
Unit 87	'Settling the price of the trousers.' 350
Unit 88	'Where is the consulate?' 354
Unit 89	'Where is the consulate?' (concluded) 356
Unit 90	'Clothes for the laundryman.' 357
	A. Abstract nouns of the U class.
	B. U class singulars.
Unit 91	'Doing the wash.' 365
	A. Relative counterparts of the <u>a-</u> tense.
Unit 92	'A good-looking uniform.' 369
Unit 93	'Making a bed.' 372
	A. A verb with two objects.
	B. <u>-uliza</u> plus subjunctive.
	C. <u>-li</u> as a verb stem.

SWAHILI

		Page
Unit 94	'The mosquito net.'	376
	A. <u>Pa</u> as a subject prefix.	
Unit 95	'A guest is coming for dinner!'	380
	A. Concord with a noun having the prefix <u>ku</u> .	
Unit 96	'At the table.'	383
	A. Concord with two or more nouns.	
	B. <u>ake</u> with an inanimate plural antecedent.	
Unit 97	'Washing dishes.'	387
	A. The subjunctive with <u>ili</u> .	
Unit 98	'Caring for the lawn.'	391
	A. The reciprocal suffix.	
Unit 99	'Trials of a baby-sitter.'	395
	A. The verb <u>ruhusu</u> with infinitive or subjunctive.	
Unit 100	'Trials of a baby-sitter.' (continued)	398
Unit 101	'Riding a bicycle on the streets.'	407
	A. 'Next' and 'last' with units of time.	
Unit 102	'Conditions of employment.'	410
Unit 103	'Conditions of employment.' (continued)	414
	A. The stem <u>ote</u> 'all.'	
Unit 104	'Rearranging the furniture.'	418
	A. Negative relative present verbs.	
	B. The 'reversive' suffix.	
Unit 105	'Planning a trip by car.'	422
Unit 106	'Planning a trip by car.' (continued)	426
Unit 107	'In a shoe store.'	429
Unit 108	'In a shoe store.' (continued)	432
Unit 109	'In a shoe store.' (continued)	436
	A. The negative word <u>wala</u> .	
Unit 110	'I live in the country.'	440
Unit 111	'I live in the country.' (continued)	445
	A. Further examples of <u>pa</u> concords.	
	B. The verb prefix <u>nga-</u> .	
Unit 112	'You'd better not go hunting without a license.'	451

		Page
Unit 113	'You'd better not go hunting without a license.' (continued)	454
Unit 114	'Time to get up.'	457
Unit 115	'Time to get up.' (continued)	460
Unit 116	'Time to get up.' (continued)	464
Unit 117	'Where does the highway go?'	468
Unit 118	'Footpaths can be dangerous.'	471
Unit 119	'Footpaths can be dangerous.' (continued)	475
Unit 120	'Footpaths can be dangerous.' (continued)	478
Unit 121	'Fetching water.'	482
Unit 122	'Planning a hunting expedition.'	485
Unit 123	'May I go along?'	489
Unit 124	'Hunting.'	493
Unit 125	'Hunting.' (continued)	497
Unit 126	'Hospitali za mjini.'	504
Unit 127	'Hospitali za mjini.' (continued)	505
Unit 128	'Hospitali za mjini.' (continued)	506
Unit 129	'Juzaji wa vyakula sokoni.'	507
Unit 130	'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued)	508
Unit 131	'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued)	510
Unit 132	'Juzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued)	511
Unit 133	'Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni.' (continued)	512
Unit 134	'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.'	513
Unit 135	'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued)	514
Unit 136	'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued)	516
Unit 137	'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued)	517
Unit 138	'Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam.' (continued)	519
Unit 139	'Duka la nguo.'	520
Unit 140	'Duka la nguo.' (continued)	521
Unit 141	'Duka la nguo.' (continued)	523
Unit 142	'Duka la nguo.' (continued)	524
Unit 143	'Duka la nguo.' (continued)	525
Unit 144	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.'	526
Unit 145	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued)	528

	Page
Unit 146	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued) 529
Unit 147	'Watu wazima na maendeleo.' (continued) 531
Unit 148	'Safari ya kwenda bara.' 532
Unit 149	'Safari ya kwenda bara.' (continued) 534
Unit 150	'Safari ya kwenda bara.' (continued) 536
Glossary	538

Unit 1

1. Basic Dialogue. Routine greeting sequence.

Mutisya

jambo (MA)

matter, affair

bwana

master, sir, Mr.

Hujambo, bwana.

Hello! (said to a man)

Sangai

Sijambo.

Hello! (reply to the above)

habari (N)

news

-a

of

asubuhi (N)

morning

Habari za asubuhi?

How are you this morning?

Mutisya

~zuri

good

Nzuri.

Fine. ('good')

or

Habari nzuri.

Fine. ('good news')

Notes

A. This is an exchange of greetings between two men between the hours of daybreak and noon. Mr. Mutisya is a member of the Wakamba tribe, of Kenya. Sangai is a member of the Wabondei tribe, of Tanganyika.

B. Note that the first sound of jambo is not quite the same as the usual English pronunciation of the first consonant in Jim.

C. Note that in each word it is the next-to-last syllable that is accented. For that reason, we will not need to mark accented syllables in Swahili except in the very few words which violate the rule.

D. The symbols (MA) and (N) which follow certain words in the build-ups will be explained in Unit 15.

Unit 2

1. Basic Dialogue. Midday greetings.

Sangai

hujambo

you have no affair/trouble?

Hujambo, bwana.

Hello! (said to a man)

Mutisya

sijambo

I have no affair/trouble

Sijambo.

(reply to Hujambo.)

m̄chana

daytime

Habari za m̄chana?

How are you today?

Sangai

Nzuri.

Fine.

Notes

A. Greeting at any time of day may begin either with jambo or with hujambo. The replies to each are as shown in Units 1 and 2. Jambo is an abbreviation of hujambo, but is not the best usage.

B. In pronouncing the word m̄chana, do not produce a vowel sound either before or immediately after the m̄.

C. The greeting with m̄chana may be used at any time during the daylight, but particularly in the middle part of the day.

Unit 3

1. Basic Dialogue. Routine evening greetings.

Sangai

Jambo, bwana.

Hello (sir) !

Mirambo

Jambo, bwana.

Hello (sir) !

usiku(U)

night (starts about 7 p.m.)

Habari za jioni?

How are you this evening?

or

Habari za usiku?

Sangai

Habari nzuri.

Fine!

Notes

A. These simple perfunctory greetings (Units 1-7) are those which would be used by people who see each other almost every day.

B. Be sure you have not been pronouncing the last a in bwana and the first a in habari, like the last vowel sound in English sofa or the first in English above. The quality of both vowels in bwana and the first two vowels in habari should be practically identical. Speakers of English are particularly likely to 'reduce' such vowels when they are in unstressed syllables.

C. Mr. Mirambo is a member of the Nyamwezi tribe (Western Tanganyika).

Unit 4

1. Basic Dialogue. Greetings to a lady.

Hamisi

mama

mother

Hujambo, mama.

Hello (ma'am)!

Mrs. Mirambo

Sijambo.

(reply to Hujambo)

Habari za asubuhi?

How are you this morning?

Hamisi

Nzuri.

Fine!

Notes

A. Some people may use bibi 'lady' in place of mama in the above exchange. Many people use mama as the polite form of address to any grown woman. Bibi is used in the expression Bwana na Bibi Smith 'Mr. and Mrs. Smith', and in some other circumstances.

Unit 5

1. Basic Dialogue. Some variants on the greeting routine.

Mirambo

Jambo, bwana.

Hello (sir)!

Sangai

Sijambo.

(another reply to jambo)

Habari za mchana?

How are you today?

('News of daytime?')

Mirambo

~jema

good

Njema.

Fine. ('good')

or

Habari njema.

Fine. ('good news')

Notes

A. The new expressions in this exchange are interchangeable with their counterparts in the preceding units. In some parts of East Africa, the word nzuri is preferred to njema in these contexts.

Unit 6

1. Basic Dialogue. One more common variant in routine greetings.

Sangai

Hujambo, bwana.

Hello!

Mirambo

sana

very much

Sijambo sana.

(Another reply)

gani?

what kind of?

Habari gani?

How are you? ('What kind of news?')

Sangai

Habari njema.

Fine.

Notes

A. The questions in Units 5 and 6 may be combined to give:

Habari gani za mchana?

('What kind of news of daytime?')

The answer of course remains the same.

Unit 7

Test. Listen to the following dialogues. After each, summarize it by specifying the sex of the person spoken to, and the time of day or night.

Hujambo, bwana.

Hujambo, bwana.

Sijambo.

Sijambo bwana.

Habari za mchana?

Habari gani za asubuhi?

Nzuri.

Nzuri, bwana.

Hujambo, mama.

Hujambo, bwana.

Sijambo, bwana.

Sijambo.

Habari za asubuhi?

Habari za usiku?

Njema.

Habari njema.

Unit 8

1. Basic Dialogue. Breakfast in the dining room of the hotel.

Waiter

je	well!/tell me! (used here to introduce the yes-no question)
-taka	to want
unataka	you want
chakula (VI)	food

(Je,) unataka chakula?

Would you like [some] food?

Aramian (an American)

ndiyo	that is it
Ndiyo, bwana.	Yes, please.
kuna	there is
gani?	what kind?

Kuna chakula gani?

What kind of food is there?

Waiter

tunda (MA)	a piece of fruit
matunda	fruit
na	and
uji (U)	thin porridge/gruel
yai (MA)	egg
mayai	eggs

Kuna matunda, na uji na mayai.

There is fruit, gruel, and eggs.

Aramian

tafadhali	please
-letea	to bring for/to
niletee	bring me

Tafadhali, niletee mayai.

Please bring me [some] eggs.

Notes

A. Je at the beginning of a yes-no question.

The word je is used at the beginning of a question to focus the hearer's attention. In this way it is somewhat comparable to English Say! Je is not necessary in yes-no questions, but would not be likely to be used by an 'inferior' to a 'superior' as in the dialog for this unit.

B. The subject prefix slot: ni (1 sg.) vs. u (2 sg.).

Compare the forms:

unataka	'you want'
ninataka	'I want'

The syllables u- and ni- are 'subject prefixes' partly corresponding to the English subject pronouns you (sg.) and I.

C. Tafadhali.

Though we have given please as a rough English equivalent of tafadhali, the latter is used in Swahili less often than please is used in English.

D. Ni as subject or object prefix.

Compare the forms:

ninataka	'I want'
niletee	'bring me'

In both forms, the syllable ni- is a first person singular prefix standing for I or me. In the form which ends with -e it stands for the object (me).

E. The forms kipo or kiko are used in some parts of East Africa where in this dialogue we have used kuna.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Je, unataka _____?

chakula	Je, unataka chakula?	Do you want food?
mayai	Je, unataka mayai?	Do you want eggs?
matunda	Je, unataka matunda?	Do you want fruit?
chakula	Je, unataka chakula?	Do you want food?

B. Tafadhali, niletee _____.

mayai	Tafadhali, niletee mayai.	Please bring me eggs.
matunda	Tafadhali, niletee matunda.	Please bring me fruit.
mayai	Tafadhali, niletee mayai.	Please bring me eggs.
uji	Tafadhali, niletee uji.	Please bring me porridge.
chakula	Tafadhali, niletee chakula.	Please bring me food.

3. Substitution in sets of sentences.

uji	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna uji.	There is gruel.
	Unataka uji?	Do you want gruel?
	Ndiyo. Niletee uji.	Yes. Bring me gruel.
matunda	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna matunda.	There is fruit.
	Unataka matunda?	Do you want fruit?
	Ndiyo. Niletee matunda.	Yes, bring me fruit.
mayai	Kuna chakula gani?	What kind of food is there?
	Kuna mayai.	There are eggs.
	Unataka mayai?	Do you want eggs?
	Ndiyo. Niletee mayai.	Yes, bring me eggs.

Unit 9

1. Basic dialogue. Breakfast at the hotel, revisited.

Waiter

Je, unataka matunda?

Would you like ('do you want')
some fruit?

Aramian

Ndiyo, bwana.

Yes, [I would] (sir).

Kuna matunda gani?

What kind of fruit is there?

ndizi (N)

banana/bananas

Kuna ndizi?

Are there [any] bananas?

Waiter

chungwa (MA)

orange

machungwa

oranges

embe (MA)

mango

maembe

mangoes

Kuna ndizi na machungwa na

There are bananas and oranges and

maembe.

mangoes.

Aramian

moja

one

basi

that is all (an interjection)

Tafadhali, nilettee chungwa moja (basi). Please bring me **one orange**.

Notes

N. B. In some parts of East Africa, the plural of embe 'mango' is embe (N).

2. Kuna _____?

A. Kuna machungwa? Are there any oranges?

ndizi Kuna ndizi? Are there any bananas?

maembe matunda uji chakula mayai

B. Kuna _____ na _____.

Kuna ndizi na maembe. There are bananas and mangoes.

uji Kuna maembe na uji. There are mangoes and gruel.

matunda Kuna matunda na mayai. There is fruit and eggs.

ndizi Kuna mayai na ndizi. There are eggs and bananas.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences.

Kuna matunda gani?

Kuna maembe na ndizi.

Niletee ndizi (basi).

Substitute various combinations of names of fruits in this conversation.

Unit 10

1. Basic dialogue. Aramian enters the dining room, in company of his friend Beltrano, who speaks no Swahili.

Waiter

karibu

near

Karibu.

Come in.

Aramian

-starehe

to be at rest

asante

thank you

Starehe, starehe, asante.

Don't trouble. Thank you.

Waiter

nataka

you (pl.) want

Nataka chakula?

Do you want food?

Aramian

tuletee

bring us

Ndiyo, tafadhali tuletee matunda.

Yes, please bring us some fruit.

Notes

A. Subject prefix n (2 plu.).

Compare the forms

ninataka

I want

unataka

you (sg.) want

nataka

you (pl.) want

The subject pronoun for second person plural is n-. Be careful not to pronounce a vowel between the n and the n in nataka. Be careful also not to pronounce a vowel before the n.

B. Subject and object prefix tu (1 plu.).

Compare the forms:

niletee	bring me
tuletee	bring us

The object (and subject) pronoun for first person plural (we, us) is tu-.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. First vs. second person, singular and plural.

Unataka chakula? Ndiyo. Niletee matunda.

Mnataka chakula? Ndiyo. Tuletee matunda.

B. Unataka matunda? Ndiyo. Niletee ndizi.

Mnataka matunda? Ndiyo. Tuletee ndizi.

C. Ninataka chakula. Unataka chakula gani?

Tunataka chakula. Mnataka chakula gani?

D. Niletee matunda. Unataka matunda gani?

Tuletee matunda. Mnataka matunda gani?

3. Free conversation. A goes into the dining room for breakfast. B is his waiter. A is joined by his friend C.

Unit 11

1. Basic dialogue. Aramian brings his children into the dining room between meals.

Aramian

watoto	children
mtoto (WA)	child
~angu	my
wangu	my
wana	they have
njaa (N)	hunger

Watoto wangu wana njaa.

My children are hungry.

mna you have

Mna chakula?

Have you anything to eat?

('do you have food')

Waiter

tuna	we have
mkate (MI)	bread

Ndiyo. Tuna matunda na mkate.

Yes, we have [some] fruit and [some] bread.

Aramian

waletee bring them

Tafadhali, waletee mkate.

Please bring them some bread.

conversation accordingly. Do the same with tuna. Use other words in place of matunda.

Unit 12

1. Basic dialogue. One of the hungry children.

Mutisya

Hamisi given name (male)

ana he/she has

Je, Hamisi ana njaa? Is Hamisi hungry?

Aramian

Ndiyo. Yes, he is.

Mutisya

Anataka mkate na uji? Would he like [some] bread and porridge?

Aramian

tu only

basi that is all (an interjection)

Mletee mkate tu, basi. Just bring him some bread.

Mutisya

vizuri good (things)

Vizuri. Very well.

Notes

A. Subject prefix a (3 sg.).

Compare the forms:

una njaa you are hungry

ana njaa he/she is hungry

The subject prefix for third person singular of animate nouns is a-.

B. Object prefix m̂ (3 sg.).

Compare the forms:

tuletee mkate

bring us some bread

m̂letee mkate

bring him/her some bread

The object prefix for third person singular of animate nouns is m̂-.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Hamisi _____ ana machungwa.

Hamisi has some oranges.

Watoto _____ wana machungwa.

The children have some oranges.

B. Hamisi _____ anataka mkate.

Hamisi wants some bread.

Watoto _____ wanataka mkate.

The children want some bread.

C. Ana njaa.

M̂letee chakula.

Wana njaa.

Walettee chakula.

Nina njaa.

Niletee chakula.

Tuna njaa.

Tuletee chakula.

3. Free conversation.

Aramian brings his hungry children into the dining room. He orders food from the waiter. The children chime in, but Aramian knows that their eyes are bigger than their stomachs.

Unit 13

1. Basic dialogue. Luncheon or dinner at the New Africa.

Waiter

supu (N)

soup

Unataka supu?

Are you having the soup?

('Do you want soup?')

Aramian

Ndiyo, tafadhali niletee.

Yes. Please bring me [it].

(after the soup)

Waiter

samaki (N or N-animate)

fish

Unataka samaki?

Will you have the fish?

('Do you want fish?')

Aramian

-penda

to like

sipendi

I do not like

la

no

La, sipendi.

No, I don't want [it].

nyama (N)

meat

sasa

now

Tafadhali niletee nyama sasa.

Please bring me the meat now.

leo

today

Kuna nyama gani leo?

What kind of meat is there today?

Waiter

ng'ombe (N-animate)

cow, ox

Kuna nyama ya ng'ombe.

There is beef.

Aramian

hakuna

there is not

nguruwe (N-animate)

pig

Hakuna nyama ya nguruwe?

Isn't there any pork?

Waiter

Hakuna, bwana. Tuna nyama ya
ng'ombe tu, basi.

No, we have beef only.

NotesA. Negative prefix ha-.

Compare the forms:

kuna

there is

hakuna

there is not

Most negative verb forms in Swahili begin with the negative prefix ha-. Whenever this prefix is used, it always stands at the very beginning of the word, before other kinds of prefixes like tu-.

B. Combinations of ha with a-, u- and ni-.

Compare the forms:

Affirmative kuna tuna wana nina

Negative hakuna hatuna hawana haina

In these, the negative is simply ha-, followed by the corresponding affirmative form. The affirmative forms all begin with consonants.

Affirmative ana una

Negative hana huna

Here, the affirmative forms begin with vowels. The negative forms consist of h- followed by the affirmative forms. The -a of the negative prefix is said to have been elided.

Affirmative nina

Negative sina

Here, where one might expect a negative hani-, the form which actually occurs is si-.

C. The linking word -a.

In the form

nyama ya ng'ombe beef (lit. cow-meat)

the word ya is used to link the main word nyama and its satellite ng'ombe. Note that the main word comes first. Ya is sometimes translated by English of.

D. Negative present forms, including change of final a of affirmative stem to i.

Compare the forms:

ninataka I want

sitaki I don't want

Again, the negative of a form that begins with ni begins with si.

Note also that where the affirmative ends with -a, the negative ends with -i.

2. Substitution in single sentences.

A. Hakuna _____ leo.

supu Hakuna supu leo. There is no soup today.

nyama Hakuna nyama leo. There is no meat today.

mkate samaki maembe

B. Watoto hawana _____.

supu Watoto hawana supu. The children have no soup.

njaa Watoto hawana njaa. The children are not hungry.

ndizi chakula nyama

C. Hamisi hana _____.

matunda Hamisi hana matunda. Hamisi has no fruit.

machungwa Hamisi hana machungwa. Hamisi has no oranges.

mkate njaa ndizi

D. Hamina _____?

nyama Hamina nyama? Don't you have any meat?

mkate Hamina mkate? Don't you have any bread?

samaki maembe chakula

E. Hatuna _____.

ndizi Hatuna ndizi. We have no bananas.

chakula Hatuna chakula. We have no food.

njaa matunda uji

F. Huna _____?

njaa Huna njaa? Aren't you hungry?

mkate Huna mkate? Have you no bread?

machungwa chakula ndizi

G. Sina _____.

ndizi Sina ndizi. I don't have any bananas.

nyama Sina nyama. I don't have any meat.

samaki mkate chakula

H. Sipendi _____.

chakula Sipendi chakula. I don't want any food.

uji Sitaki uji. I don't want any porridge.

matunda nyama samaki

I. Hatupendi _____.

samaki Hatupendi samaki. We don't want any fish.

mkate Hatutaki mkate. We don't want any bread.

maembe ndizi machungwa

J. Negative of -na vs. negative of -taka. (1-2, 2-1)

Hatuna machungwa. Hatutaki machungwa.

Hawana machungwa. Hawataki machungwa.

Hana machungwa. Hataki machungwa.

Sina machungwa. Sitaki machungwa.

Huna machungwa? Hutaki machungwa?

Hamna machungwa? Hamtaki machungwa?

K. Affirmative vs. negative, -taka, no person change.

Tunataka mkate. Hatupendi uji.

Wanataka mkate. Hawapendi uji.

Anataka mkate. Hapendi uji.

Ninataka mkate. Sipendi uji.

L. Affirmative vs. negative, -taka, with person change.

Wanataka samaki? La, hawapendi.

Anataka samaki? La, hapendi.

Unataka samaki? La, sipendi.

Mnataka samaki? La, hatupendi.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences. Replace any of the underlined parts.

A.

X. Watoto wana nyama?Y. Hawana nyama.Wana supu.

B.

X. Hamisi anataka mkate?Y. La, hataki mkate.Anataka nyama.

Unit 14

1. Basic dialogue. Afternoon tea.

Waiter

chai (N)	tea
kahawa (N)	coffee
au	or

Mnataka chai, au kahawa? Do you want tea, or coffee?

Aramian

Tafadhali, tulettee chai. Please bring us some tea.

Waiter

sukari (N)	sugar
maziwa (plu. MA)	milk

Mnataka sukari na maziwa? Do you want milk and sugar?

Aramian

rafiki (N-personal)	friend
yangu	my
-tumia	to use
anatumia	he uses

Ndiyo. Rafiki yangu anatumia sukari na maziwa. Yes, please. My friend uses milk and sugar.

lakini	but
mimi	I

Lakini mimi, ninatumia maziwa tu, basi. But I use only milk.

Notes

A. Independent subject pronoun mimi.

Compare the sentences:

Ninatumia sukari.

I use sugar.

Mimi, ninatumia sukari.

[as for me], I use sugar.

Swahili has a set of subject pronouns which are separate words, and not just prefixes. Mimi is one of them. But these pronouns are used as subjects of verbs for emphasis. They are also used when the verb form is in a tense that does not have subject prefixes. The complete set is as follows:

	sg.	plu.
1.	mimi	sisii
2.	wewe	ninyi
3.	yeye	wao

B. More concerning negative counterparts of the na-tense.

Compare the forms:

tunatumia

anatumia

ninatumia

hatutumii

hatumii

situmii

The combinations of ha- with the subject prefixes are represented in exactly the same way as in the forms studied in Unit 13.

The affirmative forms in this tense have the tense-sign -na- between the subject prefix and the root. In the negative forms, the root follows directly after the subject prefix:

tu - na - tumi - a

ha - tu - - tumi - i

Again, the affirmative forms end with -a, while the corresponding negative forms end with -i.

2. Substitution in single sentences. Substitute each item, in the order given, in the sentence that precedes.

A. Na - present, 3 sg. subject. ↓

	Hamisi anatumia sukari.	Hamisi uses sugar.
anataka	Hamisi anataka sukari.	Hamisi wants sugar.
rafiki	Rafiki yangu anataka sukari.	My friend wants sugar.
maziwa	Rafiki yangu anataka maziwa.	My friend wants milk.
sukari	Rafiki yangu anataka sukari.	My friend wants sugar.
anatumia	Rafiki yangu anatumia sukari.	My friend uses sugar.
watoto	watoto wanatumia sukari.	The children use sugar.

B. Negative present, 3 sg. subject. ↓

	Hamisi hapendi sukari.	Hamisi doesn't want sugar.
hatumii	Hamisi hatumii sukari.	Hamisi doesn't use sugar.
maziwa	Hamisi hatumii maziwa.	Hamisi doesn't use milk.
rafiki	Rafiki yangu hatumii maziwa.	My friend doesn't use milk.
sukari	Rafiki yangu hatumii sukari.	My friend doesn't use sugar.
hataki	Rafiki yangu hapendi sukari.	My friend doesn't want sugar.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences, affirmative vs. negative.

A. No change of person.

'I use sugar'	'I don't use milk'
Ninatumia sukari.	Situmii maziwa.
Tunatumia sukari.	Hatutumii maziwa.
Hamisi anatumia sukari.	Hatumii maziwa.
Watoto wanatumia sukari.	Hawatumii maziwa.

B. With change of person.

'Do you use milk?'	'No, I don't use [it].'
Unatumia maziwa?	La, situmii.
Mnatumia maziwa?	La, hatutumii.
Hamisi anatumia maziwa?	La, hatumii.
Watoto wanatumia maziwa?	La, hawatumii.

C. Negative vs. affirmative, with change of person.

'I don't use milk'	'Do you use sugar?'
Situmii maziwa.	Unatumia sukari?
Hatumii maziwa.	Mnatumia sukari?
Hamisi hatumii maziwa.	Anatumia sukari?
Watoto hawatumii maziwa.	Wanatumia sukari?

4. Free conversation.

Aramian brings his children down for their afternoon tea.

Unit 15

1. Basic dialogue. Bread and butter with the tea.

Waiter

-tosha

to be sufficient

Mkate unatosha, bwana?

Is there enough bread, sir?

('does the bread suffice?')

Aramian

sana

very much

Ndiyo, unatosha sana.

Oh, yes, there's plenty.

('it suffices very much')

siagi (N)

butter

kwa

by, with, at

Lakini siagi haitoshi kwa mkate.

But there's not enough butter for
the bread.

Tafadhali niletee siagi.

Please bring me [some] butter.

Waiter

vema

good

Vema. or: Haya.

Very good, [sir].

Notes

A. Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.

Compare the phrases:

Hamisi anataka . . .

Hamisi wants . . .

mkate unatosha

the bread is sufficient

nyama inatosha

the meat is sufficient

The subjects of all three verbs are 'third person singular', but the subject prefixes are all different. The subject words, with the subject pronouns that follow them, are:

Hamisi	a-
mkate	u-
nyama	i-

and other combinations like nyama unatosha or Hamisi inataka are forbidden. This obligatory relationship between subject and subject prefix is an example of 'concordial agreement', or 'concord'.

B. Concord: Various classes of third person subjects.

Here is a list of most of the nouns used so far, together with the subject prefixes which agree with them:

mkate	u-	bread
uji	u-	thin porridge

matunda	ya-	fruit
maembe		mangoes
mayai		eggs
machungwa		oranges
maziwa		milk

Note that all words in this group begin with ma-, and that the first four are plural or collective in meaning, while the last is the name of a liquid.

chakula	ki-	food
siagi	i-	butter
nyama	i-	meat
chai	i-	tea
kahawa	i-	coffee

Note that these words have no obvious prefix in common. In meaning, none is a plural.

ndizi zi- bananas

This word is a plural.

2. Substitutions in single sentences. (Concord of noun subject and subject prefix.)

A. _____ natosha sana.

mkate	Mkate unatosha sana.	There is plenty of bread.
siagi	Siagi inatosha sana.	There is plenty of butter.
sukari	Sukari inatosha sana.	There is plenty of sugar.
nyama	Nyama inatosha sana.	There is plenty of meat.
kahawa	Kahawa inatosha sana.	There is plenty of coffee.
samaki	Samaki inatosha sana.	There is plenty of fish.
chai	Chai inatosha sana.	There is plenty of tea.
supu	Supu inatosha sana.	There is plenty of soup.
uji	Uji unatosha sana.	There is plenty of porridge.

B.

matunda	Matunda yanatosha sana.	There is plenty of fruit.
maembe	Maembe yanatosha sana.	There are plenty of mangoes.
	or: Embe zinatosha sana.	
machungwa	Machungwa yanatosha sana.	There are plenty of oranges.
maziwa	Maziwa yanatosha sana.	There is plenty of milk.
ndizi	Ndizi zinatosha sana.	There are plenty of bananas.
chakula	Chakula kinatosha sana.	There is plenty of food.

C.

m̄kate	M̄kate hautoshi.	There is not enough bread.
maziwa	Maziwa hayatoshi.	There is not enough milk.
matunda	Matunda hayatoshi.	There is not enough fruit.
machungwa	Machungwa hayatoshi.	There are not enough oranges.
maembe	Maembe hayatoshi.	There are not enough mangoes.
	or: Embe hazitoshi.	

chakula	Chakula hakitoshi.	There is not enough food.
---------	--------------------	---------------------------

D.

siagi	Siagi haitoshi.	There is not enough butter.
nyama	Nyama haitoshi.	There is not enough meat.
chai	Chai haitoshi.	There is not enough tea.
kahawa	Kahawa haitoshi.	There is not enough coffee.
uji	Uji hautoshi.	There is not enough gruel.
ndizi	Ndizi hazitoshi.	There are not enough bananas.

3. Free conversation.

Aramian and his family are back again for tea. They have trouble getting enough butter for their bread, and enough milk and sugar for their tea or coffee.

Unit 16

1. Basic dialogue. Preparing to buy food at the door.

Mutisya

-leta

bring

Hamisi analeta matunda?

Is Hamisi bringing fruit?

Aramian

nazi (N)

coconut/coconuts

nanasi (MA)

pineapple

mananasi

pineapples

Ndiyo, anatuletea nazi na
mananasi.

Yes, he is bringing us coconuts and
pineapples.

Mutisya

Ah! Vizuri sana!

Ah! Very good!

Hatuna mananasi leo.

We don't have any pineapples today.

-jua or: -fahamu

know

bei (N)

price

Unaijua bei ya mananasi?

Do you know (it) the price of the
pineapples?

Aramian

la

no

La, sijui.

No, I don't (know it).

Notes

A. 'Applied' or 'prepositional' stem.

Compare the forms:

analeta matunda

he is bringing fruit

anatuletea matunda

he is bringing us fruit

In the second verb, the syllable -tu- is of course the 1 plu. object prefix. The stems of the verbs in these sentences are respectively -leta and -letea. Both are translated with English bring.

The stem -letea is used to indicate that the action of bringing is performed with reference to someone or something. A possible gloss would be to bring to, for.

The stem -letea is called the 'applied', or 'prepositional' form of the simple stem -leta.

B. The N class singular.

The word bei is in the same concord class as nyama. That is, when it is used as the subject of a verb, then that verb has the subject prefix i-. Likewise, both words are followed by ya:

nyama ya ng'ombe

meat of cow

bei ya mananasi

price of pineapples

The word nazi 'coconut' is also in this class. This class of nouns in Swahili (and in Bantu languages generally) is called 'the N - class'. We indicate membership in this class by the symbol (N).

C. Affirmative vs. negative present forms of a verb with vowel-final root.

The forms

unataka

you want

unajua

you know

are parallel to one another, as are the forms

sitaki

I don't want

sijui

I don't know

D. Concord shown in object prefix, N class.

In the form

unaijua? do you know it?

the syllable -i- is the object prefix used in agreement with a singular noun of the N-class (bei). It is possible to use either the object prefix without the noun object, as in the above example, or the noun object without the object prefix, or - as in the basic dialogue - both object prefix and noun object in the same sentence. The object prefix is used alone without the noun object in the reply siijui.

E. Object prefix for singular of WA class.

In the exercises we find the sentence

Unamjua Hamisi? Do you know Hamisi?

Here, -m- is the 3 sg. animate object prefix, agreeing with the noun object Hamisi.

Unlike the other inanimate object prefixes, the animate object prefixes -m- (sg.) and -wa- (plu.) must normally be used even when there is a noun object.

Most people prefer the verb -fahamu to the verb -jua in this context.

F. ConCORDS: N class singular vs. plural.

In the translations of the sentences in 16.2, the N-class words were translated either as singular or as plural, with no change in the form of the Swahili word.

nazi	coconut/coconuts
ndizi	banana/bananas
bei	price/prices

and, for some speakers:

embe	mango/mangoes
------	---------------

All nouns of the N-class are identical in singular and plural, but the concordial prefixes that agree with them differ.

ndizi inatosha	the banana suffices
ndizi zinatosha	the bananas suffice

The noun habari is a noun of the N-class, used here in the plural. Note the difference in concords with the linking -a:

nyama ya ng'ombe

habari za asubuhi

G. Table of animate subject and object prefixes.

The animate subject and object prefixes, in tabular form, are:

	singular		plural	
	s.p.	o.p.	s.p.	o.p.
1.	ni-	-ni-	tu-	-tu-
2.	u-	-ku-	m-	-wa-(stem)-eni
3.	a-	-a-	wa-	-wa-

H. Literal meaning of hapana.

The literal and original meaning of hapana is 'there is not.' It is, however, often used as a reply equivalent to English 'no'. Another equivalent for 'no' is la.

2. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Subject in first sentence related to object prefix in second.

'We have no bananas.'	'Hamisi is bringing us bananas.'
Hatuna ndizi.	Hamisi anatuletea ndizi.
Sina ndizi.	Hamisi ananiletea ndizi.
Watoto hawana ndizi.	Hamisi anawaitea ndizi.
Daudi hana ndizi. (<u>Daudi</u> is another proper name.)	Hamisi anaitea ndizi.
Huna ndizi?	Hamisi anakuletea ndizi.

B.

'We have no coconuts.'	'He is bringing us coconuts.'
------------------------	-------------------------------

Hatuna nazi.	Anatuletea nazi.
Hawana nazi.	Anawaleteta nazi.
Hana nazi.	Anamiletea nazi.
Huna nazi.	Anakuletea nazi.
Sina nazi.	Ananiletea nazi.

C. Root of verb in first sentence vs. object prefix plus applied stem in second.

'Hamisi is not bringing
coconuts.' 'He is not bringing us coconuts.'

nazi	Hamisi haleti nazi.	Hatuletei nazi.
mkate	Hamisi haleti mkate.	Hatuletei mkate.
nyama	supu	matunda

D. Varying subject prefixes before an object prefix.

'Do you know (it) the
price of coffee?' 'No, I don't know it.'

Unaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, siijui.
Hamisi anaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, haijui.
Watoto wanaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, hawaijui.
Mnaijua bei ya kahawa?	Hapana, hatuijui.

E.

'Do you know Hamisi?'	'No, I don't know him.'
Unamjua Hamisi?	Hapana, simjui.
Mnamjua Hamisi?	Hapana, hatumjui.

Daudi anamjua Hamisi?

Hapana, hamjui.

Watoto wanamjua Hamisi?

Hapana, hawamjui.

F.

'Do you know my children?'

'Yes, I know them very [well].'

Unawajua watoto wangu?

Ndiyo, ninawajua sana.

Mnawajua watoto wangu?

Ndiyo, tunawajua sana.

Daudi anawajua watoto wangu?

Ndiyo, anawajua sana.

Daudi na Hamisi wanawajua

watoto wangu?

Ndiyo, wanawajua sana.

3. Substitution in sequences of sentences. Run through the entire dialogue, using various foodstuffs and modifying the dialogue appropriately.

Unit 17

1. Basic dialogue. How are the oranges?

Mutisya

~ako

your

Rafiki yako analeta matunda gani?

What kind of fruit is your friend
bringing?Aramian

~dhani

to think

nadhani

I think

Sijui. Nadhani analeta machungwa.

I don't know. I think he's bringing
oranges.Mutisya

~ake

his/her

~zuri

good

ni

is/are

Machungwa yake ni mazuri?

Are his oranges good?

(Ni may be omitted here.)

Aramian

kawaida (N)

custom

Kwa kawaida, ni mazuri sana.

They are usually very good.

wakati (U)

time

~ingine

some/other

si

is not/are not

~bivu

ripe

Lakini wakati mwingine si mabivu.

But sometimes they are not ripe.

Notes

A. The verb form nadhani 'I think' is different in two respects from the verbs we have met previously.

(1) A verb with stem final i in the affirmative.

Its final vowel is -i in both affirmative and negative forms:

nadhani	I think
sidhani	I don't think

(2) An example of the a-tense.

Breaking the form down alongside ninataka, we have:

<u>s.p.</u>	<u>tense sign</u>	<u>stem</u>
ni-	-na-	-taka
n-	-a-	-dhani

We will say that ninataka is an example of 'the na-tense of the verb -taka.' In the same way, nadhani is an example of 'the a-tense of the verb -dhani.' Other persons and numbers of the a-tense will be met in later units.

B. Concord exemplified in possessives.

Compare the phrases:

maembe yake	his/her mangoes
or: embe zake	
ndizi zake	his bananas
ndizi yake	his banana
kahawa yake	his coffee
chakula chake	his food
mkate wake	his bread
uji wake	his gruel

The stem of the possessive pronoun that corresponds to English his/her is ~ake. Like the verbs, possessives also take concordial prefixes to agree with the nouns that they go with.

Note that mkate and uji, which are followed by identical subject prefixes, also have identical concords with possessives. (They are assigned to different classes, however, for reasons that go beyond the evidence so far presented.)

Note also that the plural of the MA-class (e.g. maembe) and the singular of the N class (e.g. kahawa), which require different subject concords, require identical possessive concords.

C. Concord exemplified with certain adjective stems.

Compare the sentences:

Maembe yake ni mazuri.	His mangoes are good.
Ndizi zake ni nzuri.	His bananas are good.
Ndizi yake ni nzuri.	His banana is good.
Chakula chake ni kizuri.	His food is good.
Mkate wake ni <u>azuri</u> .	His bread is good.
Uji wake ni <u>azuri</u> .	His gruel is good.

The stem of the adjective that corresponds to English good in these sentences is azuri. Like the verbs and the possessives, most adjectives must agree with the nouns that they refer to, but the respective forms of the prefixes are different.

D. Table of concords encountered in preceding lessons.

Here is a chart of the noun classes which have been met so far, showing characteristic prefix (if any) of the noun itself, and the prefixes required with adjectives, possessives, and verbs (subject and object prefixes). The numbers are those used for these classes in many scientific discussions of Bantu languages.

		<u>noun</u>	<u>adj.</u>	<u>poss.</u>	<u>subject</u>	<u>object</u>
WA	sg. (1)	m-	m-	w-	a-	-m-/mw-
	pl. (2)	wa-	wa-	w-	wa-	-wa-
MI	sg. (3)	m-	m-/mw-	w-	u-	-u-
	pl. (4)*	mi-	mi-/my-	y-	i-	-i-
MA	sg. (5)	(none)	(none)	l-	li-	-li-
	pl. (6)	ma-	ma-	y-	ya-	-ya-
VI	sg. (7)	ki-/ch-	ki-/ch-	ch-	ki-	-ki-
	pl. (8)*	vi-/vy-	vi-/vy-	vy-	vi-	-vi-
N	sg. (9)	(none, see Note 18C)		y-	i-	-i-
	pl. (10)	(none, see Note 18C)		z-	zi-	-zi-
U	sg. (14)	u-/w-	{ m-/mw-(with w- non-abstract nouns) u-/w-(with abstract nouns)		u-	-u-

*Not yet encountered in the lessons.

Some details have been omitted from this chart, but it is complete for the forms that will be met in the early units.

E. Si as negative of ni.

The negative of ni 'it is' is si 'it is not'. Compare this with note 13B.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and possessive.

machungwa	Sitaki machungwa yake.	I don't want his oranges.
matunda	Sitaki matunda yake.	I don't want his fruit.
mananasi	Sitaki mananasi yake.	I don't want his pineapples.
maembe	Sitaki maembe yake.	I don't want his mangoes.
ndizi	Sitaki ndizi zake.	I don't want his bananas.

nazi	Sitaki nazi zake.	I don't want his coconuts.
nanasi	Sitaki nanasi lake.	I don't want his pineapple.

B. Concord: Noun, possessive, and subject prefix.

ndizi	Ndizi zangu hazitoshi.	I don't have enough bananas. (<i>'my bananas do not suffice'</i>)
nazi	Nazi zangu hazitoshi.	I don't have enough coconuts.
machungwa	Machungwa yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough oranges.
matunda	Matunda yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough fruit.
maembe	Maembe yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough mangoes.
mayai	Mayai yangu hayatoshi.	I don't have enough eggs.

C. Concord: Noun, possessive, and subject prefix.

kahawa	Kahawa yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough coffee.
chai	Chai yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough tea.
siagi	Siagi yangu haitoshi.	I don't have enough butter.
mkate	Mkate wangu hautoshi.	I don't have enough bread.
chakula	Chakula changu hakitoshi.	I don't have enough food.

D.

machungwa	Machungwa yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough oranges?
mayai	Mayai yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough eggs?
maziwa	Maziwa yako yanatosha?	Do you have enough milk?
kahawa	Kahawa yako inatosha?	Do you have enough coffee?
sukari	Sukari yako inatosha?	Do you have enough sugar?
chai	Chai yako inatosha?	Is your tea sufficient?

E.

ndizi	Ndizi zako zinatosha?	Do you have enough bananas?
nazi	Nazi zako zinatosha?	Do you have enough coconuts?

chakula	Chakula chako kinatosha?	Do you have enough food?
mkate	Mkate wako unatosha?	Do you have enough bread?
uji	Uji wako unatosha?	Do you have enough porridge?

F. Concord: Noun, possessive, and adjective.

machungwa	Machungwa yako ni mazuri?	Are your oranges good?
maembe	Maembe yako ni mazuri?	Are your mangoes good?
mananasi	Mananasi yako ni mazuri?	Are your pineapples good?
ndizi	Ndizi zako ni nzuri?	Are your bananas any good?
nazi	Nazi zako ni nzuri?	Are your coconuts any good?

G.

nyama	Nyama yangu si nzuri.	My meat is not good.
chai	Chai yangu si nzuri.	My tea is not good.
kahawa	Kahawa yangu si nzuri.	My coffee is not good.
chakula	Chakula changu si kizuri.	My food is not good.
mkate	Mkate wangu si mzuri.	My bread is not good.
uji	Uji wangu si mzuri.	My gruel is not good.
chungwa	Chungwa langu si zuri.	My orange is not good.

H.

machungwa	Machungwa yake si mabivu.	His oranges are not ripe.
maembe	Maembe yake si mabivu.	His mangoes are not ripe.
mananasi	Mananasi yake si mabivu.	His pineapples are not ripe.
ndizi	Ndizi zake si mbivu.	His bananas are not ripe.
nanasi	Nanasi lake si bivu.	His pineapple is not ripe.

3. Substitutions in sequences of sentences.

A. Use other words in place of those that are underlined.

X. Unataka matunda?

Y. Ninataka matunda mazuri tu basi.

X. Matunda yangu ni mazuri sana.

Unit 18

1. Basic dialogue. What do we need?

Aramian

-hitaji

(to) need

Tunahitaji ndizi?

Do we need any bananas?

Mutisya

kwa

for

sababu (N)

reason

kwa sababu

because

tunazo

we have them

~chache

few

Ndiyo, kwa sababu tunazo chache tu.

Yes, we have only a few of them.

Aramian

kiazi (VI)

potato

viazi

potatoes

Tuna viazi?

Do we have potatoes?

Mutisya

~ingi

many

Ndiyo, tunavyo vingi.

Yes, we have a lot of them.

Notes

A. Concord exemplified in 'objects' of na.

Compare the following forms:

Tunazo.

We have them. (e.g. bananas)

Tunacho.

We have it. (e.g. food)

Tunao.

We have it. (e.g. bread)

Corresponding to the English object pronouns them and it is a suffix consisting of a concordial element plus -o.

B. Details of concord with certain adjective stems.

Tuna machungwa mengi.

We have many oranges.

Tuna sukari nyingi.

We have much sugar.

Tuna ndizi nyingi.

We have many bananas.

Tuna viazi vingi.

We have many potatoes.

Tuna uji mwingi.

We have much gruel.

Here, the forms of the adjective stem and of the prefixes themselves are less clear than they were in 17C. It will be simplest to regard the basic form of the adjective stem as ~ingi. Then, in the MA class, where one might expect

ma + ingi the form that occurs is mengi

In the N class, which has no uniform shape for prefixes, the form is:

nyingi

The other forms are given in the exercises.

C. N-concords with adjective stems beginning in a consonant.

The adjective stem -chache 'few' is usually used with plurals.

Compare the forms:

MA	maembe <u>mazuri</u>	maembe <u>machache</u>
	ndizi <u>nzuri</u>	ndizi <u>__chache</u>
	ndizi <u>mbivu</u>	
	ndizi <u>nyingi</u>	

With the N class, the stem -zuri takes a prefix n-, while ~chache takes no prefix at all.

Adjectives whose stems begin with ch, f, k, m, n, p, s, t act like -chache in this respect, in that they have no prefix at all for the N class.

Adjectives whose stems begin with d, g, j, z act like -zuri in this respect, in that they have as their N class prefix a syllabic nasal homorganic with the initial consonant of the stem. These nasals are written with the letter n.

Adjectives whose stems begin with v or b act like -biyu in this respect, in that they too have as prefix a syllabic nasal consonant, homorganic with the initial consonant of the stem, and written m.

D. The VI class.

A new noun class, the VI class, is represented by viazi 'potatoes', the singular of which is kiazi. The concords for the VI class plural (cf. Note 17D) are:

<u>noun</u>	<u>adj.</u>	<u>poss.</u>	<u>subj. pref.</u>	<u>obj. pref.</u>
vi-/vy-	vi-/vy-	vy-	vi-	-vi-

2. Substitution in single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and adjective.

viazi	Tuna viazi vichache.	We have a few potatoes.
chakula	Tuna chakula kidogo.	We have a little food.
ndizi	Tuna ndizi chache.	We have a few bananas.
nyama	Tuna nyama kidogo.	We have a little meat.
matunda	Tuna matunda machache.	We have a little fruit.

B.

viazi	Analeta viazi vingi.	He's bringing a lot of potatoes.
ndizi	Analeta ndizi nyingi.	He's bringing a lot of bananas.
nyama	Analeta nyama nyingi.	He's bringing a lot of meat.
machungwa	Analeta machungwa mengi.	He's bringing a lot of oranges.

chakula Analeta chakula kingi. He's bringing a lot of food.

C.

maembe Tunahitaji maembe mengi sasa. We need a lot of mangoes now.

maziwa Tunahitaji maziwa mengi sasa. We need a lot of milk now.

mananasi Tunahitaji mananasi mengi sasa. We need a lot of pineapples now.

kahawa Tunahitaji kahawa nyingi sasa. We need a lot of coffee now.

sukari Tunahitaji sukari nyingi sasa. We need a lot of sugar now.

chai Tunahitaji chai nyingi sasa. We need a lot of tea now.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and object suffix.

'do you have potatoes?'

'yes, we have [them]'

Mna viazi?

Ndiyo, tunavyo.

Mna chakula?

Ndiyo, tunacho.

Mna ndizi?

Ndiyo, tunazo.

Mna nyama?

Ndiyo, tunayo.

Mna machungwa?

Ndiyo, tunayo.

Mna mkate?

Ndiyo, tunao.

B. Concord: Noun, object suffix and adjective.

'do you have mangoes?'

'I have only a few of them.'

Una maembe?

Ninayo machache tu.

Una nyama?

Ninayo chache tu.

Una nazi?

Ninazo chache tu.

Una chakula?

Ninacho kichache tu.

Una viazi?

Ninavyo vichache tu.

Unit 19

1. Basic Dialogue. Buying at the door.

Aramian

-uza (to) sell
nini what?

Unauza nini? What are you selling?

Hawker

njugu (N) nuts
karanga (N) groundnuts
mahindi maize (off cob)
muhindi (M) or: hindi (MA) ear of maize

Nina njugu na mahindi. I have peanuts and corn.

Aramian

~bovu bad (i.e. spoiled)

Njugu zako ni mbovu? Are your ground nuts bad?

Hawker

siyo (negative of ndiyo)

Siyo, si mbovu. No, they're not bad.

~zima good (i.e. not rotten), whole

kabisa quite

Ni nzima kabisa. They're quite good.

Aramian

-je how?

Unauzaje (mu)hindi? How much is the maize?
('How do you sell the maize?')

Hawker

~moja	one
senti	cent (E. African)
kumi	ten
ḿmoja senti kumi	Ten cents apiece. ('one, ten cents')

Notes

A. In the reply

ḿmoja senti kumi.	Ten cents apiece. (One-ten cents.)
-------------------	---------------------------------------

the adjective ḿmoja agrees with muhindi, 'ear of maize.'

B. Use of WA class concords for all nouns denoting living beings.

The words ndizi 'banana' and nazi 'coconut', as N-class singulars, are found in the phrases

ndizi moja	one banana
nazi moja	one coconut

The words ng'ombe 'cow, cattle' and nguruwe 'pig', which in some respects may be regarded as belonging to the N-class, behave differently with adjectives:

ng'ombe ḿmoja	one ox
nguruwe ḿmoja	one pig

In this respect they are like the singular of the WA-class:

ḿtoto ḿmoja	one child
-------------	-----------

Indeed, nouns of any class, when they stand for animate beings, require that the adjectives which accompany them have concords of the animate (WA) class.

Thus samaki 'fish', when it stands for a live fish, is

samaki mmoja

but when the fish has been cooked ready to eat, it may be called

samaki moja

(Most speakers, however, use samaki always as a member of the WA class, never as a member of the N class.)

C. Contrast between mb- and m̄b-.

In the phrases usually written in standard spelling:

Nazi yangu ni mbovu.	My coconut is bad.
{ Hindi langu ni bovu.	My ear of corn is bad.
{ Muhindi wangu ni mbovu.	

the words spelled mbovu are not pronounced alike. Accordingly, we shall write mbovu (N-class) and m̄bovu (WA, MI, U classes). In the latter, the m̄ constitutes a separate syllable, while in the former it does not.

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and adjective.

chungwa	Nina chungwa moja tu.	I have only one orange.
embe	Nina embe moja tu.	I have only one mango.
tunda	nanasi yai ndizi	nazi kiazi samaki

B.

m̄toto	Nina m̄toto m̄moja tu.	I have only one child.
ng'ombe	Nina ng'ombe m̄moja tu.	I have only one ox.

nguruwe muhindi m̄kate rafiki

C. Concord: Noun and two adjectives.

chungwa	Chungwa moja ni bovu.	One orange is spoiled.
embe	Embe moja ni bovu.	One mango is spoiled.
nanasi	Nanasi moja ni bovu.	One pineapple is spoiled.

yai	Yai moja ni bovu.	One egg is spoiled.
ndizi	Ndizi moja ni mbovu.	One banana is spoiled.
nazi	Nazi moja ni mbovu.	One coconut is spoiled.
D.		
kiazi	Kiazi kimoja ni kibovu.	One potato is spoiled.
samaki	Samaki moja ni mbovu.	One fish is spoiled.
muhindi	Muhindi mmoja ni mbovu.	One ear of maize is spoiled.
tunda	Tunda moja ni bovu.	One piece of fruit is spoiled.
E.		
embe	Embe moja tu ni zima.	Only one mango is good.
nanasi	Nanasi moja tu ni zima.	Only one pineapple is good.
yai	Yai moja tu ni zima.	Only one egg is good.
ndizi	Ndizi moja tu ni nzima.	Only one banana is good.
nazi	Nazi moja tu ni nzima.	Only one coconut is good.
F.		
kiazi	Kiazi kimoja tu ni kizima.	Only one potato is good.
samaki	Samaki moja tu ni nzima.	Only one fish is good. (dead)
samaki	Samaki mmoja tu ni mzima.	Only one fish is good. (live)
muhindi	Muhindi mmoja tu ni mzima.	Only one ear of maize is good.
G.		
machungwa	Machungwa yangu si mbovu.	My oranges are not bad.
chungwa	Chungwa langu si bovu.	My orange is not bad.
mananasi	Mananasi yangu si mbovu.	My pineapples are not bad.
nanasi	Nanasi langu si bovu.	My pineapple is not bad.
mayai	Mayai yangu si mbovu.	My eggs are not bad.

yai	Yai langu si bovu.	My egg is not bad.
maembe	Maembe yangu si mbovu.	My mangoes are not bad.
embe	Embe langu si bovu.	My mango is not bad.
H.		
viazi	Viazi vyako ni vibovu.	Your potatoes are spoiled.
kiazi	Kiazi chako ni kibovu.	Your potato is spoiled.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi zako ni mbovu.	Your bananas are spoiled.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi yako ni mbovu.	Your banana is spoiled.
nazi (pl.)	Nazi zako ni mbovu.	Your coconuts are spoiled.
nazi (sg.)	Nazi yako ni mbovu.	Your coconut is spoiled.
muhindi	Muhindi wako ni mbovu.	Your maize is spoiled.
mihindi	Mihindi yako ni mibovu.	Your maize is spoiled.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord in multiple slots.

	'my potatoes are bad;	his are good'
viazi	Viazi vyangu ni vibovu;	vyake ni vizima.
kiazi	Kiazi changu ni kibovu;	chake ni kizima.
ndizi	Ndizi zangu ni mbovu;	zake ni nzima.
ndizi	Ndizi yangu ni mbovu;	yake ni nzima.
nazi	Nazi yangu ni mbovu;	yake ni nzima.
mihindi	Mihirdi yangu ni mibovu;	yake ni mizima.
muhindi	Muhindi wangu ni mbovu;	wake ni mzima.

B.

	'your oranges are good;	mine are bad'
machungwa	Machungwa yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mbovu.

chungwa	Chungwa lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.
maembe	Maembe yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mabovu.
embe	Embe lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.
mayai	Mayai yako ni mazima;	yangu ni mabovu.
yai	Yai lako ni zima;	langu ni bovu.

C. Corresponding singular and plural concords.

	'are the potatoes good?'	'one is bad'
viazi	Viazi ni vizima?	Kimoja ni kibovu.
ndizi	Ndizi ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.
samaki	Samaki ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.
nazi	Nazi ni nzima?	Moja ni mbovu.

D.

matunda	Matunda ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
machungwa	Machungwa ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
maembe	Maembe ni mazima?	Moja ni bovu.
mihindi	Mihindi ni mizima?	Mmoja ni mbovu.

Unit 20

1. Basic dialogue. Where do you live? (NB This dialogue is now obsolete from a political point of view.)

Aramian

-kaa (to) live (reside)

wapi? where?

Unakaa wapi? Where do you live?

Mchukuzi

Ninakaa Morogoro. I live in Morogoro.

Aramian

m̂ji (MI) town

~kubwa large

~dogo small

Morogoro ni m̂ji mkubwa, au mdogo? Is Morogoro a large town, or a small one?

Mchukuzi

Ni mkubwa. It's large.

Aramian

mkubwa (WA) the chief

nani? who?

huo that

Mkubwa wa m̂ji huo ni nani? Who is the chief of that town?

Mchukuzi

Ni Sultani Kunambi. [He]'s Sultan Kunambi.

Notes

A. Adjective used, without antecedent, in a noun position.

The word mkubwa is used in two different ways in the dialogue:

Mji ni mkubwa.

The city is big.

Here, mkubwa represents an adjective in agreement with a singular noun of the MI-class (mji).

mkubwa wa mji

the big [man] of the city

Here, the same written and spoken form represents a singular noun of the WA-class or, if one prefers, it may be regarded as an adjective agreeing with an 'understood' antecedent in the singular of the WA-class.

B. Demonstratives in h- -o.

Compare the phrases:

viazi hivyo

those potatoes

mji huo

that city

yai hilo

that egg

In each phrase, the second word is a 'demonstrative' which corresponds partially to English that. All such demonstratives begin with h- and end with -o; what comes in between the h- and the -o depends on concord class. The meaning is approximately 'that one that we were talking about' or 'that one near you', rather than 'that one over there within view.'

WA	sg.	h - uy - o
	pl.	h - a - o
MI	sg.	h - u - o
	pl.	h - iy - o
MA	sg.	h - il - o
	pl.	h - ay - o

VI	sg.	h - ich - o
	pl.	h - ivy - o
N	sg.	h - iy - o
	pl.	h - iz - o
U	sg.	h - u - o

Compare these forms with the final syllables of the forms discussed in Note 18A.

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

mihindi	Unajua bei ya mihindi hiyo?	Do you know the price of that maize?
matunda	Unajua bei ya matunda hayo?	Do you know the price of that fruit?
machungwa	Unajua bei ya machungwa hayo?	Do you know the price of those oranges?
chakula	Unajua bei ya chakula hicho?	Do you know the price of that food?

B.

viazi	Sijui bei ya viazi hivyo.	I don't know the price of those potatoes.
ndizi	Sijui bei ya ndizi hizo.	I don't know the price of those bananas.
nazi	Sijui bei ya nazi hizo.	I don't know the price of those coconuts.
kahawa	Sijui bei ya kahawa hiyo.	I don't know the price of that coffee.
chai	Sijui bei ya chai hiyo.	I don't know the price of that tea.

C. Concord: Noun, demonstrative and adjective.

m̄ji	M̄ji huo ni m̄kubwa?	Is that city large?
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyo ni m̄kubwa?	Is that ox big?
nguruwe	Nguruwe huyo ni m̄kubwa?	Is that pig big?
m̄toto	M̄toto huyo ni m̄kubwa?	Is that child big?

D.

viazi	Viazi hivyo si vikubwa sana.	Those potatoes aren't very large.
kiazi	Kiazi hicho si kikubwa sana.	That potato isn't very large.
maembe	Maembe hayo si makubwa sana.	Those mangoes aren't very large.
embe	Embe hilo si kubwa sana.	That mango isn't very large.
mayai	Mayai hayo si makubwa sana.	Those eggs aren't very large.
yai	Yai hilo si kubwa sana.	That egg isn't very large.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun, demonstrative, and two adjectives.

	'are those potatoes large?'	'no, they are small'
viazi	Viazi hivyo ni vikubwa?	La, ni vidogo.
kiazi	Kiazi hicho ni kikubwa?	La, ni kidogo.
machungwa	Machungwa hayo ni makubwa?	La, ni madogo.
chungwa	Chungwa hilo ni kubwa?	La, ni dogo.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizo ni kubwa?	La, ni ndogo.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hiyo ni kubwa?	La, ni ndogo.

B.

watoto	Watoto hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
m̄toto	M̄toto huyo ni m̄kubwa?	La, ni m̄dogo.

ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe huyo ni mkubwa?	La, ni mdogo.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe hao ni wakubwa?	La, ni wadogo.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe huyo ni mkubwa?	La, ni mdogo.
C.		
watoto	Watoto wake ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
mtoto	Mtoto wake ni mzuri?	Ndiyo, ni mzuri sana.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe {wake zake} ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe wake ni mzuri?	Ndiyo, ni mzuri sana.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe {wake zake} ni wazuri?	Ndiyo, ni wazuri sana.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe wake ni mzuri?	Ndiyo, ni mzuri sana.
D.		
	'is that mango ripe?'	'no, it is not ripe'
embe	Embe hilo ni bivu?	La, si bivu.
maembe	Maembe hayo ni mabivu?	La, si mabivu.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hiyo ni mbivu?	La, si mbivu.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizo ni mbivu?	La, si mbivu.
chungwa	Chungwa hilo ni bivu?	La, si bivu.
machungwa	Machungwa hayo ni mabivu?	La, si mabivu.

Unit 21

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is Morogoro from here?

Aramian

uko

it is there

Mji wa Morogoro uko wapi?

Where is (town of) Morogoro?

His friend

-elewa

understand

Sielewi, bwana.

I don't understand (sir).

Aramian

upande (U)

direction

Mji wa Morogoro uko upande gani wa

What direction is Morogoro from

Dar es Salaam?

Dar es Salaam?

('city of M. is there which side of

D.?)

His friend

magharibi (N)

west

Ah! Uko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam.

Ah! It's west of Dar es Salaam.

Aramian

kusini (N)

south

Je, mji wa Utete uko kusini ya

Is Utete south of Dar es Salaam?

Dar es Salaam?

His friend

Ndiyo, bwana.

Yes [it is] (sir).

Aramian

kaskazini (N)	north
mashariki (N)	east
hapa (PA)	here

Na mji wa Bagamoyo, uko kaskazini And Bagamoyo - is it north, or east
 au mashariki ya hapa? of here?

His friend

Uko kaskazini. North.

Notes

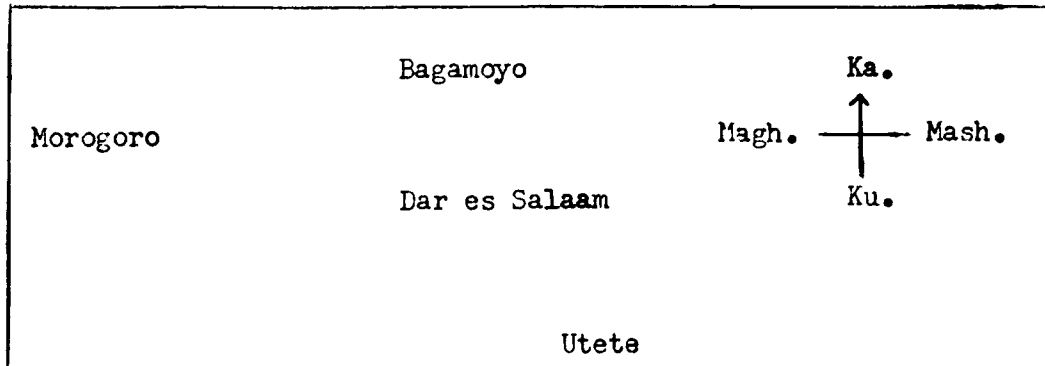
A. Polite yes - no replies in Swahili and English.

Note the lack of exact parallel between the Swahili and the English
 in

Ndiyo, bwana. Yes [it is] (sir).

In either language, the shortest possible answer (respectively ndiyo
 and yes) would be abrupt in this context. It is softened in each language
 by the addition of something. In Swahili it is the honorific title bwana,
 while in English it is the clause fragment it is.

2. The meanings of the four direction-words: Questions on the map.



Morogoro iko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Morogoro west of Dar es Salaam?
Bagamoyo iko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Bagamoyo west of Dar es Salaam?
Utete iko magharibi ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete west of Dar es Salaam?
Utete iko mashariki ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete east of Dar es Salaam?
Utete iko kusini ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete south of Dar es Salaam?
Utete iko kaskazini ya Dar es Salaam?	Is Utete north of Dar es Salaam?
Dar es Salaam iko kusini ya Bagamoyo?	Is Dar es Salaam south of Bagamoyo?
Utete iko kaskazini ya Bagamoyo?	Is Utete north of Bagamoyo?
Dar es Salaam iko magharibi ya Morogoro?	Is Dar es Salaam west of Morogoro?

(N. B. Place names are treated as being in the N class if they are not preceded by some expression such as mji wa.)

3. The four direction words: Completion. (The tutor should pause at the point indicated, allowing the student to finish the sentence for him.)

Dar es Salaam iko kusini ya --- Bagamoyo.

Bagamoyo iko kaskazini ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Morogoro iko magharibi ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Dar es Salaam iko kaskazini ya --- Utete.

Dar es Salaam iko mashariki ya --- Morogoro.

Utete iko kusini ya --- Dar es Salaam.

Unit 22

1. Basic Dialogue. In a village.

Mirambo

kijiji (VI)

village

Kijiji hiki kiko upande gani wa

What direction is this village from

Dar es Salaam?

Dar es Salaam?

Hasani

Kiko kusini.

It's south.

Mirambo

nyumba (N)

house, houses

mawe

stones

jiwe (MA)

stone

Nyumba za kijiji hiki ni za mawe?

Are the houses of this village [made]
of stone?Hasani

La. Nyumba za kijiji hiki si za

No, (the houses of this village)

mawe.

they aren't (of stone).

udongo (U)

soil

Nyingi ni za udongo.

Many are [made] of mud.

Notes

A. Demonstratives in hV. - V.

In the phrase kijiji hiki 'this village' the word hiki is a demonstrative which corresponds very closely to English 'this/these.' It may be called a 'proximal demonstrative.'

The 'proximal demonstratives' agree with the nouns to which they refer.

Thus:

kijiji hiki	this village
vijiji hivi	these villages
chungwa hili	this orange

The proximal forms for the noun classes that have been met so far are to be found in the exercises.

B. The locative stems -ko, -po.

Compare the phrases:

Kijiji kiko wapi?	Where is the village?
Mji uko wapi?	Where is the town?

The locative stem -ko, takes concordial prefixes ki-, u-, etc.

If the answer contains the word hapa 'here', then -po must be instead of -ko. For details, see the exercises.

C. Phrases with linking -a used without antecedent.

nyumba za mawe	houses of stone(s)
Nyumba ni za mawe.	The houses are of stone.

Phrases which consist of the linking -a + noun need not follow immediately after the nouns to which they refer, and may even be used alone:

Za mawe ziko wapi?	Where are the ones (i.e. the houses) [made] of stone?
Za udongo zipo hapa.	[The ones made] of mud are here.

D. Special form of 3 sg. animate subject prefix with the locative stems.

Note that the 1 sg. animate subject prefix used with -ko and -po is yu- and not a-:

Daudi yupo hapa.	Daudi is here.
------------------	----------------

2. Matching parts of single sentences.

A. Concord: Noun, demonstrative and adjective.

kijiji	Kijiji hiki ni kizuri.	This village is nice.
vijiji	Vijiji hivi ni vizuri.	These villages are nice.
kiazi	Kiazi hiki ni kizuri.	This potato is nice.
viazi	Viazi hivi ni vizuri.	These potatoes are nice.
chakula	Chakula hiki ni kizuri.	This food is nice.
vyakula	Vyakula hivi ni vizuri.	These foods are nice.

B.

chungwa	Chungwa hili ni kubwa.	This orange is large.
machungwa	Machungwa haya ni makubwa.	These oranges are large.
embe	Embe hili ni kubwa.	This mango is large.
maembe	Maembe haya ni makubwa.	These mangoes are large.
nanasi	Nanasi hili ni kubwa.	This pineapple is large.
mananasi	Mananasi haya ni makubwa.	These pineapples are large.
yai	Yai hili ni kubwa.	This egg is large.
mayai	Mayai haya ni makubwa.	These eggs are large.

C.

nazi (sg.)	Nazi hii ni ndogo.	This coconut is small.
nazi (pl.)	Nazi hizi ni ndogo.	These coconuts are small.
ndizi (sg.)	Ndizi hii ni ndogo.	This banana is small.
ndizi (pl.)	Ndizi hizi ni ndogo.	These bananas are small.

D.

mtoto	Mtoto huyu ni mdogo.	This child is small.
watoto	Watoto hawa ni wadogo.	These children are small.
ng'ombe (mmoja)	Ng'ombe huyu ni mdogo.	This ox is small.
ng'ombe (wengi)	Ng'ombe hawa ni wadogo.	These oxen are small.
nguruwe (mmoja)	Nguruwe huyu ni mdogo.	This pig is small.
nguruwe (wengi)	Nguruwe hawa ni wadogo.	These pigs are small.
samaki (mmoja)	Samaki huyu ni mdogo.	This (live) fish is small.
samaki (wengi)	Samaki hawa ni wadogo.	These (live) fish are small.
samaki (mmoja)	Samaki hii ni ndogo.	This (cooked) fish is small.
samaki	Samaki hizi ni ndogo.	These (cooked) fish are small.

E. Concord: Noun, possessive, location.

chai	Chai yako ipo hapa.	Your tea is here.
kahawa	Kahawa yako ipo hapa.	Your coffee is here.
sukari	Sukari ipo hapa.	The sugar is here.
siagi	Siagi ipo hapa.	The butter is here.
nyama	Nyama ipo hapa.	The meat is here.
mkate	Mkate upo hapa.	The bread is here.

F.

Daudi	Daudi yupo hapa.	Daudi is here.
watoto	Watoto wapo hapa.	The children are here.

ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe yupo hapa.	The ox is here.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe wapo hapa.	The oxen are here.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe yupo hapa.	The pig is here.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe wapo hapa.	The pigs are here.
G.		
chakula	Chakula chako kipo hapa.	Your food is here.
vyakula	Vyakula vyako vipo hapa.	Your food is here.
kiazi	Kiazi chako kipo hapa.	Your potato is here.
viazi	Viazi vyako vipo hapa.	Your potatoes are here.

3. Matching parts of paired sentences.

A. Concord: Noun and -ko or -po.

chai	Chai yangu iko wapi? Ipo hapa.	Where is my tea? It's here.
kahawa	Kahawa yangu iko wapi? Ipo hapa.	Where is my coffee? It's here.
sukari	Sukari iko wapi? Ipo hapa.	Where is the sugar? It's here.
siagi	Siagi iko wapi? Ipo hapa.	Where is the butter. It's here.
nyama	Nyama iko wapi? Ipo hapa.	Where is the meat? It's here.
mkate	Mkate uko wapi? Upo hapa.	Where is the bread? It's here.

B.

Daudi	Daudi yuko wapi?	Where is Daudi?
	Yuko Morogoro.	He's at Morogoro.
watoto	Watoto wako wapi?	Where are the children?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.
ng'ombe (sg.)	Ng'ombe wako yuko wapi?	Where is your ox?
	Yuko Morogoro.	It's at Morogoro.
ng'ombe (pl.)	Ng'ombe wako wako wapi?	Where are your oxen?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.
nguruwe (sg.)	Nguruwe wako yuko wapi?	Where is your pig?
	Yuko Morogoro.	It's at Morogoro.
nguruwe (pl.)	Nguruwe wako wako wapi?	Where are your pigs?
	Wako Morogoro.	They are at Morogoro.

C.

chakula	Chakula changu kiko wapi?	Where is my food?
	Kipo hapa.	It's here.
vyakula	Vyakula vyangu viko wapi?	Where is my food?
	Vipo hapa.	It's here.
kiazi	Kiazi changu kiko wapi?	Where is my potato?
	Kipo hapa.	It's here.
viasi	Viasi vyangu viko wapi?	Where are my potatoes?
	Vipo hapa.	They are here.

Unit 23

1. Basic Dialogue. Where are you going?

Sangai

-enda

go

Unakwenda wapi?

Where are you going?

Hadija

soko (MA)

market

-ni

in, at, on

Ninakwenda sokoni.

I'm going to the market.

Sangai

-fanya

make, do

kufanya

to do

Kufanya nini?

To do what?

Hadija

-nunua

buy

kitu (VI)

thing

Kununua vitu.

To buy some things.

Sangai

Kununua vitu gani?

What kind of things?

Hadija

Kununua vyakula.

Groceries. ('to buy foodstuffs')

Notes

A. The locative suffix -ni.

Ninakwenda Morogoro.

I'm going to Morogoro.

Morogoro uko wapi?

Where is Morogoro?

Ninakwenda sokoni.

I'm going to the market.

Soko liko wapi?

Where is the market?

The 'locative suffix' -ni 'at, to, in' is added to many words, but not to the names of cities.

As noted in Unit 21, the form iko is sometimes used in place of uko in sentences of this kind.

B. Ku- as 'sign of the infinitive.'

Ninanunua vitu.

I'm buying things.

Ninataka kununua vitu.

I want to buy things.

The prefix ku- used alone before a verb stem corresponds partially to the English word 'to' used as 'sign of the infinitive.' Forms like kununua, kufanya are called 'infinitives.'

C. Use of kw in inflected forms with the stem -enda.

Ninataka kwenda.

I want to go.

Ninakwenda.

I'm going.

The stem of this verb is -enda. It begins with a vowel. The infinitive prefix is written kw- instead of ku-.

D.

Ninataka kwenda.

I want to go.

Ninakkwenda.

I'm going.

Ninataka kununua . . .

I want to buy . . .

Ninanunua . . .

I'm buying . . .

The ku-/kw- of the infinitive form is missing from the personal forms of most verbs, including -nunua. But for -enda, kw- is retained in most forms. This is true for a few other verbs as well.

2. Substitutions in single sentences.

A. Simple noun vs. noun with -ni.

soko	Ninakwenda sokoni.	I'm going to the market.
nyumba	Ninakwenda nyumbani.	I'm going home.
ḡji	Ninakwenda ḡjini.	I'm going to the town.
kijiji	Ninakwenda kijijini.	I'm going to the village.
Morogoro	Ninakwenda Morogoro.	I'm going to Morogoro.
Bagamoyo	Ninakwenda Bagamoyo.	I'm going to Bagamoyo.

B. Infinitive after -taka.

vyakula	Juma anataka kununua vyakula.	Juma wants to buy food.	
machungwa	Juma anataka kununua machungwa.	Juma wants to buy oranges.	
muhindi	nyama	sukari	ḡkate

C. Direction words plus ya.

kusini	Juma na Hasani wanakwenda kusini ya Bagamoyo.	Juma and Hasani are going to the south of Bagamoyo.
kaskazini	Juma na Hasani wanakwenda kaskazini ya Bagamoyo.	Juma and Hasani are going to the north of Bagamoyo.
mashariki	magharibi	

3.

A. Concord: Noun and -ko.

soko	Soko liko wapi?	Where is the market?
masoko	Masoko yako wapi?	Where are the markets?
vitu vyangu	Vitu vyangu viko wapi?	Where are my things?

kijiji	Kijiji kiko wapi?	Where is the village?
mji wa Utete	Mji wa Utete uko wapi?	Where is the town of Utete?

B. -ko: affirmative vs. negative forms.

Juma	Juma yuko sokoni? Hayuko sokoni. Yuko nyumbani.	Is Juma at the market? He is not at the market. He is at home.
watoto	Watoto wako sokoni? Hawako sokoni. Wako nyumbani.	Are the children at the market? They are not at the market. They are at home.
Njoroge	Njoroge yuko sokoni? Hayuko sokoni. Yuko nyumbani.	Is Njoroge at the market? He is not at the market. He is at home.
Juma na Njoroge	Juma na Njoroge wako sokoni? Hawako sokoni. Wako nyumbani.	Are Juma and Njoroge at the market? They are not at the market. They are at home.

Unit 24

1. Basic Dialogue. Where has Juma gone?

Abasi

amekwenda

he is gone

Juma amekwenda wapi?

Where has Juma gone?

Hadija

Amekwenda sokoni.

He's gone to the market.

Abasi

Kufanya nini?

What for?

Hadija

-ona

see

kama

if, whether

-patikana

be available

Kuona kama machungwa yanapatikana.

To see whether there are any oranges
to be had.Abasitayari (sometimes pronounced
[teiyari] or [tiyari])

ready

-isha

finish

Mimi nimekwisha kwenda tayari.

I've already gone [there].

~bichi

unripe

Kuna machache tu mabichi.

There are only a few green ones.

~tano

five

Nimenumua matano.

I bought five.

Notes

A. Adjectives which do not take concordial prefixes.

Nyama ni tayari.	The meat is ready.
Nyama ni nzuri.	The meat is good.
Chakula ni tayari.	The food is ready.
Chakula ni kizuri.	The food is good.
Watoto ni tayari.	The children are ready.

Some adjectives, of which tayari 'ready' is one, do not take prefixes to show agreement with the nouns to which they refer.

B. Adjective stems preceded by subject prefixes.

A more correct way of saying the same thing is as follows:

Nyama i tayari.	The meat is ready.
Chakula ki tayari.	The food is ready.
Watoto wa tayari.	The children are ready.

The list of 'subject prefixes' used in this construction is identical with the list used before -ko, -po, in that the Class 1 (singular of WA class) prefix is yu, and not a-.

The adjective tayari, as illustrated in Note A, is one of a list of adjectives which never take concordial prefixes. But after subject prefixes, even those adjectives which do on occasion take concordial prefixes, appear without those prefixes. Compare this example from Ashton (p. 94):

Mkate huu u tamu.	This loaf is sweet.
Mkate huu ni mtamu.	This loaf is (a) sweet (one).

In the Dialogue, tayari is 'used adverbially.' That is, it does not modify any noun, and does not occupy a slot usually filled by nouns. It is used here as a counterpart of English 'already.' This usage of tayari after the me-tense is not fully accepted as standard.

C. The me-tense.

Juma anakwenda wapi?	Where is Juma going?
Juma amekwenda wapi?	Where has Juma gone?

The tense prefix -me- occurs in the same slot as -na-. -me- indicates completion of an action or process. The -me- forms of some verbs are generally

translated into English by using an English 'present perfect' tense.

D. Use of kw in inflected forms with the stem -isha.

Nime <u>kw</u> isha. . . .	I have finished. . . .
Nime <u>kw</u> enda.	I have gone.
Nimenunua.	I have bought.

The verb -isha, like -enda, keeps the kw- after certain tense prefixes including -me- and -na-.

E. Some speakers use ikiwa 'it being' in place of kama where that word appears in the basic dialogue for this unit.

2.

A. Numbers 1-5 with MA class.

moja	Nimenunua chungwa moja.	I have bought one orange.
mawili	Nimenunua machungwa mawili.	I have bought two oranges.
matatu	ma <u>ne</u> matano	

B. Numbers 1-5 with N-class.

moja	Nimenunua ndizi moja.	I have bought one banana.
mbili	Nimenunua ndizi mbili.	I have bought two bananas.
tatu	<u>ne</u> tano	

C. Numbers 1-5 with MI class.

<u>moja</u>	Nimenunua <u>mkate</u> <u>moja</u> .	I have bought a loaf of bread.
miwili	Nimenunua mikate miwili.	I have bought two loaves of bread.
mitatu	mi <u>ne</u> mitano	

D. -patikana; concord of noun and subject prefix.

ndizi	Ndizi zinapatikana sokoni	Are bananas available in the market
	leo?	today?
chai	Chai inapatikana sokoni	Is tea available in the market today?
	leo?	

mkate	Mkate unapatikana sokoni leo?	Is bread available in the market today?
maembe	Maembe yanapatikana sokoni leo?	Are mangoes available in the market today?
nyama	Nyama inapatikana sokoni leo?	Is meat available in the market today?

3.

A. Concord of noun in first sentence with 'object' of na.

machungwa	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua machungwa. Hatunayo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy oranges. We don't have any at home.
mayai	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua mayai. Hatunayo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy eggs. We don't have any at home.
sukari	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua sukari. Hatunayo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy sugar. We don't have any at home.
nyama	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua nyama. Hatunayo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy meat. We don't have any at home.
ndizi	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua ndizi. Hatunazo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy bananas. We don't have any at home.
nazi	Juma amekwenda sokoni kununua nazi. Hatunazo nyumbani.	Juma has gone to the market to buy coconuts. We don't have any at home.

B.

mawili	Tunahitaji mananasi? La, tunayo mawili tayari.	Do we need pineapples? No, we have two already.
matatu	Tunahitaji mananasi? La, tunayo matatu tayari.	Do we need pineapples? No, we have three already.
máñne	Tunahitaji mananasi? La, tunayo máñne tayari.	Do we need pineapples? No, we have four already.
matano	Tunahitaji mananasi? La, tunayo matano tayari.	Do we need pineapples? No, we have five already.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer tunataka to tunahitaji in this sentence.]

C.

mayai	M̂nayo mayai? Ndiyo, tunayo mawili.	Do you have eggs? Yes, we have two of them.
ndizi	M̂nazo ndizi? Ndiyo, tunazo mbili.	Do you have bananas? Yes, we have two of them.
watoto	M̂nao watoto? Ndiyo, tunao wawili.	Do you have children? Yes, we have two of them.

D.

mayai	M̂nayo mayai? Ndiyo, tunayo matatu.	Do you have eggs? Yes, we have three of them.
ndizi	M̂nazo ndizi? Ndiyo, tunazo tatu.	Do you have bananas? Yes, we have three of them.
watoto	M̂nao watoto? Ndiyo, tunao watatu.	Do you have children? Yes, we have three of them.

E.

mayai	M̂nayo mayai? Ndiyo, tunayo máñne.	Do you have eggs? Yes, we have four of them.
ndizi	M̂nazo ndizi? Ndiyo, tunazo ñne.	Do you have bananas? Yes, we have four of them.

Unit 25

1. Basic Dialogue. Gone to pay taxes.

Magese

Unakwenda wapi?

Where are you going?

Abasi

boma (MA)

District Office

Ninakwenda bomani.

I'm going to the District Office.

Magese

kodi (N)

tax

-lipa

pay

kodi ya nyumba

rent/house tax

Kulipa kodi ya nyumba?

To pay [your] house tax?

Abasi

La. Nimekwisha lipa kodi ya
nyumba.

No, I've already paid [my] house tax.

kichwa (VI)

head

ada (N)

fee

shule (N)

school

(skuli (N) is used in many parts of East Africa)

Ninakwenda kulipa kodi ya kichwa,
na ada ya shule.

I'm going there to pay [my] poll tax,
and [my] school fees.

Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?

Have you paid [your] poll tax?

Magese

bado

not yet

Hapana, sijalipa bado.

No, I haven't (paid yet).

NotesA. -mekwisha plus verb stem.

Nimekwisha kwenda.	I've already gone.
--------------------	--------------------

Nimekwisha lipa.	I've already paid.
------------------	--------------------

Almost any verb stem can be placed after -mekwisha. The English translation of such constructions is usually '_____ has already finished _____ing.' (In speech, one may often hear nimeshalipa, etc.)

B. The -ja- negative counterpart of the me-tense.

nimelipa	I have paid
sijalipa	I haven't paid
hatujalipa	we haven't paid
hatulipi	we don't pay
hajaenda (or hajakwenda)	he hasn't gone

One set of negative forms corresponding to the affirmative -me- forms contains ha plus subject prefix plus the prefix -ja-. Note that the final a of the stem does not change in forms containing -ja-.

2.

A. Umelipa . . . ?

ada ya shule	Umelipa ada ya shule?	Have you paid the school fees?
--------------	-----------------------	--------------------------------

kodi ya kichwa	Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?	Have you paid the poll tax (head tax)?
----------------	-------------------------	---

kodi ya nyumba	shule	nyumba	kichwa
----------------	-------	--------	--------

B. -ja- negative of me-tense.

kichwa	Bado hatujalipa kodi ya kichwa.	Not yet, we have not paid the poll tax.
--------	------------------------------------	--

shule	Bado hatujalipa ada ya shule.	Not yet, we have not paid the school fees.
-------	----------------------------------	---

nyumba	Bado hatujalipa kodi ya nyumba.	Not yet, we have not paid the house rent.
--------	------------------------------------	--

C.

nyumba Juma na Hamisi bado hawajalipa
kodi ya nyumba.

Juma and Hamisi have not yet
paid the house rent.

kichwa shule

D.

kichwa Abdallah bado hajalipa kodi
ya kichwa.

Abdallah has not yet paid the
poll tax.

shule nyumba

E.

shule Bado hujalipa ada ya shule?

Haven't you paid your school
fees yet?

kichwa nyumba

F.

kichwa Bado sijalipa kodi ya kichwa.

I haven't paid the poll tax
yet.

shule nyumba

F.

nyumba Bado hamjalipa kodi ya nyumba?

Haven't you (pl.) paid the
house rent yet?

kichwa shule

3.

A. Me-tense: affirmative vs. (-ja-) negative.

(wewe) Umelipa kodi ya kichwa?
Hapana, sijalipa.

Have you paid the poll tax?
No, I have not paid it.

(ninyi) Mmelipa kodi ya kichwa?
Hapana, hatujalipa.

Have you (pl.) paid poll tax?
No, we haven't paid it.

(yeye) Amelipa kodi ya kichwa?
Hapana, hajalipa.

Has he paid poll tax?
No, he hasn't paid it.

(wao) Wamelipa kodi ya kichwa? Have they paid poll tax?
Hapana, hawajalipa. No, they haven't paid it.

B.

(wewe) Umeuza nyumba? Have you sold the house?
La, sijauza. No, I haven't sold it.

(ninyi) Mmeuza nyumba? Have you sold the house?
La, hatujauza. No, we haven't sold it.

(yeye) Ameuza nyumba? Has he sold the house?
La, hajauza. No, he hasn't sold it.

(wao) Wameuza nyumba? Have they sold the house?
La, hawajauza. No, they haven't sold it.

C.

Juma Juma amekwenda sokoni? Has Juma gone to the market?
La, hajaenda. No, he hasn't gone yet.

watoto Watoto wamekwenda sokoni? Have the children gone to the
market?
La, hawajaenda. No, they haven't gone yet.

Daudi Daudi amekwenda sokoni? Has Daudi gone to the market?
La, hajaenda. No, he hasn't gone yet.

Daudi na Hamisi Daudi na Hamisi wamekwenda Have Daudi and Hamisi gone to
sokoni? to the market?
La, hawajaenda. No, they haven't gone yet.

Unit 26

1. Basic Dialogue. Where has Hamisi gone?

Ochieng

Hamisi yuko nyumbani?

Is Hamisi at home?

Hadija

La, amekwenda Magomeni.

No, he's gone to Magomeni.

Ochieng

Kufanya nini?

What for? ('To do what?')

Hadija

-tazama

look at

m̄zazi (WA)

parent

Kuwatazama wazazi wake.

To see his parents.

baba (N. pers.)

father

m̄gonjwa (WA)

a sick person

Baba yake ni m̄gonjwa.

His father is ill.

-nunulia

buy for

dawa (N)

medicine

Amekwenda kum̄nunulia dawa.

He's gone to buy him some medicine.

Notes

A. Regular formation of applied stems.

Amenunua dawa.

He has bought some medicine.

Ametununulia dawa.

He has bought us some medicine.

Ameleta dawa.

He has brought some medicine.

Ametuletea dawa.

He has brought us some medicine.

In this discussion, the 'root' of the verb corresponding to English 'bring' is -let-, and the affirmative indicative 'stem' is -leta.

The verbs in the second and fourth sentences both contain instances of the 'applied,' or 'prepositional' suffix. If the last vowel of the verb root is -u- (as in nunu-) or i or a, then the 'applied' suffix is the vowel i. If the last vowel of the root is -e- (as in -let-), then the 'applied' suffix has the vowel -e-.

If the last sound of the root is a vowel (as in nunu-) then the vowel of the applied suffix is preceded by -l-. If the last sound of the root is a consonant (as in let-), then the applied suffix consists of a vowel only.

[Note that in the stem -letea, the root is -let-, the applied suffix is -e- and the final vowel is -a.]

To put the same information in a different form, the applied stems of the Bantu verbs in Swahili may be predicted on the basis of the simple stems as follows:

Simple stem:		Applied stem:	
root ending in			
consonant	vowel		
- <u>kuta</u>		- <u>kutia</u>	
	- <u>nunua</u>		- <u>nunulia</u>
- <u>lipa</u>		- <u>lipia</u>	
	- <u>tia</u>		- <u>tilia</u>
- <u>pata</u>		- <u>patia</u>	
	- <u>zaa</u>		- <u>zalia</u>
- <u>soma</u>		- <u>somea</u>	
	- <u>toa</u>		- <u>tolea</u>
- <u>leta</u>		- <u>letea</u>	
	- <u>pokea</u>		- <u>pokelea</u>

2.

A. Words with and without -ni, following yuko.

wapi?

Hamisi yuko wapi?

Where is Hamisi?

nyumba	Hamisi yuko nyumbani.	Hamisi is at home.
mji	Hamisi yuko mjini.	Hamisi is in town.
soko	Hamisi yuko sokoni.	Hamisi is at the market.
Morogoro	Hamisi yuko Morogoro.	Hamisi is in Morogoro.
Utete	Hamisi yuko Utete.	Hamisi is at Utete.

B.

wapi?	Hamisi na Juma wako wapi?	Where are Hamisi and Juma?
nyumba	Hamisi na Juma wako nyumbani?	Are Hamisi and Juma at home?
kijiji	Hamisi na Juma wako kijijini?	Are Hamisi and Juma at the village?
shule	Hamisi na Juma wako shuleni?	Are Hamisi and Juma at school?
Utete	Hamisi na Juma wako Utete?	Are Hamisi and Juma at Utete?
Morogoro	Hamisi na Juma wako Morogoro?	Are Hamisi and Juma in Morogoro?

C.

wazazi wake	Daudi amekwenda mjini kuwatazama wazazi wake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his parents.
rafiki zake	Daudi amekwenda mjini kuwatazama rafiki zake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his friends.
Hamisi na Juma	Daudi amekwenda mjini kuwatazama Hamisi na Juma.	Daudi has gone to town to see Hamisi and Juma.
watoto wake	Daudi amekwenda mjini kuwatazama watoto wake.	Daudi has gone to town to see his children.

D.

rafiki yake	Hasani amekwenda kijijini kuwatazama rafiki yake.	Hasani has gone to the village to see his friend.
----------------	--	--

baba yake Daudi

E.

baba yangu	Nimenunulia baba yangu dawa.	I have bought my father some medicine.
mtoto wangu	Daudi	

F.

dawa	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia dawa.	My parents have bought me some medicine.
chakula	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia chakula.	My parents have bought me some food.
vitu vingi	Wazazi wangu wameninunulia vitu vingi.	My parents have bought me many things.

3.

A. Simple vs. applied stems.

mihindi	Baba amenunua mihindi? Ndiyo, ametununulia miwili.	Has father bought some maize? Yes. He has bought us two of them. (i.e. two ears)
mananasi	Baba amenunua mananasi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mawili.	Has father bought some pine- apples? Yes. He has bought us two of them.
ndizi	Baba amenunua ndizi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mbili.	Has father bought bananas? Yes. He has bought us two of them.
nazi	Baba amenunua nazi? Ndiyo, ametununulia mbili.	Has father bought coconuts? Yes. He has bought us two of them.

B. Me-tense: affirmative vs. (-ja-) negative; change of person from question to answer.

(wewe)	Baba amekununulia nini? Hajainunulia kitu.	What has father bought you? He has not bought me anything.
(sisi)	Baba ametununulia nini? Hajatununulia kitu.	What has father bought us? He has not bought us anything.
Watoto wake	Baba amewanunulia watoto wake nini? Hajawanunulia kitu.	What has father bought his children? He has not bought them anything.

C.

Unainunulia nini? Sikununulii kitu.	What are you buying me? I am not buying you anything.
Umeninunulia nini? Sijakununulia kitu.	What have you bought me? I have not bought you anything yet.

D.

Wanatununulia nini? Hawatununulii kitu.	What are they buying us? They are not buying us anything.
Wametununulia nini? Hawajatununulia kitu.	What have they bought us? They have not bought us anything yet.

D.

Hamisi anainunulia Daudi nini? Hainunulii kitu.	What is Hamisi buying Daudi? He is not buying him anything.
Hamisi amainunulia Daudi nini? Hajainunulia kitu.	What has Hamisi bought Daudi? He has not bought him anything yet.

Conversation Starters

1. A is looking for C. B explains that C has gone to town to get some things for his child, who is ill.

Unit 27

1. Basic Dialogue. Who is that?

Abasi

Nani yule?

Who is that(over there)?

Butler

Huyo ni Bwana Aramian.

That is Mr. Aramian.

Abasi

-toka

come from, go from

Anatoka wapi?

Where does he come from?

Butler

Anatoka Amerika.

From America.

Abasi

-ja

come

Amekuja kufanya nini?

What has he come to do?

Butler (American)

-tumwa

be sent

serikali (N)

government

~etu

our

-eleza

explain

mambo (pl. MA)

matters

ñchi (N)

land, country

Ametumwa na serikali, kueleza

He has been sent by his government,

mambo ya ñchi yetu.

as an information officer. ('he has been sent by the government, to explain matters of our country')

Notes

A. Use of ku in certain inflected forms of verbs with monosyllabic stems.

amekuja he has come

The verb -ja 'come' is like -enda and -isha in that ku is used between the tense prefix -me- and the root. This is, in fact, true of all verbs whose root consists of a consonant only, and whose stems are thus monosyllabic.

2. -toka with place expressions.

A.

wapi?	Bwana Hasani anatoka wapi?	Where does Mr. Hasani come from?
kusini	Bwana Hasani anatoka kusini.	Mr. Hasani comes from the South.
Nairobi	Bwana Hasani anatoka Nairobi.	Mr. Hasani comes from Nairobi.
mashariki	Bwana Hasani anatoka mashariki.	Mr. Hasani comes from the East.

B. ConCORDS with some new nouns.

vitu	Ametueleza habari za vitu hivi.	He has explained to us the details of these things.
mambo	Ametueleza mambo haya.	He has explained these affairs to us.
habari	Ametueleza habari hizi.	He has explained this news to us.

C. -jua plus infinitive.

vitu	Sijui kukueleza habari za vitu hivi.	I don't know how to explain to you the details of these things.
mambo	Sijui kukueleza mambo haya.	I don't know how to explain these affairs to you.
habari	Sijui kukueleza habari hizi.	I don't know how to explain this news to you.

3.

A. Person change from question to answer, me-tense.

(yeye)	Amekuja kufanya nini? Ametumwa na serikali yake.	What has he come to do? He has been sent by his government.
(wewe)	Umekuja kufanya nini? Nimetumwa na serikali yangu.	What have you come to do? I have been sent by my government.
(ninyi)	Amekuja kufanya nini? Tumetumwa na serikali yetu.	What have you (pl.) come to do? We have been sent by our government.

B. Person agreement between subject prefix and possessive stem.

yangu	Nimetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya nchi yangu.	I have been sent by the govern- to explain the affairs of my country.
yake	Ametumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya nchi yake.	He has been sent by the govern- to explain the affairs of his country.
yako	Umetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya nchi yako.	You have been sent by the govern- ment to explain the affairs of your country.
yetu	Tumetumwa na serikali kueleza mambo ya nchi yetu.	We have been sent by the govern- ment to explain the affairs of our country.

N. B. The second verb in each of these sentences is in the infinitive form. An alternative and possibly more correct way of saying the same thing would use subjunctive forms instead (See Units 42-45).

Unit 28

1. Basic Dialogue. An introduction.

Abdallah

Huyu ni Bwana Hasani.

This is Hassan.

Aramian

siku (N)

day

Habari za siku nyingi?

What news of many days?

Hasani

Njema. (or: Nzuri.)

Fine.

Aramian

-furahi

be happy

Nimefurahi kukuona.

I'm happy to know ('see') you.

Hasani

pia

also, too

Na mimi pia, nimefurahi kukuona.

And I'm happy to know you too.

Aramian

Nyumbani hawajambo?

Is everyone all right at your house?

('At home they have no trouble?')

Abdallah

Hawajambo.

[Yes], they're fine.

Aramian

Watoto nao hawajambo?

And your children?

('children and they, they have no trouble?')

Abdallah

salama

with peace

Salama.

They're fine.

NotesA. Bwana used with given names.

Huyu ni Bw. Hasani.

This is Hassan.

Unlike English, Swahili uses the title Bwana before given names as well as before surnames.

B. Me-forms of certain verbs translated into English with present tense.

Nimefurahi kukuona.

I'm glad to see you.

The -me- forms of the verb -furahi 'be happy' are translated into English with the present tense, and not the present perfect. (One may also use the a- tense here: nafurahi.)

C. Na with personal pronoun stems.

The set of forms which includes nao 'and they'/'with them' is:

	sg.	plu.
1.	nami	nasi
2.	nawe	nanyi
3.	naye	nao

2. This dialogue is a concatenation of social formulae. Practice it until you can go through it without mistakes in 13 seconds or less.

3. A and B have just sat down to order lunch. C joins them and is introduced by A to B. They then proceed to order lunch.

A and C discuss the whereabouts of an absent friend, D. D has gone to his home town to take care of official business and to visit friends and relatives.

Unit 29

1. Basic Dialogue. Do you know Mr. _____?

Aramian

Wamjua Bwana Hasani?

Do you know Hasani?

Abdallah

Ndiyo, namjua sana.

Yes, I know him very well.

Aramian

humu

in here

Akaa wapi? Akaa mjini humu?

Where does he live? Does he live

(or: Anakaa...)

in this city?

Abdallah

katika

in

jimbo (MA)

province

mkoa (MI)

region

La. Hapana, bwana, akaa katika

No, he doesn't. He lives in Tanga

jimbo la Tanga.

Province.

Aramian

tangu

since

Sijamwona kwa siku nyingi.

I haven't seen him for several days.

(or: tangu siku nyingi)

Abdallah

yeye

he

mke

wife

mkewe

his wife

~ao

their

jamaa

family, associate

Yeye na mkewe wamekwenda Tanga
kuwatazama jamaa zao.

He and his wife have gone to Tanga
to visit their families.

Notes

A. Difference between concord used with mji and mjini.

Akaa (or:Anakaa. . .) mjini humu.

He lives in this city.

Akaa (or:Anakaa. . .) kataka mji huu.

The words humu 'in here' and huu are both 'proximal demonstratives'. Huu agrees with the MI-class noun mji. But when the same noun mji appears with the locative suffix -ni, it is for concordial purposes transferred out of the MI-class.

B. Some prepositions.

katika mji huu

in this city

kwa siku chache

for a few days

The words katika 'in' tangu 'since' and kwa 'by, for, with' are prepositions.

C. 'Animate' and 'personal' subdivisions of the N class of nouns.

ordinary N-class

nyumba yake iko wapi?

N-personal

rafiki yake yuko wapi?

N-animate

ng'ombe wake yuko wapi?

ordinary WA-class

mtoto wake yuko wapi?

Ordinary nouns of the N-class singular have no class prefix syllable (although from a historical point of view the nasal consonant with which many of them begin is a relic of a prefix which existed in an earlier stage of the language). They require the prefix y-. . . They require the prefix y- with possessive stems, and the prefix i- with -ko. They stand for inanimate objects.

Ordinary nouns of the WA-class singular have the class prefix m- (mw- before vowels). They require the prefix w- with possessive stems, and the prefix yu- with -ko. They stand for animals or people.

In addition, there are a number of nouns that display some of the characteristics of each of these classes. We shall call them 'N-personal' nouns

(e.g. rafiki 'friend') and 'N-animate' nouns (e.g. ng'ombe 'ox, cow'). As indicated in the diagram, 'N-personal' nouns are like the ordinary N-class nouns in that they themselves contain no prefix syllable and in the possessive concords which they require. They are like the ordinary WA-class nouns in all their other concords.

'N-animate' nouns, which stand for animals, are like WA-nouns in this respect, and also with respect to the possessive concords. They are like the N-class only in the form of the nouns themselves.

The above treatment of 'N-personal' and 'N-animate' nouns covers the principal facts, but further details may be found in Ch. XV of Ashton's Swahili Grammar. As pointed out there, speakers of coastal as well as up-country types of Swahili show a certain amount of latitude in use of concords with these hybrid noun classes.

D. Difference between mji and kijiji.

Mji and kijiji. One of the readers of the original version of this course has pointed out that 'The distinction between mji and kijiji is not so clear cut as between 'town' and 'village'. Kijiji is not much used except in a comparative sense. Kiambaa, for example, would certainly be called mji except when it is being compared directly or indirectly with a much larger collection of dwellings such as Nairobi.'

2.

A. Concords with N-personal vs. WA nouns.

jamaa	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama jamaa zao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their relatives.
rafiki	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama rafiki zao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their friends.
watoto	Wamekwenda Tanga kuwatazama watoto wao.	They have gone to Tanga to see their children.

B.

rafiki	Mkewe amekwenda Malindi kumtazama rafiki yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her friend.
--------	---	--

baba	Mkewe amekwenda Malindi kumtazama baba yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her father.
jamaa	Mkewe amekwenda Malindi kumtazama jamaa yake.	His wife has gone to Malindi to see her relative.

C. Concords with names of place categories.

Jimbo	Bwana Fulani akaa katika Jimbo la Tanga.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Tanga district.
nchi	Bwana Fulani akaa katika nchi ya Tanganyika.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Tanganyika.
mji	Bwana Fulani akaa katika mji wa Nairobi.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Nairobi.
kijiji	Bwana Fulani akaa katika kijiji cha Kiambaa.	Mr. So-and-so lives in Kiambaa township.

3.

A. Change of persons from question to answer: a - tense.

(wewe)	Wakaa wapi? Nakaa hapa.	Where do you live? I live here.
(ninyi)	Mwakaa wapi? Twakaa hapa.	Where do you (pl.) live? We live here.
Rafiki yako	Rafiki yako akaa wapi? Akaa hapa.	Where does your friend live? He lives here.
Rafiki zako	Rafiki zako wakaa wapi? Wakaa hapa.	Where do your friends live? They live here.

B. Affirmative vs. negative, with person change.

baba	Baba yako akaa Morogoro? Hapana, hakai Morogoro, akaa Utete.	Does your father live in Morogoro? No, he doesn't live in Morogoro. He lives in Utete.
------	--	--

(wewe)	Wakaa Morogoro? Hapana, sikai Morogoro, nakaa Utete.	Do you live in Morogoro? No, I don't live in Morogoro. I live in Utete.
(ninyi)	Mwakaa Morogoro? Hapana, hatukai Morogoro, twakaa Utete.	Do you (pl.) live in Morogoro? No, we don't live in Morogoro. We live in Utete.
Rafiki zako	Rafiki zako wakaa Morogoro? Hapana, hawakai Morogoro, wakaa Utete.	Do your friends live in Morogoro? No, they don't live in Morogoro. They live in Utete.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer anakaa or anaishi to akaa in these sentences.]

C.

(wewe)	Wamjua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Simjui.	Do you know Abdallah? No, I don't know him.
baba	Baba yako amjua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Hamjui.	Does your father know Abdallah? No, he doesn't know him.
rafiki	Rafiki zako wamjua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Hawamjui.	Do your friends know Abdallah? No, they don't know him.
(ninyi)	Mwamjua Bw. Abdallah? Hapana. Hatumjui.	Do you (pl.) know Abdallah? No, we don't know him.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer unamjua or unamfahamu to wamjua in these sentences.]

Unit 30

1. Basic Dialogue. Mr. Ochieng.

Hamisi

Ochieng

(a Luo surname)

Wamjua Bwana Ochieng?

Do you know Mr. Ochieng?

Hadija

La, simjui.

No, I don't know him.

mara (N)

time

zamani

formerly

-anza

begin

Sikumwona zamani; leo ndiyo mara ya

I've seen him for the first time today.

kwanza.

('I didn't see him formerly; today
is the first time.')

kazi (N)

work

Afanya kazi wapi?

Where does he work?

Hamisi

Kiambú.

In Kiambú. (a town in a Kikuyu area)

Hadija

lugha (N)

language

-sema

speak, say

Asema lugha ya Kikuyu?

Does he speak Kikuyu?

Hamisi

-endelea

to continue, make progress

Asema kidogo, lakini aendelea

He speaks a little, but he is making
good progress.

vizuri.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer anasema to asema in these sentences.]

Notes

A. Special form (mw) of 3 sg. object prefix before a verb stem that begins with a vowel.

simwujui I don't know him.

simwwoni I don't see him.

Before a verb stem beginning with a vowel, the 3 sg. object prefix has the form mw-.

2.

A. Swahili versions of names of languages.

Swahili	Bwana Kamau asema Kiswahili vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Swahili very well.
English	Bwana Kamau asema Kiingereza vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks English very well.
Nyamwezi	Bwana Kamau asema Kinyamwezi vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Nyamwezi very well.
Luganda	Bwana Kamau asema Kiganda vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Luganda very well.
Masai	Bwana Kamau asema Kimasai vizuri sana.	Mr. Kamau speaks Masai very well.

3.

A. Noun in agreement with two subject prefixes, affirmative verbs.

Mimi	Mimi nasema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini naendelea vizuri.	I speak very little Swahili, but I am progressing well.
Rafiki yetu	Rafiki yetu asema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini aendelea vizuri.	Our friend speaks very little Swahili, but he is making good progress.

Rafiki zetu	Rafiki zetu wasema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini waendelea vizuri.	Our friends speak very little Swahili, but they are progressing well.
Daudi	Daudi asema Kiswahili kidogo tu, lakini aendelea vizuri.	Daudi speaks very little Swahili, but he is progressing well.

[N. B. Some speakers prefer the -na- forms of the verb in these sentences.]

B. Same, with negative verbs.

Mimi	Sisemi Kiswahili; siendelei vizuri.	I don't speak Swahili; I am not progressing well.
Rafiki yangu	Hasemi Kiswahili; haendelei vizuri.	He doesn't speak Swahili; he is not progressing well.
Rafiki zangu	Hawasemi Kiswahili; hawaendelei vizuri.	They don't speak Swahili; they aren't progressing well.

C. Nchini as an equivalent for katika nchi.

Kiambú	Kiambú ni mji mkubwa nchini (or: katika nchi) mwa Wakikuyu.	Kiambu is a large town in Kikuyu Country.
Tanga	Tanga ni mkoa mkubwa katika nchi ya Tanganyika.	Tanga is a large province in Tanganyika.

4. Describe a real or imaginary person. Tell where he is from, where he works, etc.

Unit 31

1. Basic Dialogue. What kind of work do you do?

Mutisya

Wafanya kazi gani?

What kind of work do you do?

Sangai

ukarani (U)

the work or status of being
a clerk

Nafanya kazi ya ukarani.

(I do) clerical (work).

Mutisya

Wapi?

Where?

Sangai

idara (N)

department

elimu (N)

education

Katika Idara ya Elimu.

In the Department of Education.

Mutisya

-pata

get

mshahara (MI)

pay

Wapata mshahara wa kutosha?
(or: Unapata...)

Do you get adequate pay?

Sangai

-saidia

help

mahitaji (pl. MA)

needs

Hapana, lakini hunisaidia kwa
mahitaji yangu.

No, but it helps toward my everyday
needs.

Mutisya

-penda

like, love

Waipenda kazi yako?

Do you like your work?

(or: Unaipenda. . .)

SangaiHivyo hivyo. (or: Vivi hivi,
or: Hivi hivi.)

So-so.

NotesA. Noun plus -a plus infinitive.

mshahara wa kutosha

adequate pay

Note that the word-for-word equivalent would be 'pay of to suffice'.

2.

A. Concord: Possessives with N-personal nouns.

baba	Namsaidia baba yangu katika kazi yake.	I help my father in his work.
rafiki (mumojia)	Namsaidia rafiki yangu katika kazi yake.	I help my friend in his work.
rafiki (pl.) (wengi)	Nawasaidia rafiki zangu katika kazi yao.	I help my friends in their work.
watoto	Nawasaidia watoto wangu katika kazi yao.	I help my children in their work.

B. Concord: Possessives and adjectives with N-personal nouns.

rafiki yako	Rafiki yako ni mbaya sana.	Your friend is very bad.
mtoto wako	Mtoto wako ni mbaya sana.	Your child is very bad.
rafiki zako	Rafiki zako ni wabaya sana.	Your friends are very bad.

watoto wako Watoto wako ni wabaya sana. Your children are very bad.

C. Concord: N-animate nouns.

ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyu ni mbaya sana.	This cow is very bad.
nguruwe	Nguruwe huyu ni mbaya sana.	This pig is very bad.
kitu	Kitu hiki ni kibaya sana.	This thing is very bad.
chungwa	Chungwa hili ni baya sana.	This orange is very bad.
mkate	Mkate huu ni mbaya sana.	This bread is very bad.
ng'ombe (wengi)	Ng'ombe hawa ni wabaya sana.	These cows are very bad.
samaki (wengi)	Samaki hawa ni wabaya sana.	These fish are very bad.
vitu	Vitu hivi ni vibaya sana.	These things are very bad.
viazi	Viazi hivi ni vibaya sana.	These potatoes are very bad.
maembe	Maembe haya ni mabaya sana.	These mangoes are very bad.
mikate	Mikate hii ni mbaya sana.	These loaves of bread are very bad.

Repeat the above exercise using si in place of ni.

3.

A. Subject in negative statement correlated with object in imperative.

wizi	Siijui kazi hii. Tafadhali nisaidie.	I don't know this work. Please help me.
yeye	Haijui kazi hii. Tafadhali msaidie.	He doesn't know this work. Please help him.
sisi	Hatuijui kazi hii. Tafadhali tussaidie.	We don't know this work. Please help us.
watoto	Watoto hawaijui kazi hii. Tafadhali wasaidie.	The children do not know this work. Please help them.

B. Concord: Noun, possessive and adjective.

vyakula	Tuna vyakula vya kutosha? La. Tuna vichache tu.	Do we have enough foodstuffs? No, we only have a few.
viazi	Tuna viazi vya kutosha? La. Tuna vichache tu.	Do we have enough potatoes? No, we only have a few.
siagi	Tuna siagi ya kutosha? La. Tuna kidogo tu.	Do we have enough butter? No, we only have a little.
chai	Tuna chai ya kutosha? La. Tuna kidogo tu.	Do we have enough tea? No, we only have a little.
mikate	Tuna mikate ya kutosha? La. Tuna michache tu.	Do we have enough loaves? No, we only have a few.
matunda	Tuna matunda ya kutosha? La. Tuna machache tu.	Do we have enough fruit? No, we only have a few pieces.
mayai	Tuna mayai ya kutosha? La. Tuna machache tu.	Do we have enough eggs? No, we only have a few.

Unit 32

1. Basic Dialogue. You're a farmer aren't you?

Sangai

wewe

you

mkulima (WA)

farmer

Wewe mkulima, sivyo?

You're a farmer, aren't you?

Mirambo

Ndiyo, mimi mkulima.

Yes, I'm a farmer.

Sangai

-panda

raise

-otesha

raise

mimea (MI)

plant

Waotesha mimea gani?

What kind of crops do you raise?

Mirambo

muhogo (MI)

cassava

maharagwe (pl. MA)

beans

kitunguu (VI)

onion

mpunga (MI)

rice (growing in field)

Kwa kawaida, napanda muhogo na

I generally grow cassava, beans,

kuotesha maharagwe, vitunguu na

onions and rice.

mpunga.

mwaka (MI)

year

mvua (N)

rain

Lakini mwaka huu hakuna mvua ya

But this year there isn't enough rain

kutosha kuotesha mpunga.

for growing rice.

kwa hiyo

therefore

Kwa hiyo ninapanda muhogo, maharagwe
na vitunguu.

For that reason, I'm growing cassava,
beans and onions.

Notes

A. Complete sentence consisting of absolute personal pronoun plus noun.

mimi mkulima

I'm a farmer

wewe mkulima

you are a farmer

Note that this complete sentence in Swahili is literally 'I farmer'.

B. Contrast in meaning between -panda and -otesha.

hatupandi muhogo

we don't grow cassava

hatuoteshi mpunga

we don't grow rice

Different verbs are used for 'growing' cassava and 'growing' rice.

-panda is the word commonly used for the planting and raising of all crops.

-otesha (lit. 'cause to sprout') is used particularly of the sprouting of grain in a seed-bed (for transplanting) or on, e.g., a sack, for beer-making. It is also used for the effect of rain or other form of moisture on seed already planted.

2.

A. Concord: Nouns with ~ingi.

mimea

Wakulima wa nchi hii waotesha
(or: wanaotesha) mimea mingi.

The farmers of this country
grow many plants.

maharagwe

Wakulima wa nchi hii waotesha
maharagwe mengi.

The farmers of this country
grow a lot of beans.

mpunga

Wakulima wa nchi hii waotesha
mpunga mwingi.

The farmers of this country
grow a lot of rice.

vitunguu

Wakulima wa nchi hii waotesha
vitunguu vingi.

The farmers of this country
grow a lot of onions.

B. Mwaka huu.

muhogo Mwaka huu, hatupandi
muhogo.

This year, we aren't planting
cassava.

maharagwe Mwaka huu, hatupandi
maharagwe.

This year, we aren't planting
beans.

mpunga vitunguu

C. Concord: Nouns with zuri.

muhogo Mkulima huyu apanda
muhogo mzuri sana.
(or: . . . anapanda. . .)

This farmer plants very good
cassava.

minea Mkulima huyu apanda
minea mizuri sana.

This farmer plants very good
plants.

mpunga Mkulima huyu apanda
mpunga mzuri sana.

This farmer plants very good
rice.

vitunguu Mkulima huyu apanda
vitunguu vizuri sana.

This farmer plants very good
onions.

3.

A. Comparison of a-tense with na-tense.

mini Kwa kawaida, napanda (or:
hapanda) muhogo na
maharagwe, lakini mwaka
huu ninapanda muhogo tu.

Usually, I plant cassava and
beans, but this year I am
only planting cassava.

mkulima Kwa kawaida, mkulima huyo
huyo apanda muhogo na vitunguu
lakini mwaka huu anapanda
muhogo tu.

Usually, that farmer (i.e. one
already mentioned) plants
cassava and onions, but this
year he is only planting
cassava.

wakulima
hao

Kwa kawaida, wakulima hao wapanda muhogo na maharagwe lakini mwaka huu wanapanda muhogo tu.

Usually, those farmers (i.e. ones already mentioned) plant cassava and beans, but this year they are only planting cassava.

Unit 33

1. Basic Dialogue. What do you do with your crops?

Sangai

mazao (pl. MA)

crops

Wafanya nini na mazao yako?

What do you do with your crops?

(or: Unafanya. . .)

Mirambo

~ingine

some, other

Mengine natumia kwa chakula, na

Some I use as food, and the others

mengine kwa kuuza.

for selling.

Sangai

Wauza mazao yako wapi?

Where do you sell them?

(or: Unauza. . .)

Mirambo

Sokoni.

At the market.

mke

wife

-peleka

take, send

Mke wangu huyapeleka kuuza.

My wife takes them to sell.

hodari

active, energetic, brave

Yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.

She's very clever in selling.

Notes

A. The adjective ~ingine as an equivalent for both 'some' and 'other'.

mengine . . . kwa chakula, na mengine kwa kuuza.

. . . some as food, and other for selling.

The adjective ~ingine corresponds equally to English 'some' and 'other(s)'.

2.

A.

Mke wangu	Mke wangu yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	My wife is very active in selling.
Baba yangu	Baba yangu yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	My father is very active in selling.
Hamisi	Hamisi yu hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Hamisi is very active in selling.
Hamisi na Juma	Hamisi na Juma ni hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Hamisi and Juma are very active in selling.
Watoto	Watoto wetu ni hodari sana kwa kuuza.	Our children are active in selling.

B. Simple noun vs. noun with locative -ni.

mji	Wauza mazao yao mjini. (or: Wanauza. . .)	They sell their crops in town.
soko	Wauza mazao yao sokoni.	They sell their crops at the market.
kijiji	Wauza mazao yao kijijini.	They sell their crops in the village.
Morogoro	Wauza mazao yao Morogoro.	They sell their crops in Morogoro.

C. Concord: Noun, possessive, and adjective.

mazao	Mazao yangu mengine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my crops for food.
viazi	Viazi vyangu vingine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my potatoes for food.
ndizi	Ndizi zangu nyingine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my bananas for food.

mahindi	Mahindi yangu mengine natumia kwa chakula.	I use some of my maize for food.
---------	---	-------------------------------------

D. Animate plural nouns with ~ingine.

watoto	Watoto wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the children haven't enough food this year.
--------	---	--

ng'ombe	Ng'ombe wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the cows haven't enough food this year.
---------	--	--

wakulima	Wakulima wengine hawana chakula cha kutosha mwaka huu.	Some of the farmers haven't enough food this year.
----------	---	---

3. Aramian interviews a farmer about his crops and about the part that his wife and children play in growing and marketing them.

Unit 34

1. Basic Dialogue. I'm a cook nowadays.

Hamisi

Unafanya kazi gani?

What kind of work are you doing?

Mutisya

upishi (U)

work or status of a cook

Ninafanya kazi ya upishi.

I'm working as a cook.

Hamisi

kumbe!

(expression of surprise)

mpishi (WA)

a cook

Kumbe u mpishi siku hizi!

So you're a cook these days!

(or: . . . wewe ni mpishi. . .)

Mutisya

Ndiyo bwana. Mimi ni mpishi.

That's right.

Hamisi

Unafanya kazi kwa nani?

Who are you working for?

Mutisya

mzungu (WA)

a European

jina (MA)

name

Kwa mzungu mmoja, jina lake Bwana

For a European named Aramian.

Aramian.

Notes

A. Complete sentences consisting of first or second person subject prefix plus noun.

u mpishi

you are a cook

ni <i>nikulima</i>	I am a farmer
tu <i>wapishi</i>	we are cooks
<i>m</i> <i>wakulima</i>	you are farmers

In these sentences, the first and second person subject prefixes are used before nouns denoting occupations, and the combination is treated as a complete sentence.

2.

A. Subject prefix plus noun.

<i>mpishi</i>	U <i>mpishi</i> ? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni <i>nikulima</i> .	Are you a cook? No, I am a farmer.
<i>nikulima</i>	U <i>nikulima</i> ? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni <i>karani</i> .	Are you a farmer? No, I am a clerk.
<i>karani</i>	U <i>karani</i> ? ---- Hapana, bwana. Mimi ni <i>mpishi</i> .	Are you a clerk? No, I am a cook.

B. Derivation: Abstract vs. animate nouns with the same stem.

<i>mpishi</i>	Yeye ni <i>mpishi</i> . ---- Afanya kazi ya <i>upishi</i> .	He is a cook. He does cooking.
<i>nikulima</i>	Yeye ni <i>nikulima</i> . Afanya kazi ya <i>ukulima</i> .	He is a farmer. He does farming.
<i>karani</i>	Yeye ni <i>karani</i> . Afanya kazi ya <i>ukarani</i> .	He is a clerk. He does clerical work.

C.

<i>mpishi</i>	Daudi na Juma ni <i>wapishi</i> . Wafanya kazi ya <i>upishi</i> .	Daudi and Juma are cooks. They do cooking.
<i>nikulima</i>	Daudi na Juma ni <i>wakulima</i> . Wafanya kazi ya <i>ukulima</i> .	Daudi and Juma are farmers. They do farming.
<i>karani</i>	Daudi na Juma ni <i>makarani</i> . Wafanya kazi ya <i>ukarani</i> .	Daudi and Juma are clerks. They do clerical work.

3.

A.

Daudi mpishi	Daudi ni mpishi mzuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya ukulima.	Daudi is a very good cook. He doesn't do farming.
Hamisi mkulima	Hamisi ni mkulima mzuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya upishi.	Hamisi is a very good farmer. He doesn't do cooking.
Abdallah karani	Abdallah ni karani mzuri sana. Hafanyi kazi ya upishi.	Abdallah is a very good clerk. He doesn't do cooking.

B. Subject prefixes with nouns.

wewe	Wewe u mpishi? Hapana. Mimi si mpishi, mimi ni mkulima.	Are you a cook? No, I am not a cook, I am a farmer.
wao	Wao ni wapishi? Hapana. Wao si wapishi, wao ni wakulima.	Are they cooks? No, they are not cooks, they are farmers.
yeye	Yeye ni mpishi? Hapana. Yeye si mpishi, yeye ni mkulima.	Is he a cook? No, he is not a cook, he is a farmer.
ninyi	Ninyi m wapishi? Hapana. Sisi si wapishi, sisi tu wakulima.	Are you (pl.) cooks? No, we are not cooks, we are farmers.

Unit 35

1. Basic Dialogue. He's a day laborer.

Hasani

kijana (VI-anim.)

a youth

Yule kijana hufanya kazi gani?

What kind of work does that young
fellow do?

Abdallah

kazi ya kibarua

casual labor

Yeye hufanya kazi ya kibarua.

He is a day laborer.

Hasani

mchukuzi (WA)

porter

Kumbe yu mchukuzi

Oh, he's a porter, then!

muda (N)

period of time

Amefanya kazi hii kwa muda gani?

How long has he done this kind of
work?

Abdallah

Kwa miaka mifine.

For four years.

Hasani

Yeye apenda kazi yake?

Does he like his work?

Abdallah

-nung'unika

to complain

juu (N)

on, concerning

Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake.

He doesn't complain about it.

NotesA. Hu-tense.

mimi hu <u>u</u> za mazao yangu	I sell my crops
sisi hu <u>u</u> za mazao yetu	we sell our crops
yeye hu <u>u</u> za mazao yake	he sells his crops
wao hu <u>u</u> za mazao yao	they sell their crops

The hu-tense of a verb has no subject prefix to indicate the class of the subject. The subject is therefore made explicit, either as a noun or as a pronoun, unless the identity of the subject is clear from what precedes the sentence.

The hu-tense is used where habitual or recurrent action is implied.

yeye hu <u>u</u> enda sokoni	he (regularly) goes to the market
wao hu <u>u</u> ja asubuhi	they (regularly) come in the morning

In the hu-tense, the verbs -enda and -isha, and verbs with monosyllabic stems like -ja, do not have -ku- or -kw- as they do in the other tenses that have been studied.

B. 'VI-animate' nouns.

Kijana wao amekwenda.	Their young fellow has gone.
Vijana wao wamekwenda.	Their young fellows have gone.

Compare Note 29.C concerning the 'N-animate' nouns. 'N-animate' nouns acted like ordinary N-class nouns only with respect to the shape of the singular and plural forms of the noun itself. The word kijana, which we may call a 'VI-animate' noun, is like an ordinary VI-class noun with respect to the singular and plural forms of the noun only. Otherwise, it is like a WA-class noun, even in the possessive concords which it requires.

C. The word juu.

Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake. He doesn't complain about his work.

The word juu is a noun, the approximate translation of which is 'the top'. This noun, however, has two characteristics which set it apart from other nouns: (1) it is seldom used without being followed by ya plus another noun, or by a possessive (yake, yako, etc.),

(2) it is seldom used as the subject or object of a verb. It may be used ('adverbially') without a possessive or another noun. (3) it does not occur in the plural.

For these reasons, juu is most commonly translated into English by a preposition, such as 'on, over, above, concerning'.

D. Special Note on the 'present tenses' of Swahili.

Swahili possesses three sets of affirmative indicative verb forms which in some sense may be called 'present.' These are typified by tuNAsema, twAsema, and (sisi)HUsema. In the preparation of the original draft of this course, and in comparison of the changes suggested in draft by various authorities, the choice among the three 'present tenses' displayed a greater degree of uncertainty than did any other point of grammar.

Accordingly, alternative tense forms have been indicated in many, though not all of the sentences concerning which Swahili speakers disagree among themselves.

2.

A. Hu-tense.

wewe	Wewe hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do you do?
Juma	Juma hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work does Juma do?
yeye	Yeye hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work does he do?
Juma na Daudi	Juma na Daudi hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do Juma and Daudi do?
wao	Wao hufanya kazi gani?	What kind of work do they do?

B.

wewe	Wewe hupenda kazi yako?	Do you like your work?
Juma	Juma hupenda kazi yake?	Does Juma like his work?
yeye	Yeye hupenda kazi yake?	Does he like his work?
Juma na Daudi	Juma na Daudi hupenda kazi yao?	Do Juma and Daudi like their work?

wao Wao hupenda kazi yao? Do they like their work?

C. Juu ya -----.

kazi Hanung'uniki juu ya kazi yake. He doesn't complain about his work.

nyumba Hanung'uniki juu ya nyumba yake. He doesn't complain about his house.

mpishi Hanung'uniki juu ya mpishi wake. He doesn't complain about his cook.

chakula Hanung'uniki juu ya chakula chake. He doesn't complain about his food.

mke Hanung'uniki juu ya mke wake. He doesn't complain about his wife.

watoto Hanung'uniki juu ya watoto wake. He doesn't complain about his children.

D. Concord: Noun plus demonstrative.

kazi Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya kazi hii. I do not want to complain about this work.

chakula Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya chakula hiki. I do not want to complain about this food.

vyakula Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya vyakula hivi. I do not want to complain about these foods.

nyumba Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya nyumba hii. I do not want to complain about this house.

nchi Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya nchi hii. I do not want to complain about this country.

vitu Sitaki kunung'unika juu ya vitu hivi. I do not want to complain about these things.

3.

A. Me-tense with a characteristic time expression.

kibarua	Amefanya kazi ya kibarua kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a laborer?
ukarani	Amefanya kazi ya ukarani kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a clerk?
ukulima	Amefanya kazi ya ukulima kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a farmer?
upishi	Amefanya kazi ya upishi kwa muda gani?	How long has he worked as a cook?

B. Cumulative.

Yeye hufanya kazi ya upishi. Kumbe yeye ni mpishi?!	He works as a cook. So he is a cook?!
Yeye hufanya kazi ya ukulima. Kumbe yeye ni mkulima?!	He works as a farmer. So he is a farmer?!
Yeye hufanya kazi ya ukarani. Kumbe yeye ni karani?!	He works as a clerk. So he is a clerk?!
Yeye hufanya kazi ya kibarua. Kumbe yeye ni mchukuzi?!	He works as a laborer. So he is a porter?!

4. A and B discuss the occupations of their friends C, D and E.

Unit 36

1. Basic Dialogue. Where were you yesterday?

Hamisi

-wa

be

jana

yesterday

Jana ulikuwa wapi?

Where were you yesterday?

Hadija

Nilikuwa sokoni.

At the market.

Hamisi

saa (N)

hour

ngapi?

how many?

Ulikwenda saa ngapi?

What time did you go?

Hadija

-ondoka

to leave

sita

six

Niliondoka nyumbani saa sita mchana. I left home at noon.

Hamisi

Ulinunua nini?

What did you buy?

Hadija

mboga (N)

(any food eaten together
with a main starchy dish)

chumvi (N)

salt

pilipili (N)

pepper

Nilinunua mboga, chumvi na pilipili. Green vegetables, salt and pepper.

Notes

A. Li-tense.

ulinumua nini?

what did you buy?

ulikwenda wapi?

where did you go?

The li-forms of a Swahili verb are formed in a manner exactly parallel to the na-forms and the me-forms. As with the latter, monosyllabic stems and -enda and -isha are preceded by ku-/kw-.

The meaning of the li-tense is similar to that of the English 'simple past' tense.

B. Locatives with -ni corresponding to 'at' 'to' 'from' depending on the context.

nilikwenda sokoni

I went to the market

niliondoka sokoni

I left the market

Note that noun plus locative -ni (e.g. sokoni) is translated either 'to' or 'from' depending on the identity of the verb.

C. Literal translation of saa ngapi?

The literal translation of saa ngapi? 'at what time?' is 'hours how many?'

2.

A. Hours of the day.

ngapi Hamisi alikwenda sokoni
saa ngapi?

What time did Hamisi go to the
market?

moja Hamisi alikwenda sokoni
saa moja?

Did Hamisi go to the market at
7 o'clock?

mbili Hamisi alikwenda sokoni
saa mbili?

Did Hamisi go to the market at
8 o'clock?

tatu Hamisi alikwenda sokoni
saa tatu?

Did Hamisi go to the market at
9 o'clock?

rine	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa rine?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 10 o'clock?
tano	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa tano?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 11 o'clock?
sita	Hamisi alikwenda sokoni saa sita?	Did Hamisi go to the market at 12 o'clock?

B. -wa plus locative expression.

wapi	Ulikuwa wapi saa sita mchana?	Where were you at 12 noon?
soko	Ulikuwa sokoni saa sita mchana?	Were you at the market at noon?
boma	Ulikuwa bomani saa sita mchana?	Were you at the District Office at noon?
shule	Ulikuwa shuleni saa sita mchana?	Were you at school at noon?

C. -ondoka plus locative expression.

nyumba	Mliondoka nyumbani saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave home yesterday?
soko	Mliondoka sokoni saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave the market yesterday?
shule	Mliondoka shuleni saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave school yesterday?
boma	Mliondoka bomani saa ngapi jana?	What time did you leave the District Office yesterday?

D. Concord: Noun, demonstrative, possessive; 'whose?'

chumvi	Chumvi hii ni ya nani?	Whose salt is this?
mboga	Mboga hizi ni za nani?	Whose vegetables are these?

pilipili	Pilipili hizi ni za nani?	Whose pepper is this?
vitu	Vitu hivi ni vya nani?	Whose things are these?
kiazi	Kiazi hiki ni cha nani?	Whose potato is this?
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyu ni wa nani?	Whose cow is this?

E. Concord: Noun, possessive, verb, adjective.

mpishi	Mpishi wao alikuwa mzuri sana.	Their cook was very nice.
nyumba	Nyumba yao ilikuwa nzuri sana.	Their house was very nice.
kijiji	Kijiji chao kilikuwa kizuri sana.	Their village was very nice.
vyakula	Vyakula vyao vilikuwa vizuri sana.	Their food was very nice.
shule	Shule yao ilikuwa nzuri sana.	Their school was very nice.
maembe	Maembe yao yalikuwa mazuri sana.	Their mangoes were very nice.

F.

	Mpishi wao alikuwa mzuri sana.	Their cook was very nice.
wapishi	Wapishi wao walikuwa wazuri sana.	Their cooks were very nice.
hodari	Wapishi wao walikuwa hodari sana.	Their cooks were very energetic.
watoto	Watoto wao walikuwa hodari sana.	Their children were very energetic.
mabaya	Watoto wao walikuwa wabaya sana.	Their children were very bad.
matunda	Matunda yao yalikuwa mabaya sana.	Their fruit was very bad.

Hapana. Nilikwenda saa tano
asubuhi.

No. I went at 11 o'clock in
the morning.

saba Ulikwenda sokoni saa saba
usiku?

Did you go to the market at
1 o'clock in the morning?

Hapana. Nilikwenda saa saba
mchana.

No. I went at 1 o'clock in
the afternoon.

Unit 37

1. Basic Dialogue. - What is your tribal background?

Butler

kabila (MA)

tribe

Kabila lako husema lugna gani?

What language does your tribe speak?

Abasi

Kizaramo

(language of the WaZaramo)

Kizaramo!

Kizaramo!

Butler

tena

again

-sikia

hear

Tafadhali, sema tena.

Would you repeat it please?

(or:...rudia tena.)

Sikusikia vizuri.

I didn't hear well.

(A better expression for eliciting a repetition of what has been said is naam?)Abasi

Nimesema 'Kizaramo.'

I said 'Kizaramo.'

Butler

Watu hawa wanakaa katika ñchi gani?

What territory do these people live
in?Abasi

-ishi (or: -kaa)

dwell

sehemu (N)

section

Waishi katika sehemu ya Dar es

They live in the vicinity of Dar es

Salaam. (or: Wanaishi. . .)

Salaam.

NotesA. Articulation of gh.

The middle consonant in lughha 'language' is not like anything which is used in standard pronunciation of English. The back of the tongue is near the soft palate, almost in the position which it occupies for the g in English gone. But the g in gone requires momentary complete stoppage of the air stream, while in lughha this stoppage doesn't quite get made.

B. Past negative forms with -ku-.

nilisikia vizuri	I heard well
sikusikia vizuri	I didn't hear well
hatukusikia vizuri	we didn't hear well

The second and third examples above contain verb forms with past negative meaning. They are constructed as follows:

<u>ha</u>	†	<u>subj. prefix</u>	†	<u>ku/kw</u>	†	<u>stem</u>
ha-		-tu-		-ku-		-sikia
ha-		-tu-		-kw-		-enda
ha-		-tu-		-ku-		-ja

These negative forms are sometimes used as negative counterparts of the affirmative li-tense, and sometimes as counterparts of the me-tense.

2.

A. Vizuri as a modifier of verbs.

-sikia	Sikusikia vizuri.	I did not hear well.
-sema	Sikusema vizuri.	I did not speak well.
-ona	Sikuona vizuri.	I did not see well.
-elewa	Sikuelewa vizuri.	I did not understand well.
-eleza habari	Sikueleza habari vizuri.	I did not explain the matters well.
-fanya kazi	Sikufanya kazi vizuri.	I did not work well.

B. Past negatives with -ku-.

-ja	Juma hakuja jana.	Juma did not come yesterday.
-enda	Juma hakwenda jana.	Juma did not go yesterday.
-furahi	Juma hakufurahi jana.	Juma was not happy yesterday.
-tumwa	Juma hakutumwa jana.	Juma was not sent yesterday.
-ondoka nyumbani	Juma hakuondoka nyumbani jana.	Juma did not leave home yesterday.
-taka chakula	Juma hakutaka chakula jana.	Juma did not want food yesterday.

C.

-enda kazini	Wachukuzi hawakwenda kazini.	The porters did not go to work.
-fanya kazi	Wachukuzi hawakufanya kazi.	The porters did not work.
-tumwa nyumbani	Wachukuzi hawakutumwa nyumbani.	The porters were not sent home.
-furahi	Wachukuzi hawakufurahi.	The porters were not happy.
-ja hapa	Wachukuzi hawakuja hapa.	The porters did not come here.

3.

A. Present affirmative and negative vs. past affirmative and negative.

Unahitaji chakula?	Do you need food?
La. Sihitaji.	No, I don't need any.
Ulihitaji chakula?	Did you need food?
La. Sikuhitaji.	No, I didn't need any.

B.

Unakwenda sokoni?	Are you going to the market?
La, siendi.	No, I am not going.

Ulikwenda sokoni?

La, sikuenda.

C.

Una njaa?

La, sina.

Ulikuwa na njaa?

La, sikuwa na njaa.

D.

Kuna nyama?

La, hakuna.

Kulikuwa na nyama?

La, hakukuwa na nyama.

E.

Tuna sukari ya kutosha?

Hatuna.

Tulikuwa na sukari ya kutosha?

La, hatukuwa na ya kutosha.

F.

Analipa kodi ya kichwa?

La, halipi.

Alilipa kodi ya kichwa?

La, hakulipa.

G.

Anauza nyumba yake?

La, hauzi.

Aliuza nyumba yake?

La, hakuuza.

Did you go to the market?

No, I did not go.

Are you hungry?

No, I am not.

Were you hungry?

No, I was not.

Is there any meat?

No, there is not any.

Was there any meat?

No, there was not any.

Do we have enough sugar?

We don't.

Did we have enough sugar?

No, we did not.

Does he pay poll tax?

No, he doesn't.

Did he pay poll tax?

No, he didn't.

Is he selling his house?

No, he isn't.

Did he sell his house?

No, he didn't.

Unit 38

1. Basic Dialogue. Where have you been?

Magese

Ewana Dodge, unatoka wapi?

Where are you coming from, Mr. Dodge?

Dodge

pwani (N)

beach

Ninatoka pwani.

From the beach.

Magese

-ogelea

to swim

Ulikwenda pwani kuogelea?

Did you go there to swim?

Dodge

-tembea

to go for a walk

-punga hewa

to change air

Hapana. Nilikwenda kutembea na

No. I went to walk and get a change

kupunga hewa.

of air.

Magese

mtu (WA)

person

Kuna watu wengi pwani?

Are there many people at the beach?

Dodge

-jaza

to fill up

-jaa

to get full

huko

there

Ndiyo, bwana, watu wengi wame aza

Yes, there are; the place is crowded.

huko.

('Yes, sir. Many people have filled that place up.')

Notes

This unit contains no new grammar. The students should experiment to see what variety they can give to conversations that begin with the line, 'Bwana Fulani, unatoka wapi?'

Listen to the conversations given on the tape. Try to write down the few unfamiliar words that they contain.

Unit 39

1. Basic Dialogue. Do you speak Luo?

Sangai

Je! Wajua kusema Kiluo?
(or: . . .Kijaluo?)

Say, do you know how to speak Luo?

Abasi

barábara

thoroughly, very well

Ndiyo. Nasema Kiluo barábara.

Yes, I speak Luo fluently.

Sangai

-jifunza

to study

lini?

when?

Ulijifunza lini kusema Kiluo?

When did you learn to speak Luo?

Abasi

Nilikaa katika mji wa Kisumu kwa
muda wa miaka mitano.

I lived in Kisumu for a period of
five years.

Sangai

ukifanya

you-doing

Ulikuwa ukifanya nini huko Kisumu?

What were you doing there at Kisumu?

Abasi

mwandishi (WA)

good writer

-kuu

big, principal

chama (VI)

union, association, club

mfanyakazi (WA)

worker

Nilikuwa mwandishi mkuu katika Chama
cha Wafanyakazi.

I was General Secretary in the
Labor Union.

Notes

A. The prefix ki- in the names of languages.

Wasema Kiluo? Do you speak Luo?

The name of the Luo language, in that language, is Dholuo, and the people are called Luo. But in Swahili, the prefix ki- is applied to the (Swahili) name for any people in order to indicate the style of life or speech of that people. So the Baganda call their language Luganda, but in Swahili it is called Kiganda; the Mashona call their language Chishona, but in Swahili it is called Kishona.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

mji	Ulikaa katika mji huo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that city?
nchi	Ulikaa katika nchi hiyo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that country?
jimbo	Ulikaa katika jimbo hilo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that province?
kijiji	Ulikaa katika kijiji hicho kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that village?
sehemu	Ulikaa katika sehemu hiyo kwa muda gani?	How long did you live in that section?

B. Kwa muda wa -----.

1	Nilikaa huko Dar es Salaam kwa muda wa mwaka mmoja.	I lived there in Dar es Salaam for a period of one year.
2	Nilikaa huko Dar es Salaam kwa muda wa miaka miwili.	I lived there in Dar es Salaam for a period of two years.

3 4 5

C. -jifunza.

Luo	Juma anajifunza Kiluo?	Is Juma learning Luo?
Swahili	Juma anajifunza Kiswahili?	Is Juma learning Swahili?
kazi ya ukarani	Juma anajifunza kazi ya ukarani?	Is Juma learning clerical work?
lugha mbili	Juma anajifunza lugha mbili?	Is Juma learning two languages?

3.

A. Present affirmative and negative.

Hamisi anajifunza Kiluo sasa? Hapana, hajifunzi.	Is Hamisi learning Luo now? No, he isn't.
Wewe unajifunza lugha ya Kikuyu sasa? Hapana, sijifunzi.	Are you learning Kikuyu language now? No, I'm not.
Tunajifunza kazi ya ukarani sasa? Hapana, hatujifunzi.	Are we learning clerical work now? No, we aren't.
Ninajifunza Kizaramo sasa? Hapana, hujifunzi.	Am I learning Zaramo now? No, you aren't.

B. A-tense, with person change, question to answer.

Wasema Kiswahili vizuri? Ndiyo. Nasema barábara.	Do you speak Swahili well? Yes, I speak it fluently.
Twasema Kiswahili vizuri? Ndiyo. Mwasema barábara.	Do we speak Swahili well? Yes, you speak it fluently.
Watu hawa wasema Kiswahili vizuri? Ndiyo. Wasema barábara.	Do these people speak Swahili well? Yes, they speak it fluently.
Mtu huyu asema Kiswahili? Ndiyo. Asema barábara.	Does this man speak Swahili well? Yes, he speaks it fluently.

Mwasema Kiswahili vizuri?
Ndiyo. Twasema barábara.

Do you (pl.) speak Swahili well?
Yes, we speak it fluently.

C.

Wajua kusema Kinyamwezi?
Nasema kidogo tu.

Do you know how to speak Nyamwezi?
I speak just a little.

Watu hao wajua kusema
Kinyamwezi?
Wasema kidogo tu.

Do those people know how to speak
Nyamwezi?
They speak just a little.

Mtoto huyo ajua kusema
Kinyamwezi?
Asema kidogo tu.

Does that child know how to speak
Nyamwezi?
He speaks just a little.

Watoto hao wajua kusema
Kinyamwezi?
Wasema kidogo tu.

Do those children know how to speak
Nyamwezi?
They speak just a little.

Unit 40

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a holiday trip.

Mutisya

kesho

tomorrow

~pya

new

Kesho ni Sikukuu ya Mwaka Mpya.

Tomorrow is the New Years holiday.

-shinda

spend the day

Wewe utashinda wapi?

Where are you going to spend the day?Njoroge

matembezi (pl. MA)

outing

Mimi, mke wangu na watoto tutakwenda

My wife and children and I are going

Voi kwa matembezi.

to Voi for an outing.

Mutisya

motokaa (N) (or: motakaa)

automobile

gari (MA)

car

moshi (MI)

smoke

Mtakwenda kwa motokaa, au kwa gari

Are you going by car, or by train?

la moshi?

Njoroge

-panda

mount, climb

-kusudia

plan

Tunakusudia kupanda gari la moshi.

We are planning to take the train.

Na wewe je?

And what about you?

Mutisya

mchezo (MI)

game

mashindano (MA)

race

farasi (N-anim.)

horse

Sijui. Pengine nitakaa nyumbani
tu; au nitakwenda kuona mashindano
ya farasi.

I don't know. Maybe I'll just stay
at home. Or maybe I'll go to watch
the horse races.

NotesA. Ta-tense.

Utashinda wapi?

Where will you spend the day?

Tutakwenda Voi.

We will go to Voi.

The future tense is formed with the tense prefix -ta-. There are, then, five tense prefixes, any one of which may fill the slot immediately after the subject prefix:

subj.	- tense -	obj.	stem
ni	na	-zi-	-ona
	me	etc.	
	li	(ku/kw)	
	ta		
	a		

With the last of these tense prefixes, of course, the subject prefixes have special forms. Also, the ku/kw before -enda, -isha and monosyllabic stems is not used in the a-tense.

2.

A. The ta-tense.

Voi	Mimi na mke wangu tutakwenda Voi kesho.	My wife and I will go to Voi tomorrow.
sokoni	Mimi na mke wangu tutakwenda sokoni kesho.	My wife and I will go to the market tomorrow.
kusini ya mji	Mimi na mke wangu tutakwenda kusini ya mji kesho.	My wife and I will go to the south of the city tomorrow.
pwani	Mimi na mke wangu tutakwenda pwani kesho.	My wife and I will go to the beach tomorrow.
kazini	Mimi na mke wangu tutakwenda kazini kesho.	My wife and I will go to work tomorrow.

B. Ta-tense.

wewe	Utakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will you go for a walk?
karani	Karani atakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will the clerk go for a walk?
wachukuzi	Wachukuzi watakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will the porters go for a walk?
yeye	Yeye atakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will he go for a walk?
wao	Wao watakwenda wapi kwa matembezi?	Where will they go for a walk?

C. Ta- vs. li- vs. me-tenses with -shinda.

↓	Wewe utashinda wapi kesho?	Where will you spend the day tomorrow?
yeye	Yeye atashinda wapi kesho?	Where will he spend the day tomorrow?

jana	Yeye alishinda wapi jana?	Where did he spend the day yesterday?
wao	Wao walishinda wapi jana?	Where did they spend the day yesterday?
kesho	Wao watashinda wapi kesho?	Where will they spend the day tomorrow?
leo	Wao wameshinda wapi leo?	Where did they spend the day today?
yeye	Yeye ameshinda wapi leo?	Where did he spend the day today?
kesho	Yeye atashinda wapi kesho?	Where will he spend the day tomorrow?
mimi	Mimi nitashinda wapi kesho?	Where shall I spend the day tomorrow?

3. Li-tense vs. ta-tense.

kwenda	Jana nilikwenda Morogoro, --- na kesho nitakwenda tena.	I went to Morogoro yesterday, --- and tomorrow I'll go again.
kununua	Jana tulinunua ndizi, --- na kesho tutamunua nyingine.	We bought bananas yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll buy some more.
kuuza	Jana aliuza ng'ombe, --- na kesho atauza wengine.	He sold cows yesterday, --- and tomorrow he'll sell some more.
kulipa	Jana nililipa kodi ya nyumba, --- na kesho nitalipa kodi ya kichwa.	I paid house rent yesterday, --- and tomorrow, I'll pay poll tax.
kupanda	Jana tulipanda gari la moshi, --- na kesho tutapanda tena.	We took a train yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll take it again.
kuona	Jana tulimwona Bwana Hasani, --- na kesho tutamwona tena.	We saw Hasani yesterday, --- and tomorrow we'll see him again.

4. Begin a number of conversations with the opening line, 'Utafanya nini kesho?'

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 40.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Nitakwenda sokoni kununua nyama na machungwa. | I'm going to the market to buy meat and oranges. |
| 2. Kesho asubuhi, tutakuletea dawa ya kichwa. | Tomorrow morning we will bring you a headache remedy. |
| 3. Watu wa kabila la Wakikuyu wanakaa katika jimbo la Kiambu. | People of the Kikuyu tribe live in the province of Kiambu. |
| 4. Mwandishi huyo alikuja kutoka nchi ya Amerika. | That secretary came from America. |
| 5. Tukapunge hewa huko upande wa mashariki ya mji. | Let's take a walk to the east of the city. |
| 6. Maziwa ni chakula kizuri sana kwa watoto. | Milk is a very good food for children. |
| 7. Sitaki kukaa hapa kwa muda wa siku nyingi. | I don't want to stay here for many days. |
| 8. Je, utakaa nyumbani au utakwenda kazini? | Are you going to stay at home, or are you going to go to work? |
| 9. Mananasi na machungwa yalikuwa mazuri. | The pineapples and oranges were good. |
| 10. Tuliyala. | We ate them (i.e. the pineapples and oranges). |
| 11. Sijambo bwana, nawe hujambo? | I'm fine (sir). And you? |
| 12. Sijambo, lakini mtoto wangu ni mgonjwa. | I'm all right, but my child is ill. |
| 13. Wachukuzi wanamung'unika juu ya mishahara yao. | The porters are complaining about their wages. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 14. Mtauza ndizi, machungwa na mananasi matano. | You (pl.) will sell bananas, oranges and pineapples. |
| 15. Mji wa Nairobi uko upande gani wa mji wa Mombasa? | What direction is Nairobi from Mombasa? |
| 16. Watu wengi hupenda sana kutembelea pwani. | Many people are very fond of walking along the sea shore. |
| 17. Mwaka huu baba yangu atanilipia ada ya shule. | This year, my father is going to pay my school fees for me. |
| 18. Bibi Mariamu husema Kizaramo barabara. | Miriamu speaks Kizaramo fluently. |
| 19. Unataka samaki wangapi? | How many fish do you want? |
| 20. Watashinda nyumbani siku ya leo. | They will spend today at home. |
| 21. Chakula hiki kina pilipili nyingi sana. | This food has a lot of pepper [in it.] |
| 22. Kwa kawaida wakulima hupata mazao mengi. | Usually farmers get large crops. |
| 23. Maembe hayo yalikuwa mabivu au mabichi? | Were those mangoes ripe or green? |
| 24. Nadhani maziwa ya shilingi moja yatatosha. | I think a shilling's worth of milk will be enough. |
| 25. Wachukuzi hawakufanya kazi vizuri. | The porters didn't work well. |
| 26. Pilipili haipatikani sokoni mwetu. | Pepper is not available in our market. |
| 27. Watu wengi hufanya kazi ya ukarani na ya upishi. | Many people work as clerks and cooks. |
| 28. Hapana, sitaki kula maembe. | No, I don't want to eat mangoes. |
| 29. Bwana Juma aliondoka leo asubuhi kwenda Voi. | Juma left this morning for Voi. |
| 30. Utumie dawa hii mara tatu kwa siku. | Please take this medicine three times a day. |

31. Asubuhi ya leo tutakula mayai,
matunda na maziwa. This morning we will have eggs, fruit
and milk.
32. Kwa kawaida vibarua hupata
mshahara mdogo tu. Ordinarily, day laborers get only very
low pay.
33. Umelipa kodi ya kichwa? Have you paid your poll tax?
34. Wazazi wetu hawakuondoka
nyumbani jana. Our parents didn't leave home
yesterday.
35. Vitu hivi ni vya nani? Whose things are these?
36. Nataka kumunulia mtoto wangu
ndizi. I want to buy my child some bananas.
37. Siku hizi ninaotesha muhogo. These days, I'm raising cassava.
38. Chakula chake kilikuwa kizuri
sana. His food was very good.
39. Wao si wapishi, wanafanya kazi
ya ukarani. They are not cooks; they are clerks.
40. Watu wengi wa Afrika ya Mashariki
husema lugha ya Kiswahili. Many people of East Africa speak the
Swahili language.

Unit 41

1. Basic Dialogue. Getting ready for church.

Daudi

-vaa	to put on clothes
nguo (N)	cloth, clothes
safi	clean

Baba, kwa nini unavaa nguo safi? Father, why are you putting on clean clothes?

Yohana

sababu (N)	reason
kanisa (N)	church

Kwa sababu ninakwenda kanisani. Because I'm going to church.
twende that we should go

Daudi, unataka twende kanisani? Do you want to go to church with me, Daudi?

Daudi

peke (N)	solitude
----------	----------

Hapana, baba. No, father.

Sitaki leo. I don't want to today.

Nitakwenda kesho peke yangu. I'll go by myself tomorrow.

Yohana

mama (N-pers.)	mother
----------------	--------

Lakini mama yako anakwenda pia. But your mother is going too.

Daudi

ijapokuwa	even if, although
mahali (PA)	place
~o ~ote	any at all
Ijapokuwa nitakaa nyumbani peke yangu,	Even if I'm going to stay ('be') at home by myself,
sitakwenda mahali popote siku ya leo.	I'm not going any place at all today.

NotesA. peke y-

nitakwenda peke yangu I'll go by myself

The noun peke, like juu (Note 35.C), is seldom used as subject or object of a verb, and it is used only with a possessive following it.

B. Use of ijapokuwa.

The word ijapokuwa is used in this dialogue, with an English translation of 'even so'. It is actually a rather complicated form of the verb -wa 'be', but its internal structure need not concern us here. It is sometimes used to introduce a clause: ijapokuwa mama atakwenda nitakaa nyumbani, 'even if mother is going I shall stay at home.'

C. Negative of ta-tense.

sitakwenda I won't go
hawataondoka they won't leave

The negative counterparts of the affirmative ta- forms discussed in Unit 40 are formed simply by placing the negative prefix ha- before the affirmative.

D. The mahali class.

mahali po pote anywhere at all

This phrase introduces two new features of Swahili grammar. One is the mahali concord class, which contains only this one word. The adjectival concord and the subject prefix which are associated with it are both pa-, and the possessive concord is p-.

E. ~o ~ote.

mahali po pote	anywhere at all
kitu cho chote	anything at all
mtu ye yote	anyone at all

The form ~o ~ote contains a double occurrence of some one concord. Such a form is pronounced as one word, but written as two. Note in the last example that the special form of the concord for singular animate nouns is ye.

2.

A. Concorde with ~o ~ote.

ndizi	Sitaki ndizi zo zote.	I do not want any bananas at all.
maziwa	Sitaki maziwa yo yote.	I do not want any milk at all.
kahawa	Sitaki kahawa yo yote.	I do not want any coffee at all.
nyama	Sitaki nyama yo yote.	I do not want any meat at all.
samaki	Sitaki samaki zo zote. (or: . . . wo wote.)	I do not want any fish at all.
chai	Sitaki chai yo yote.	I do not want any tea at all.
uji	Sitaki uji wo wote.	I do not want any gruel at all.
mkate	Sitaki mkate wo wote.	I do not want any bread at all.
watu	Sitaki watu wo wote.	I do not want anybody at all. I do not want anyone at all.
mtu	Sitaki mtu ye yote.	

B.

michezo	Hatukuona michezo yo yote.	We did not see a single game.
mikate	Hatukuona mikate yo yote.	We did not see a single loaf.

chungwa	Hatukuona chungwa lo lote.	We did not see any orange at all.
soko	Hatukuona soko lo lote.	We did not see any market at all.
kijiji	Hatukuona kijiji cho chote.	We did not see any village at all.
kitu	Hatukuona kitu cho chote.	We did not see anything at all.
viazi	Hatukuona viazi vyo vyote.	We did not see any potatoes at all.
watoto	Hatukuona watoto wo wote.	We did not see any children at all.
mtu	Hatukuona mtu ye yote.	We did not see anybody at all.

C.

jamaa	Yeye hana jamaa ye yote.	He does not have any relatives at all.
nyumba	Yeye hana nyumba yo yote.	He does not have any house.
kazi	Yeye hana kazi yo yote.	He does not have any job.
rafiki	Yeye hana rafiki ye yote.	He does not have any friend.
watoto	Yeye hana watoto wo wote.	He does not have any children.

3.

A. Future affirmative vs. negative.

Nitakwenda sokoni mchana. Na wewe je?	I shall go to the market this afternoon. How about you?
La, mimi sitakwenda.	No, I will not go.
Nitanunua nyumba mpya. Na wewe je?	I shall buy a new house. How about you?
La, mimi sitanunua.	No, I will not buy one.
Juma atalipa ada ya shule. Na Hamisi je?	Juma will pay school fees. How about Hamisi?
La, yeye hatalipa.	No, he will not pay them.

Juma atawasaidia rafiki zake. Na
Hamisi je?

La, yeye hatawasaidia.

Rafiki zangu watajifunza Kinyamwezi.

Na wako je?

La, wao hawatajifunza.

B. Peke y.....

Utakwenda sokoni na Juma?

La. Nitakwenda peke yangu.

Juma atakwenda sokoni na Hasani?

La. Atakwenda peke yake.

Watoto watakaa nyumbani na mama yao?

La. Watakaa peke yao.

Wachukuzi watakuja na bwana wao?

La. Watakuja peke yao.

C. o ote in reply to a question.

chungwa Wataka chungwa hili?
Hapana, sitaki chungwa
lo lote.

embe Wataka embe hili? Hapana,
sitaki embe lo lote.

nyama Wataka nyama hii? Hapana,
sitaki nyama yo yote.

samaki Wataka samaki hii? Hapana,
sitaki samaki yo yote.

Juma will help his friends. How
about Hamisi?

No, he will not help them.

My friends will learn Nyamwezi.

How about yours?

No, they will not learn it.

Will you go to the market with Juma?

No, I shall go alone.

Will Juma go to the market with
Hasani?

No, he will go alone.

Will the children stay at home with
their mother?

No, they will stay alone.

Will the porters come with their
master?

No, they will come alone.

Do you want this orange? No, I don't
want any orange at all.

Do you want this mango? No, I don't
want any mango at all.

Do you want this meat? No, I don't
want any meat at all.

Do you want this fish? No, I don't
want any fish at all.

m̄kate	Wataka m̄kate huu? Hapana, sitaki m̄kate wo wote.	Do you want this loaf of bread? No, I don't want any bread at all.
uji	Wataka uji huu? Hapana, sitaki uji wo wote.	Do you want this gruel? No, I don't want any gruel at all.
maziwa	Wataka maziwa haya? Hapana, sitaki maziwa yo yote.	Do you want this milk? No, I don't want any milk at all.

Unit 42

1. Basic Dialogue. Trouble in the kitchen!

Hamisi

Kuna nini?

What's the matter?

Hadija

-ungua

to burn

Nyama yaungua.

The meat is burning.

Hamisi

-jaribu

to try

-toa

to take away

jiko (plu.: meko)

stove, oven, kitchen, hearth

Jaribu kuitoa jikoni.

Try to take it out of the oven.

Hadija

maskini

a poor man

(she takes it out)

Oh! Maskini!

Oh! Too bad!

Tufanyeje sasa?

What shall we do now?

Hamisi

lázima

necessity

tuile

that we should eat it

-la

to eat

Ni lázima tuile.

We'll have to eat it.

Notes

A. Subjunctive forms.

unataka waende

do you want them to go?

ni lázima twende	it's necessary that we go
tufanyeje?	what shall we do?
	('that we should do how?')

In each of the above sentences, the last word is a 'subjunctive' form. They are formed as follows:

<u>Subj. pref.</u>	<u>obj. pref.</u>	<u>root</u>	<u>-a'-e</u>
wa-		-end-	-e
tu-		-sem-	-e
ni-	mw	-on-	-e
a-	etc.	-ish-	-i
a-		-jarib-	-u

If the indicative stem of the verb ends in -a, then the subjunctive stem ends in -e. Otherwise, the final vowel is the same as in the indicative.

A generally workable first approximation to an English translation of waende is 'that they should go'. In any given context, however, this translation seldom sounds like idiomatic English. See the examples at the head of this Note.

B. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{lázima} \\ \underline{lazíma} \end{array} \right\}$ plus subjunctive.

ni lázima tuile	we'll have to eat it
	('it is necessity that we should eat it')

The word $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{lázima} \\ \underline{lazíma} \end{array} \right\}$ 'necessity' is commonly followed by a subjunctive verb.

2.

A. Lázima with subjunctive.

kula	Ni lázima tule nyama.	We have to eat meat.
kununua	Ni lázima tununue nyama.	We have to buy meat.
kuleta	Ni lázima tulete nyama.	We have to bring meat.
kutoa	Ni lázima tutoe nyama <u>jikoni</u> .	We have to remove meat from the stove.

	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
mikate	Toa mikate jikoni.	Remove the loaves of bread from the stove.
	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove them now.
uji	Toa uji jikoni.	Remove the gruel from the stove.
	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
chai	Toa chai jikoni.	Remove the tea from the stove.
	Ni lázima uutoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
chakula	Toa chakula jikoni.	Remove the food from the stove.
	Ni lázima ukitoe sasa.	You have to remove it now.
viazi	Toa viazi jikoni.	Remove the potatoes from the stove.
	Ni lázima uvitoe sasa.	You have to remove them now.

B. Subjunctive, and present negative forms of a verb with final -u.

mama	Mama anafanya kazi jikoni.	Mother is working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kuḿsaidia.	Try to help her.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kuḿsaidia?	Why do you not try to help her?
mama na Asha	Mama na Asha wanafanya kazi jikoni.	Mother and Asha are working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kuwasaidia.	Try to help them.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kuwasaidia?	Why do you not try to help them?
mimi	Ninafanya kazi jikoni.	I am working in the kitchen.
	Jaribu kunisaidia.	Try to help me.
	Kwa nini hujaribu kunisaidia?	Why do you not try to help me?

C. Imperatives and locatives.

↓	Nenda jikoni.	Go to the kitchen.
kukaa	Kaa jikoni.	Stay in the kitchen.
nyumba	Kaa nyumbani.	Stay at home.
kutoka	Toka nyumbani.	Come from home.

shule	Toka shuleni.	Come from school.
kwenda	Nenda shuleni.	Go to school.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B whether certain articles are available in the market, and whether they are of good quality. B replies. For some articles, he says that he didn't see any at all in the market.

Unit 43

1. Basic Dialogue. More trouble in the kitchen.

Father

Kuna nini, hibi?

What's the matter, dear?
('What is there, lady?')

Mother

maji (pl. MA)

water

-mwagika

to become spilled

maji yamemwagika.

Some water has got spilled.

Father

Wapi?

Where?

Mother

kiti (VI)

chair

Juu ya kiti.

On the chair.

Father

-mwaga

to spill

Nani ameyamwaga?

Who spilled it?

Mother

Juma.

Juma.

Father

afadhali

it is better

-angalia

to pay attention

-pangusa (or -futa)

to wipe up

Si afadhali ayapanguse basi?

[Then] hadn't he better wipe it up?

Angalia, Juma! Usimwage tena!

Careful Juma! Don't spill [it] again.

Notes

A. Neuter stems.

maji yamemwagika	} the water is spilled the water has been spilled
mimi nimeyamwaga	

This dialogue contains two related verb stems: -mwagika 'to become spilled' and -mwaga 'to spill'. Both stems contain the root -mwag-. The first contains, between the root and the final vowel, a non-final suffix -ik-. This is the 'neuter' or 'stative' suffix. It indicates that the subject has gotten into some state, without saying anything at all about the means or the agent responsible.

The 'stative' suffix has a number of slightly different forms, largely parallel to those of the 'applied' suffix (Note 26.A).

-vun <u>ja</u>	-vunj <u>ika</u>
-rar <u>ua</u>	-rar <u>uka</u>
-pit <u>a</u>	-pit <u>ika</u>
-sik <u>ia</u>	-sik <u>ika</u>
-mwag <u>a</u>	-mwag <u>ika</u>
- <u>ona</u>	- <u>oneka</u>
- <u>leta</u>	- <u>leteka</u>

B. afadhali plus subjunctive.

afadhali ayafute	he'd better wipe it up ('it is better that he should wipe it up')
------------------	---

The uninflectable word afadhali is commonly followed by a subjunctive verb.

C. Negative subjunctive with -si-.

usimwage tena!	don't spill [it] again!
usiende!	don't go!
msiyafute	don't wipe it up

Negative subjunctive forms consist of:

<u>Subject prefix</u>	<u>-si-</u>	<u>(obj. pref.)</u>	<u>root</u>	<u>-a -e</u>
u	si		mwag	e
m		ya	fut	e
tu				
etc.				

D. The mass noun maji, which in its form and its concords is exactly like a plural noun of the MA class, has no singular counterpart. Compare also the noun mafuta 'oil'.

2.

A. Negative subjunctive.

maji	Usimwage maji!	Do not spill water!
maziwa	Usimwage maziwa!	Do not pour milk!
kahawa	Usimwage kahawa!	Do not pour coffee!
chai	Usimwage chai!	Do not pour tea!

B. Afadhali plus subjunctive.

kwenda	Afadhali twende.	We'd better go.
kufuta	Afadhali tufute maji.	We'd better wipe up the water.
kusaidia	Afadhali tumsaidie mtoto.	We'd better help the child.
kulipa	Afadhali tulipe kodi zetu.	We'd better pay our taxes.

C. A 'neuter' stem; juu ya _____.

↓	Maji yamemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some water has been spilled on the chair.
vyakula	Vyakula vimemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some food has been spilled on the chair.
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika juu ya kiti.	Some milk has been spilled on the chair.
kitambaa	Maziwa yamemwagika juu ya kitambaa.	Some milk has been spilled on the tablecloth.
chai	Chai imemwagika juu ya kitambaa.	Some tea has been spilled on the tablecloth.
jiko	Chai inemwagika juu ya jiko.	Some tea has been spilled on the stove.
chumvi	Chumvi inemwagika juu ya jiko.	Some salt has been spilled on the stove.

3.

A. Neuter vs. simple stems; concord of noun, subject prefix, object prefix.

maji	Maji yamemwagika. Nani ameyamwaga?	Water has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika. Nani ameyamwaga?	Milk has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
kahawa	Kahawa inemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Coffee has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
chai	Chai inemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Tea has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
chumvi	Chumvi inemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Salt has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?

sukari	Sukari imemwagika. Nani ameimwaga?	Sugar has gotten spilled. Who has spilled it?
viazi	Viazi vimemwagika. Nani amevimwaga?	Potatoes have gotten spilled. Who has spilled them?

B. Me-tense vs. ta-tense; object prefixes.

maji	Maji yamemwagika. Nani atayafuta?	Some water has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
maziwa	Maziwa yamemwagika. Nani atayafuta?	Some milk has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
kahawa	Kahawa imemwagika. Nani ataifuta?	Some coffee has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?
chai	Chai imemwagika. Nani ataifuta?	Some tea has been spilled. Who will wipe it up?

C. Me-tense vs. negative subjunctive; object prefixes.

maji	Umemwaga maji. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled some water. Do not spill it again!
maziwa	Umemwaga maziwa. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled some milk. Do not spill it again!
kahawa	Umemwaga kahawa. Usimwage tena!	You have spilled some coffee. Do not spill it again!
viazi	Umemwaga viazi. Usivimwage tena!	You have spilled some potatoes. Do not spill them again!
maharagwe	Umemwaga maharagwe. Usiyamwage tena!	You have spilled the beans. (lit.) Do not spill them again!

Unit 44

1. Basic Dialogue. Bicycle trouble.

Sangai

-sukuma to push along

baiskeli (N) bicycle

Kwa nini wasukuma baiskeli yako? Why are you pushing your bicycle?

Mutisya

-haribika to get broken

Jamaa, imeharibika. It's broken, my friend.

Sangai

-tengeneza to repair

siyo it is not it (used here as an
equivalent of English 'wouldn't
it?')

Afadhali uitengeneze basi, siyo? Wouldn't it be a good thing if you
fixed it, then?

Mutisya

-weza to be able

Siwezi kuitengeneza. I can't fix it.

fundi (MA animate) skilled worker of any kind

Naipeleka kwa fundi. I'm taking it to the repairman.

kwa heri to happiness, with good fortune

Kwa heri, bwana. Well, good-bye.

Sangai

Asante. Thanks.

Notes

A. Some additional pairs of simple and neuter stems.

The stative verb stem -haribika is related to the simple stem -haribu 'to damage, destroy'. The verb -ondoka 'to depart' is related to -ondoa 'to start off, take away', and -toka 'to come from' is related to -toa 'to supply, take out, offer'.

2.

A. -weza plus infinitive.

-sukuma	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kusukuma baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot push a big bicycle.
-tengeneza	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kutengeneza baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot repair a big bicycle.
-nunua	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kununua baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot buy a big bicycle.
-leta	Watoto wadogo hawawezi kuleta baiskeli kubwa.	Small children cannot bring a big bicycle.

B. Meaning of me-tense with a neuter stem.

baiskeli	Baiskeli imeharibika?	Is the bicycle damaged?
nguo	Nguo imeharibika?	Is the cloth damaged?
kiti	Kiti kimeharibika?	Is the chair damaged?
chakula	Chakula kimeharibika?	Is the food damaged?
motokaa	Motokaa imeharibika?	Is the motor car damaged?
jiko	Jiko limeharibika?	Is the stove damaged?

C. Concord: object prefix and object.

baiskeli	Tafadhali, uitengeneze baiskeli yangu.	Please repair my bicycle.
nyumba	Tafadhali, uitengeneze nyumba yangu.	Please repair my house.

kiti	Tafadhali, ukitengeneze kiti changu.	Please repair my chair.
viti	Tafadhali, uvitengeneze viti vyangu.	Please repair my chairs.
vitu	Tafadhali, uvitengeneze vitu vyangu.	Please repair my things.
motokaa	Tafadhali, uitengeneze motokaa yangu.	Please repair my motor car.

3.

A. Concord: Noun, subject prefix with locative stem object prefix.

mayai	Mayai yako wapi? Nimeyapeleka sokoni.	Where are the eggs? I took them to the market.
mboga	Mboga ziko wapi? Nimezipoleka sokoni.	Where are the vegetables? I took them to the market.
pilipili	Pilipili ziko wapi? Nimezipoleka sokoni.	Where is the pepper? I took it to the market.
muhogo	Muhogo uko wapi? Nimeupeleka sokoni.	Where is the cassava? I took it to the market.

B. Agreement of possessive stem in first sentence, subject prefix in second.

~etu	Jiko letu limeharibika. Hatuwezi kulitengeneza.	Our stove is damaged. We can't repair it.
~angu	Jiko langu limeharibika. Siwezi kulitengeneza.	My stove is damaged. I can't repair it.
~ake	Jiko lake limeharibika. Hawezi kulitengeneza.	His stove is damaged. He can't repair it.
~ao	Jiko lao limeharibika. Hawawezi kulitengeneza.	Their stove is damaged. They can't repair it.

C. Neuter vs. simple stems.

baiskeli	Baiskeli yangu imeharibika. Nani ameharibu?	My bicycle is in bad working condition. Who damaged it?
chakula	Chakula changu kimeharibika. Nani amekiharibu?	My food is spoiled. Who spoiled it?
motokaa	Motokaa yangu imeharibika. Nani ameharibu?	My motor car is in bad working condition. Who damaged it?
kiti	Kiti changu kimeharibika. Nani amekiharibu?	My chair is damaged. Who damaged it?

D. Affirmative vs. negative subjunctive.

kusukuma	Niisukume baiskeli? Hapana. Usiisukume.	Should I push the bicycle? No, don't push it.
kutengeneza	Niitengeneze baiskeli? Hapana. Usiitengeneze.	Should I fix the bicycle? No, don't fix it.
kununua	Niinunue baiskeli? Hapana. Usiinunue.	Should I buy the bicycle? No, don't buy it.
kuuza	Niiuze baiskeli? Hapana. Usiiuze.	Should I sell the bicycle? No, don't sell it.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B whether he can accompany him to town. B replies with a list of things that he must do first. A offers to help him.

Unit 45

1. Basic Dialogue. Trouble with a pen.

Abasi

kalamu (N)

pen

Tafadhali nisaaidie kalamu.

Please lend me a pen.

-andika

to write

Yangu haiandiki.

Mine doesn't write.

Sangai

wino (U)

ink

Lakini una wino?

But do you have ink?

Abasi

-vunjika

to become broken

Ndiyo, lakini kalamu imevunjika.

Yes, but my pen is broken.

Sangai

Wapi?

What part?

Abasi

nibu (N)

nib

~enyewe

-self

Nibu yenyewe.

The nib itself.

-lazimu

to be necessary

Yanilazimu ninunue nibu mpya kesho.

I must buy a new nib tomorrow.

Notes

A. An additional pair of simple and neuter stems.

The stative verb stem -vunjika 'to get broken' is related to the simple stem -vunja 'to break'.

B. -lazimu plus subjunctive or infinitive.

The verb -lazimu 'to be a necessity [to]' may be followed either by an infinitive or by a subjunctive form:

yanilazimu kununua mpya	}	I've got to buy a new one
yanilazimu ninunue mpya		

The subjunctive is considered better. In these examples, we have the a-tense of the verb. The subject prefix is that of the singular of the N-class, used here with no antecedent. This subject prefix used in this way is sometimes called 'impersonal.'

2.

A. Concords with ~pya.

kalamu	Nilinunua kalamu mpya jana.	I bought a new pen yesterday.
kiti	Nilinunua kiti kipya jana.	I bought a new chair yesterday.
viti	Nilinunua viti vipya jana.	I bought some new chairs yesterday.
baiskeli	Nilinunua baiskeli mpya jana.	I bought a new bicycle yesterday.
nguo	Nilinunua nguo mpya jana.	I bought some new clothes yesterday.
jiko	Nilinunua jiko jipya jana.	I bought a new stove yesterday.

B. -lazimu plus infinitive.

-tengeneza	Yanilazimu kutengeneza kalamu hii.	I must repair this pen.
-nunua	Yanilazimu kununua kalamu hii.	I must buy this pen.
-uza	Yanilazimu kuuza kalamu hii.	I must sell this pen.
-peleka	Yanilazimu kupeleka kalamu hii kwa fundi.	I must take this pen to the repairman.

C. -lazimu plus subjunctive.

mimi	Yanilazimu nilipe kalamu.	I must pay for the pen.
wao	Yawalazimu walipe kalamu.	They must pay for the pen.
yeye	Yamlazimu alipe kalamu.	He must pay for the pen.
sisi	Yatulazimu tulipe kalamu.	We must pay for the pen.
wewe	Yakulazimu ulipe kalamu.	You must pay for the pen.
ninyi	Yawalazimuni mlipе kalamu.	You (pl.) must pay for the pen.

D. enyewe.

mimi	Mimi mwenyewe nilikwenda.	I myself went.
wewe	Wewe mwenyewe ulikwenda.	You yourself went.
yeye	Yeye mwenyewe alikwenda.	He himself went.
sisi	Sisi wenyewe tulikwenda.	We ourselves went.
ninyi	Ninyi wenyewe mlіkwenda.	You yourselves went.
wao	Wao wenyewe walikwenda.	They themselves went.

3.

A. Agreement in successive sentences among subject, object, and possessive stem.

mimi	Nahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali nisaidie. Yangu haiandiki.	I need a pen. Please lend me one. Mine doesn't write.
Juma	Juma ahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali msaidie. Yake haiandiki.	Juma needs a pen. Please lend him one. His can't write.
sisi	Twahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali tusaidie. Zetu haziandiki.	We need pens. Please lend us some. Ours don't write.

watoto	Watoto wahitaji kalamu. Tafadhali wasaidie. Zao haziandiki.	The children need pens. Please lend them some. Theirs don't write.
B. <u>-mekwisha.</u>		
wino	Una wino wa kutosha? Hapana, wino umekwisha.	Do you have enough ink? No, ink is all gone.
uji	Una uji wa kutosha? Hapana, uji umekwisha.	Do you have enough gruel? No, gruel is all gone.
sukari	Una sukari ya kutosha? Hapana, sukari imekwisha.	Do you have enough sugar? No, sugar is all gone.
chai	Una chai ya kutosha? Hapana, chai imekwisha.	Do you have enough tea? No, tea is all gone.
maji	Una maji ya kutosha? Hapana, maji yamekwisha.	Do you have enough water? No, water is all gone.
maziwa	Una maziwa ya kutosha? Hapana, maziwa yamekwisha.	Do you have enough milk? No, milk is all gone.

Unit 46

1. Basic Dialogue. I've lost a letter.

Hamisi

barua (N)

letter

meza (N)

table

Umeiona barua juu ya meza?

Did you see the letter on the table?

Hadija

Kutoka wapi?

Where from?

Hamisi

muhuri (MI)

postmark

(or: chapa ya posta,
alama ya posta)

Ilikuwa na muhuri wa Afrika
Magharibi.

It had a West African postmark.

Hadija

Sijaiona. Imepotea?

I haven't seen it. Is it lost?

Hamisi

-kumbuka

to remember

-weka

to put

Siwezi kukumbuka niliweka wapi.

I can't remember where I put it.

-poteza

to lose

Fengine nimepoteza.

Maybe I've lost it.

Hadija

-kata

to cut

tamaa (N)

desire

'Usikate tamaa.'

Don't despair.

-tafuta

to look for

Nitakusaidia kuitafuta.

I'll help you look for it.

Notes

A. Causative stems.

imepotea	is it lost?
nimeipoteza	I've lost it
nimerudi	I have returned
nimeirudisha	I have returned it

The stem -poteza 'to lose' is a 'causative' stem which is related to the applied stem -potea 'to get lost'. The vowel of the causative suffix follows the same rule as the vowels of the applied and stative suffixes: it is -i- after u, i or a, and -e- after e or o. For this verb and some others, the consonant is -z-. The final vowel of causative infinitives is -a, regardless of the final vowel of the simple stem.

-pend-	'to like'	-pend-ez-	'to please'
-pot-	(Simple root no longer in use in this sense.)	-pot-ez-	'to lose, throw away'
-ja-	'to become full'	-ja-z-	'to fill'
-temb-	(Simple root no longer in use in this sense.)	-temb-ez-	'to cause to walk about'
-pelek-	'to go, send, take'	-pelek-ez-	'to cause to send, etc.'
-um-	'to bite, hurt'	-um-iz-	'to cause to hurt'

For many other verbs, the consonant is -sh-:

-end-	'to go'	-end-esh-	'to cause to go'
-sem-	'to speak'	-sem-esh-	'to cause to speak'
-ct-	'to grow, sprout'	-ct-esh-	'to raise (vegetables)'

-rud-	'to return'	-rud-ish-	'to cause to return'
-furah-	'to rejoice'	-furah-ish-	'to cause to rejoice'

Many verbs have -sh-, without a suffixial vowel, where a related stem has -k-:

-wak-	'to burr'	-wash-	'to ignite'
-anguk-	'to fall'	-angush-	'to drop'
-kumbuk-	'to remember'	-kumbush-	'to remind'
but -andik-	'to write'	-andik-ish-	'to dictate'
-wek-	'to put'	-wek-esh-	'to cause to put'

For more details, see Chapter XXXIV of Ashton's Swahili Grammar. While the above generalizations will be of great help in organizing and remembering the facts, it is safest in the beginning to learn each causative form separately.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative; -ku- as object prefix.

barua	Nani alikuletea barua hii?	Who brought you this letter?
barua (pl.)	Nani alikuletea barua hizi?	Who brought you these letters?
kalamu	Nani alikuletea kalamu hii?	Who brought you this pen?
nguo (sg.)	Nani alikuletea nguo hii?	Who brought you this cloth?
nguo (pl.)	Nani alikuletea nguo hizi?	Who brought you these clothes?
kitu	Nani alikuletea kitu hiki?	Who brought you this thing?
vitu	Nani alikuletea vitu hivi?	Who brought you these things?

B. -weka, juu ya -----.

↓	Niliweka kiti juu ya meza.	I put a chair on the table.
barua	Niliweka barua juu ya meza.	I put a letter on the table.

kalamu	Niliweka kalamu juu ya meza.	I put a pen on the table.
nguo	Niliweka nguo juu ya meza.	I put some clothes on the table.
kiti	Niliweka nguo juu ya kiti.	I put some clothes on the chair.
matunda	Niliweka matunda juu ya kiti.	I put some fruit on the chair.
nyama	Niliweka nyama juu ya kiti.	I put some meat on the chair.
jiko	Niliweka nyama juu ya jiko.	I put some meat on the stove.
maji	Niliweka maji juu ya jiko.	I put some water on the stove.

C. -weka plus locatives.

nguo	Weka nguo mezani.	Put the clothes on the table.
kalamu	Weka kalamu mezani.	Put the pen on the table.
ndizi	Weka ndizi mezani.	Put the bananas on the table.
viazi	Weka viazi mezani.	Put the potatoes on the table.

3.

A. Agreement of subject and object prefixes; concord of noun and object prefix.

kalamu	Nimepoteza kalamu. Nitakusaidia kuitafuta.	I lost a pen. I'll help you to look for it.
mayai	Nimepoteza mayai. Nitakusaidia kuyatafuta.	I lost some eggs. I'll help you to look for them.
chungwa	Nimepoteza chungwa. Nitakusaidia kulitafuta.	I lost an orange. I'll help you to look for it.
mkate	Nimepoteza mkate. Nitakusaidia kuutafuta.	I lost a loaf of bread. I'll help you to look for it.

B. Causative stem; concord including object prefix.

kalamu	Kalamu yangu imepotea. Nani ameipoteza?	My pen is lost. Who lost it?
--------	--	---------------------------------

barua	Barua yangu imepotea. Nani ameipoteza?	My letter is lost. Who lost it?
barua	Barua zangu zimepotea. Nani amezipoteza?	My letters are lost. Who lost them?
nguo	Nguo yangu imepotea. Nani ameipoteza?	My cloth is lost. Who lost it?
C.		
kalamu	Kalamu zetu zimepotea. Mmezipoteza lini?	Our pens are lost. When did you lose them?
barua	Barua zetu zimepotea. Mmezipoteza lini?	Our letters are lost. When did you lose them?
nguo	Nguo zetu zimepotea. Mmezipoteza lini?	Our clothes are lost. When did you lose them?
D. Agreement of subject prefix and possessive stem.		
wewe	Unatoka wapi? Silikumbuki jina lako.	Where are you from? I don't remember your name.
yeye	Anatoka wapi? Silikumbuki jina lake.	Where is he from? I don't remember his name.
ninyi	Mnatoka wapi? Siyakumbuki majina yenu.	Where are you all from? I don't remember your names.
wao	Wanatoka wapi? Siyakumbuki majina yao.	Where are they from? I don't remember their names.

Conversation Starters

1. A (an employer) gives directions to B (a domestic servant), and answers B's questions about details of his duties.

Unit 47

1. Basic Dialogue. Broken dishes.

(Loud crash off stage.)

Mother

Nini hicho kilichovunjika?

What's that that broke?

(or: Kitu kimevunjika nini?)

Daughter

-angusha

to cause to fall

chombo (VI)

vessel

-pakua

to divide

Mariamu ameangusha vyombo vya

Mary dropped the dishes.

kupakulia chakula.

('... the vessels for dividing
out the food.')Mother

~pi?

which?

Vipi vimevunjika?

Which ones are broken?

Daughter

sahani (N)

plate

kikombe (VI)

cup

kisahani (VI)

saucer

bilauri (N) or: glasi (N)

glass

~ote

all

Sahani mbili, vikombe vitatu,

Two plates, three cups, one saucer,

kisahani kimoja, na bilauri zote!

and all the glasses!

Mother

Bilauri zilikuwa ngapi?

How many glasses were there?

('Glasses they-were how-many?')

Daughter

-fikiri

to think

Mama, nafikiri zilikuwa nne.

Four, I think, Mother.

2.

A. Si as negative copula; the invariable adjective safi.

sahani Sahani hii si safi sana.

This plate is not very clean.

sahani Sahani hizi si safi sana.
(pl.)

These plates are not very clean.

kikombe Kikombe hiki si safi sana.

This cup is not very clean.

vikombe Vikombe hivi si safi sana.

These cups are not very clean.

bilauri Bilauri hii si safi sana.

This glass is not very clean.

bilauri Bilauri hizi si safi sana.
(pl.)

These glasses are not very clean.

nguo Nguo hii si safi sana.

This cloth is not very clean.

B. Concord with ote.

sahani Sahani zote ni safi sasa.

All the plates are clean now.

vikombe Vikombe vyote ni safi sasa.

All the cups are clean now.

visahani Visahani vyote ni safi sasa.

All the saucers are clean now.

bilauri Bilauri zote ni safi sasa.

All the glasses are clean now.

nguo Nguo zote ni safi sasa.

All the clothes are clean now.

C. Concord with pi.

vikombe Vikombe vipi si safi?

Which cups are not clean?

kikombe Kikombe kipi si safi?

Which cup is not clean?

sahani (pl.)	Sahani zipi si safi?	Which plates are not clean?
sahani	Sahani ipi si safi?	Which plate is not clean?
nguo	Nguo ipi si safi?	Which cloth is not clean?

D. Concord with ote.

bilauri	Mariamamu amevunja bilauri zote.	Mariamamu has broken all the glasses.
vyombo	Mariamamu amevunja vyombo vyote.	Mariamamu has broken all the dishes.
visahani	Mariamamu amevunja visahani vyote.	Mariamamu has broken all the saucers.
vikombe	Mariamamu amevunja vikombe vyote.	Mariamamu has broken all the cups.
sahani	Mariamamu amevunja sahani zote.	Mariamamu has broken all the plates.

3.

A. Concords in successive short sentences.

sahani moja	Sahani moja imeanguka. Ipi? Yako. Nani ameziangusha?	One plate has fallen. Which one? Yours. Who made it fall?
sahani mbili	Sahani mbili zimeanguka. Zipi? Zako. Nani ameziangusha?	Two plates have fallen. Which ones? Yours. Who made them fall?
kikombe kimoja	Kikombe kimoja kimeanguka. Kipi? Chako. Nani amekiangusha?	One cup has fallen. Which one? Yours. Who made it fall?
vikombe viwili	Vikombe viwili vimeanguka. Vipi?	Two cups have fallen. Which ones?

Vyako.

Yours.

Nani ameviangusha?

Who made them fall?

B. Neuter vs. simple stems; concord including object prefix.

kalamu Kalamu yangu imevunjika.

My pen is broken.

Nani ameivunja? or:

Who broke it?

Nani aliyeivunja?

bilauri Bilauri yangu imevunjika.

My glass is broken.

Nani ameivunja?

Who broke it?

kisahani Kisahani changu kimevunjika.

My saucer is broken.

Nani amekivunja?

Who broke it?

kikombe Kikombe changu kimevunjika.

My cup is broken.

Nani amekivunja?

Who broke it?

C. -kuwa ngapi?; concord with ngapi.

vikombe Vikombe safi vilikuwa vingapi?

How many clean cups were there?

Vilikuwa vîne.

There were four.

visahani Visahani safi vilikuwa vingapi?

How many clean saucers were

there?

Vilikuwa vîne.

There were four.

sahani Sahani safi zilikuwa ngapi?

How many clean plates were

there?

Zilikuwa ñne.

There were four.

bilauri Bilauri safi zilikuwa ngapi?

How many clean glasses were

there?

Zilikuwa ñne.

There were four.

D. Concord: Noun and two adjectives.

vikombe Kuna vikombe vipya vingapi?

How many new cups are there?

Kuna vitano.

There are five.

visahani Kuna visahani vipya vingapi?

How many new saucers are there?

Kuna vitano.

There are five.

kalamu	Kuna kalamu mpya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new pens are there? There are five.
nguo	Kuna nguo mpya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new cloths are there? There are five.
nyumba	Kuna nyumba mpya ngapi? Kuna tano.	How many new houses are there? There are five.

Unit 48

1. Basic Dialogue. Lighting the lamp.

Hamisi

giza (MA)

darkness

-ingia

to enter

Giza laingia.

It's getting dark.

taa (N)

a lighting device

(lamp, light bulb, etc.)

mafuta (pl. MA)

oil, grease

-washa

to cause to light up

Tafadhali, nipatie taa ya mafuta,

Please get me the lamp so I [can]

niwashe.

light [it].

Hadija

-chukua

to take, carry

Chukua taa. Nimeileta.

Here it is.

('Take it. I've brought it.')

Hamisi

Inayo mafuta ya kutosha?

Does it have enough oil?

Hadija

-tia

put, pour

chupa (N)

bottle

jioni

evening

Ndiyo, tulitia chupa mbili jana

Yes, we put in two bottles yesterday

jioni.

evening.

chakula	Wachukuzi wanacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do the porters have enough food for tonight?
ninyi	Ninyi mnacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do you have enough food for tonight?
watoto	Watoto wanacho chakula cha kutosha usiku huu?	Do the children have enough food for tonight?

D. -tia.

↓	Tutatia mafuta katika taa.	We will put oil into the lamp.
chupa	Tutatia mafuta katika chupa.	We will put oil into the bottle.
maji	Tutatia maji katika chupa.	We will put water into the bottle.
kikombe	Tutatia maji katika kikombe.	We will put water into the cup.
bilauri	Tutatia maji katika bilauri.	We will put water into the glass.
maziwa	Tutatia maziwa katika bilauri.	We will put milk into the glass.
chupa	Tutatia maziwa katika chupa.	We will put milk into the bottle.

E. Imperative plus subjunctive.

mafuta	Lete mafuta nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring oil for me to put into this bottle.
maziwa	Lete maziwa nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring milk for me to put into this bottle.
maji	Lete maji nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring water for me to put into this bottle.
wino	Lete wino nitie katika chupa hii.	Bring ink for me to put into this bottle.

3.

A. Imperative plus subjunctive.

kalamu	Mletee kalamu aitengeneze.	Bring him the pen so that he can fix it.
--------	----------------------------	---

kalamu (pl.)	Mletee kalamu azitengeneze.	Bring him the pens so that he can fix them.
baiskeli	Mletee baiskeli aitengeneze.	Bring him the bicycle so that he can fix it.
viti	Mletee viti avitengeneze.	Bring him the chairs so that he can fix them.
motokaa	Mletee motokaa aitengeneze.	Bring him the car so that he can fix it.
taa	Mletee taa aitengeneze.	Bring him the lamp so that he can fix it.

B. Second person plural object prefix.

vikombe	Juma aliwapatieni vikombe vingapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia vikombe vyo vyote!	How many cups did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any cup at all!
viazi	Juma aliwapatieni viazi vingapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia viazi vyo vyote!	How many potatoes did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any at all!
mayai	Juma aliwapatieni mayai mangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia mayai yo yote!	How many eggs did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any egg at all!
maembe	Juma aliwapatieni maembe mangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia maembe yo yote!	How many mangoes did Juma get you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any mango at all!
mikate	Juma aliwapatieni mikate mingapi jana jioni?	How many loaves of bread did Juma bring you yesterday evening?

	Hakutupatia mikate yo yote!	He didn't bring us any loaf of bread at all!
taa	Juma aliwapatieni taa ngapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia taa zo zote!	How many lamps did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any lamp at all!
chupa	Juma aliwapatieni chupa ngapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia chupa zo zote!	How many bottles did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any bottle at all!
ng'ombe	Juma aliwapatieni ng'ombe wangapi jana jioni? Hakutupatia ng'ombe wo wote!	How many cattle did Juma bring you yesterday evening? He didn't bring us any cattle at all!

Conversation Starters

1. A (an employer) returns from a trip, and discusses the trip with B (a domestic servant).
2. A then questions B about the state of the house, the dishes, etc. in his absence, and about the adequacy of supplies for the immediate future.

Unit 49

1. Basic Dialogue. Lighting the lamp.

Son

kiberiti (VI)
(or: kibiriti)

box or book of matches

kijiti cha kiberiti (VI)

a single match

Tafadhali, nipatie kiberiti.

Please get me a match.

Mother

Viberiti vyote vimekwisha.

They're all gone.

Son

pesa (N)

coins

Unazo pesa za kumumua vingine?

Do you have money to buy some more?

Mother

senti (N) (or: pesa (N))

small change

sanduku (N)

box

Ndiyo. Chukua senti kutoka

Yes, take some change out of the

sandukuni.

box.

haraka (N)

haste

Na ufanye haraka. Giza laingia.

And hurry, it's getting dark.

('Darkness enters.')

Son

Ndiyo, mama.

Yes, Mother.

2.

A. Concords with ~pya.

kiberiti Tafadhali, nipatie kiberiti
kipya.

Please get me a new match.

viberiti	Tafadhali, nipatie viberiti vipya.	Please get me some new matches.
sanduku	Tafadhali, nipatie sanduku jipya.	Please get me a new box.
nguo	Tafadhali, nipatie nguo mpya.	Please get me some new clothes.
chupa	Tafadhali, nipatie chupa mpya.	Please get me a new bottle.
taa	Tafadhali, nipatie taa mpya.	Please get me a new lamp.

B. Meaning of me-tense of -(kw)isha.

viberiti	Viberiti vimekwisha, mama.	The matches are all used up, mother.
vikombe	Vikombe vimekwisha, mama.	The cups are all gone, mother.
siagi	Siagi imekwisha, mama.	The butter is all gone, mother.
sahani	Sahani zimekwisha, mama.	The plates are all gone, mother.
pesa	Pesa zimekwisha, mama.	The money is all gone, mother.
mafuta	Mafuta yamekwisha, mama.	The oil is all gone, mother.
maji	Maji yamekwisha, mama.	The water is all gone, mother.
njugu	Njugu zimekwisha, mama.	The ground nuts are all gone, mother.

C. ~a plus infinitive.

-nunua	Mnazo pesa za kununua mafuta?	Do you have money to buy oil?
-lipa	Mnazo pesa za kulipa kodi?	Do you have money to pay taxes?
-tosha	Mnazo pesa za kutosha?	Do you have money enough?

D. -chukua.

↓	Nani alichukua senti kutoka sandukuni?	Who took the change from the box?
---	--	-----------------------------------

kalamu	Nani alichukua kalamu kutoka sandukuni?	Who took the pen from the box?
meza	Nani alichukua kalamu kutoka mezani?	Who took the pen from the table (drawer)?
viberiti	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka mezani?	Who took the matches from the table (drawer)?
nyumba	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka nyumbani?	Who took the matches from the house?
motakaa	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka motokaani?	Who took the matches from the car?
bilauri	Nani alichukua viberiti kutoka bilaurini?	Who took the matches from the glass?
mafuta	Nani alichukua mafuta kutoka bilaurini?	Who took the oil from the glass?
taa	Nani alichukua mafuta kutoka taani?	Who took the oil from the lamp?

3.

A. Multiple concords.

pesa	Unazo pesa za kutosha? Sina pesa zo zote.	Do you have enough money? I don't have any money at all.
senti	Unazo senti za kutosha? Sina senti zo zote.	Do you have enough change? I don't have any change at all.
mafuta	Unayo mafuta ya kutosha? Sina mafuta yo yote.	Do you have enough oil? I don't have any oil at all.
maji	Unayo maji ya kutosha? Sina maji yo yote.	Do you have enough water? I don't have any water at all.
mikate	Unayo mikate ya kutosha? Sina mikate yo yote.	Do you have enough bread? I don't have any bread at all.

uji	Unao uji wa kutosha? Sina uji wo wote.	Do you have enough gruel? I don't have any gruel at all.
nyama	Unayo nyama ya kutosha? Sina nyama yo yote.	Do you have enough meat? I don't have any meat at all.

B. Li-tense vs. past negative with -ku-.

kuchukua	Ulichukua senti ngapi kutoka sandukuni? Sikuchukua nyingi.	How many cents did you take out of the box? I didn't take many.
kuweka	Uliweka senti ngapi sandukuni? Sikuweka nyingi.	How many cents did you put into the box? I didn't put many.
kuona	Uliona senti ngapi sandukuni? Sikuona nyingi.	How many cents did you see in the box? I didn't see many.

C.

kuchukua	Mlichukua viberiti vingapi nyumbani? Hatukuchukua vingi.	How many matches did you (pl.) take out of the house? We didn't take many.
kuweka	Mliweka viberiti vingapi nyumbani? Hatukuweka vingi.	How many matches did you (pl.) put in the house? We didn't put many.
kuona	Mliona viberiti vingapi nyumbani? Hatukuona vingi.	How many matches did you (pl.) see in the house? We didn't see many.

Unit 50

1. Basic Dialogue. I'm not hungry.

Mother

Unakitaka chakula hiki?

Do you want this food?

Son

Hapana, sikitaki asante.

No, thank you.

Mother

wa nini?

Why [not]?

Son

-maliza

to finish

Kwa sababu sina njaa.

Because I'm not hungry. I've just

Nimemaliza kula sasa hivi.

now finished eating.

Mother

kinywaji (VI)

a drink

Pengine wataka kinywaji.

Maybe you'd like a drink.

Son

Ndiyo. Tafadhali nipatie bilauri

Yes, a glass of orange juice would

moja ya maji ya machungwa.

be fine.

Mother

-nywa

to drink

Basi chukua. Mimi nitakunywa soda.

Here you are. ('Then, take') I'll

have some soda.

Notes

A. The phrase sasa hivi.

Note the use of hivi, which has the form of the proximal demonstrative,

plural VI class, as modifier of sasa 'now' to produce sasa hivi 'just now.' The phrase hivi sasa is also used in this sense.

2.

A. Concord: Noun and demonstrative.

chakula	Unataka chakula hicho?	Do you want that food?
karanga	Unataka karanga hizo?	Do you want those ground nuts?
mkate	Unataka mkate huo?	Do you want that bread?
kinywaji	Unataka kinywaji hicho?	Do you want that drink?
siagi	Unataka siagi hiyo?	Do you want that butter?
nyama	Unataka nyama hiyo?	Do you want that meat?

B. -me-maliza plus infinitive.

-la	Juma amemaliza kula sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished eating.
-leta	Juma amemaliza kuleta kinywaji sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished bringing a drink.
-tuletea	Juma amemaliza kutuletea vinywaji sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished bringing us drinks.
-fanya	Juma amemaliza kufanya kazi sasa hivi.	Juma has just now finished working.

C. hu-tense; concord with ~ingi.

chai	Watu wote wa nchi hii hunywa chai nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of tea.
kahawa	Watu wote wa nchi hii hunywa kahawa nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of coffee.
maziwa	Watu wote wa nchi hii hunywa maziwa mengi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of milk.
soda	Watu wote wa nchi hii hunywa soda nyingi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of soda.

maji ya machungwa	Watu wote wa nchi hii hunywa maji ya machungwa mengi.	Everyone in this country drinks a lot of orange juice.
----------------------	--	---

D.

nyama	Watu wengi wa nchi hii hula nyama nyingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of meat.
karanga	Watu wengi wa nchi hii hula karanga nyingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of ground nuts.
muhogo	Watu wengi wa nchi hii hula muhogo mwingi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of cassava.
mahindi	Watu wengi wa nchi hii hula mahindi mengi.	Many people in this country eat a lot of maize.

3.

A. Me-tense vs. negative with -ja-.

wewe	Umamaliza kula sasa? Hapana, sijamaliza bado.	Have you finished eating now? No, I haven't finished yet.
ninyi	Mmemaliza kula sasa? Hapana, hatujamaliza bado.	Have you all finished eating now? No, we haven't finished yet.
watu wote	Watu wote wamamaliza kula sasa? Hapana, hawajamaliza bado.	Has everyone finished eating now? No, they haven't finished yet.

B. Present affirmative vs. negative, with object prefix.

chakula	Unakitaka chakula hiki? Hapana, sikitaki, asante.	Do you want this food? No, I don't want it, thank you.
mkate	Unautaka mkate huu? Hapana, siutaki, asante.	Do you want this bread? No, I don't want it, thank you.
mikate	Unaitaka mikate hii? Hapana, siitaki, asante.	Do you want these loaves? No, I don't want them, thank you.

embe	Unalitaka embe hili? Hapana, silitaki, asante.	Do you want this mango? No, I don't want it, thank you.
maembe	Unayataka maembe haya? Hapana, siyataki, asante.	Do you want these mangoes? No, I don't want them, thank you.
ndizi	Unaitaka ndizi hii? Hapana, siitaki, asante.	Do you want this banana? No, I don't want it, thank you.
ndizi (pl.)	Unazitaka ndizi hizi? Hapana, sizitaki, asante.	Do you want these bananas? No, I don't want them, thank you.
kiazi	Unakitaka kiazi hiki? Hapana, sikitaki, asante.	Do you want this potato? No, I don't want it, thank you.
viazi	Unavitaka viazi hivi? Hapana, sivitaki, asante.	Do you want these potatoes? No, I don't want them, thank you.

C. Negative present of monosyllabic verb stem, with loss of ku-.

Mariamamu	Mariamamu anakula viazi? La, hali viazi, anakula mkate.	Is Mariamamu eating potatoes? No, she isn't eating potatoes. She's eating bread.
watoto	Watoto wanakula viazi? La, hawali viazi, wanakula mkate.	Are the children eating potatoes? No, they aren't eating potatoes. They are eating bread.
wewe	Unakula viazi? La, sili viazi, ninakula mkate.	Are you eating potatoes? No, I'm not eating potatoes. I'm eating bread.
ninyi	Mnakula viazi? La, hatuli viazi, tunakula mkate.	Are you all eating potatoes? No, we aren't eating potatoes. We're eating bread.

D.

Daudi	Daudi anakunywa kahawa? La, hanywi kahawa, anakunywa chai.	Is Daudi drinking coffee? No, he isn't drinking coffee. He's drinking tea.
-------	--	--

wote	Wote wanakunywa kahawa? La, hawanywi kahawa, wanakunywa chai.	Are they all drinking coffee? No, they aren't drinking coffee. They're drinking tea.
wewe	Unakunywa kahawa? La, sinywi kahawa, ninakunywa chai.	Are you drinking coffee? No, I'm not drinking coffee. I'm drinking tea.
ninyi	Mnakunywa kahawa? La, hatunywi kahawa, tunakunywa chai.	Are you (pl.) drinking coffee? No, we aren't drinking coffee. We're drinking tea.

Conversation Starters

1. A inquires of B about what the people of his country customarily eat and how they spend their leisure time. B replies, and asks similar questions about the people of A's country.

2. Within the limits of the vocabulary that has been met up to this point, give an account of a typical day in your own life. Do the same for a day in the life of a domestic servant.

Unit 51

1. Basic Dialogue. What grade are you in?

Magese

-soma

to read, study

darasa (MA)

class

Unasoma darasa gani mtoto?

What class are you in, [child]?

Juma

Niko katika darasa la tano.

I'm in Standard 5.

Magese

somo (MA)

an academic subject, a lesson

Wapenda masomo gani shuleni?

What subjects do you like in school?

Juma

hesabu (N)

arithmetic

dini (N)

religion

Napenda hesabu, Kiingereza, dini
na historia.

I like arithmetic, English, religion
and history.

Magese

-endelea

to continue

-tumaini

to hope

Watumaini kuendelea katika masomo?

Do you hope to continue in your
studies?

Juma

Mungu (MI)	God
-jalia	to assist (ordinarily in the sense of God's help)
mpaka	to, until
chuo (VI)	school, college
Mungu akinijalia nitaendelea katika masomo mpaka chuo cha juu.	If God helps me, I will go on in my studies to college.

Magese

mwishowe	finally
Mwishowe utafanya kazi gani?	What kind of work will you do after that?

Juma

siasa (N) (or: utetezi (U))	politics
Nitafanya kazi ya siasa.	I'm going into politics.

Notes

A. Juu with no possessive following it.

chuo cha juu higher school

Here, juu is used without a possessive or a linking -a following it.

cf. Note 35.C.

B. First and second person subject prefixes used with locative stems.

niko katika darasa la tano I'm in Standard 5.

The first-person and second-person subject pronouns as well as the third-person pronouns may be used before the stem -ko, and before -po and -mo:

yuko nyumbani	he's at home
yupo nyumbani	he's at the house
yumo nyumbani	he's in the house

The difference in meaning between -po and -ko is not sharply defined. Generally speaking, -po implies a more definite idea of the location, while -ko has to do more with the mere existence of something regardless of place. -mo implies location of something within something else.

2.

A. -endelea plus infinitive; mpaka.

-soma Utaendelea kusoma mpaka How late are you going to read?
saa ngapi?

-fanya Utaendelea kufanya kazi How late are you going to work?
mpaka saa ngapi?

-tembea -ogelea

B. -jua plus infinitive.

-ogelea Watoto wote wanajua Do all the children know how to
kuogelea? swim?

-soma -andika -sema

3.

A. Nouns with the same stem but different prefixes.

mpishi	Baba yake ni mpishi.	His father is a cook.
	Yeye afanya kazi ya upishi.	He does cooking.
mkulima	Baba yake ni mkulima.	His father is a farmer.
	Yeye afanya kazi ya ukulima.	He does farming.
mtetezi	Baba yake ni mtetezi.	His father is a politician.
	Yeye afanya kazi ya utetezi.	He does political work.

mpagazi	Baba yake ni mchukuzi Yeye afanya kazi ya kibarua.	His father is a porter. He does casual labor.
mwandishi	Baba yake ni mwandishi. Yeye afanya kazi ya uandishi.	His father is a secretary. He does secretarial work.

B. Personal subject prefixes with locative stems.

wewe	Uko wapi? Nimo nyumbani.	Where are you? I am in the house.
ninyi	Mko wapi? Tumo nyumbani.	Where are you (pl.)? We are in the house.
yeye	Yuko wapi? Yumo nyumbani.	Where is he? He is in the house.
wao	Wako wapi? Wamo nyumbani.	Where are they? They are in the house.

4. A asks B, a child, about his school work and about his chores at home.

Unit 52

1. Basic Dialogue. If you drink too much. . .

Mirambo

Mwone, yule mtu hawezi kutembea
vyema.

Look at him! That man can't walk
properly.

Sangai

pombe (N)

beer

Yeye anakwisha kunywa pombe.

He's been drinking beer.

('he has finished drinking beer')

Mirambo

Mwe unapenda kunywa pombe?

Do you like to drink it?

Sangai

wakati (U) (pl. nyakati)

time

Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa kidogo
tu.

Sometimes I drink just a little.

Mirambo

-lewa

to become drunk

Pombe ni mbaya kwa sababu inamfanya
mtu alewe.

Beer is bad because it makes a person
(that he should become) drunk.

Sangai

Ndiyo. Mtu akinywa nyingi atalewa.

Yes, anyone who drinks much will get
drunk.

NotesA. The distal demonstratives (-le).

yule mtu that man over there

A third series of demonstratives are formed on the stem -le. The general meaning is 'that/those over there'. These may be called 'distal' demonstratives. The three series of demonstratives may be compared in the following table.

	'neutral'	'proximal'	'distal'
	<u>h</u> u y o	<u>h</u> u y u	y u <u>l</u> <u>l</u> <u>e</u>
WA	sg. <u>h</u> y <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> yu	y <u>u</u> <u>l</u> e
	pl. <u>h</u> a <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> awa	w <u>a</u> <u>l</u> e
MI	sg. <u>h</u> u <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> uu	<u>u</u> <u>l</u> e
	pl. <u>h</u> i <u>y</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> ii	<u>i</u> <u>l</u> e
MA	sg. <u>h</u> i <u>l</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> ili	<u>l</u> i <u>l</u> e
	pl. <u>h</u> a <u>y</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> aya	y <u>a</u> <u>l</u> e
VI	sg. <u>h</u> i <u>ch</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> iki	<u>k</u> i <u>l</u> e
	pl. <u>h</u> i <u>v</u> <u>y</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> ivi	<u>v</u> i <u>l</u> e
N	sg. <u>h</u> i <u>y</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> ii	<u>i</u> <u>l</u> e
	pl. <u>h</u> i <u>z</u> <u>o</u>	<u>h</u> izi	<u>z</u> i <u>l</u> e
U	<u>h</u> uo	<u>h</u> uu	<u>u</u> <u>l</u> e
PA ('mahali')	hapo	hapa	<u>p</u> a <u>l</u> e
KU	huko	huku	<u>k</u> u <u>l</u> e
MU	humu	humu	<u>m</u> u <u>l</u> e

B. The ki-tense.

mtu akinywa nyingi atalewa	if a person drinks much he will get drunk
Mungu akinijalia . . .	if God helps me . . .

These sentences contain verb forms with the prefix ki-. This prefix stands between the subject and object prefixes, and in this respect resembles the tense prefixes na-, li-, etc. A crude but serviceable kind of translation equivalent for the ki- form is 'he drinking', 'he helping', 'I being', etc. Forms with ki- in this slot do not ordinarily serve as the main verb in a complete sentence.

2.

A. weza plus infinitive; le.

-tembea	Wale watu hawawezi kutembea vyema.	Those people cannot walk well.
-soma	Wale watu hawawezi kusoma vyema.	Those people cannot read well.
-sema	-andika	

B. Kidogo after mass nouns.

pombe	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa pombe kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little beer.
kahawa	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa kahawa kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little coffee.
chai	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa chai kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little tea.
maji	Nyakati nyingine mimi hunywa maji kidogo.	Sometimes I drink a little water.

C. Two examples of the ki-tense.

akienda	Mtoto akienda shuleni hujifunza kusoma.	If a child goes to school, he learns how to read.
---------	---	---

ukifanya Ukifanya kazi vizuri sana
utapata mshahara wa kutosha.

If you work very well you will
get enough pay.

D. Mara.

kuona Ulimwona mara ngapi? Mara
mbili.

How many times did you see him?
Twice.

kusaidia Ulimsaidia mara ngapi? Mara
mbili.

How many times did you help him?
Twice.

kusikia Ulimsikia mara ngapi? Mara
mbili.

How many times did you hear him?
Twice.

kutazama Ulimtazama mara ngapi?
Mara mbili.

How many times did you look at
him? Twice.

E. -fanya plus subjunctive.

chai Chai hai mfanyi mtu alewe.

Tea does not make one drunk.

kahawa Kahawa hai mfanyi mtu alewe.

Coffee does not make one drunk.

maji Maji hai mfanyi mtu alewe.

Water does not make one drunk.

maji ya Machungwa hai mfanyi
mtu alewe.

Orange juice does not make one
drunk.

3.

A. Concords: Noun and adjectives.

pombe Pombe ni nzuri? Hapana, ni
mbaya.

Is the beer good? No, it is bad.

vyakula Vyakula ni vizuri? Hapana,
ni vibaya.

Are the foods good? No, they are
bad.

nyama Nyama ni nzuri? Hapana, ni
mbaya.

Is the meat good? No, it is bad.

maembe Maembe ni mazuri? Hapana,
ni mabaya.

Are the mangoes good? No, they
are bad.

machungwa Machungwa ni mazuri? Hapana,
ni mbaya.

Are the oranges good? No,
they are bad.

ndizi Ndizi ni nzuri? Hapana, ni
mbaya.

Are the bananas good? No,
they are bad.

Unit 53

1. Basic Dialogue. Juma hurt his leg.

Asha

ndugu (N-pers.)

kinsman of same generation

Baba, ndugu yangu Juma yuko wapi?

Father, where is my ndugu Juma?

Hamisi

Alipelekwa hospitalini na mama.
(or:...hospitali...)

He was taken to the hospital by [his]
mother.

Asha

Kwa nini?

Why?

Hamisi

-umia

be hurt

mkono (MI)

arm, hand

mguu (MI)

leg, foot

Kwa sababu aliumia mkono na mguu.

Because he hurt [his] arm and [his]
foot.

Asha

Aliumiaje?

How did he get hurt?

Hamisi

kisu (VI)

knife

Alijiuniza mwenyewe kwa kisu.

He hurt himself with a knife.

Asha

mgonjwa (WA)

a sick person

Yeye mgonjwa sana?

Is he very ill?

Hamisi

Hapana, lakini alikuwa akiumwa.

No, but he was in pain.

Notes

A. Passive stems.

Ndugu yangu aliniuma.	My brother bit me.
Niliumwa na ndugu yangu.	I was bitten by my brother.
Ndugu yangu aliniumiza.	My brother hurt me.
Niliumizwa na ndugu yangu.	I was hurt by my brother.

Passive stems may be derived from simple stems, or from other derived stems, by use of a suffix whose most common form is -w-. When the passive suffix is used in the same word with another derivational suffix, it follows that suffix.

In sentences containing passive verbs, the word for the agent or means by which the action is performed follows the word na.

B. Passive stems formed on roots which contain vowels.

Wachukuzi walikula nyama.	The porters ate the meat.
Nyama ililiwa na wapagazi.	The meat was eaten by the porters.
Maziwa yamenywewa na watoto.	The milk has been drunk by the children.

Passive stems derived from monosyllabic verbs do not have ku-, and the passive suffix itself is -iw- or -ew-. For details see the exercises.

C. Difference in meaning between -umwa and -umia.

Nilium <u>wa</u> (na) kichwa.	I had a headache.
Nilium <u>ia</u> kichwa.	I hurt my head.

Note the difference in meaning between the derived verb stems in the above examples. The underlying simple stem -uma means 'to cause pain, injure, bite'.

The word na is used by some speakers after -umwa, but is omitted by others.

D. The reflexive prefix -ji-.

Ninajifunza Kiswahili.	I'm studying Swahili.
Nilimwumiza Daudi.	I hurt Daudi.
Nilijiumiza.	I hurt myself.
Walijiumiza.	They hurt themselves.

The prefix -ji- occupies the same slot as the other object prefixes. It is a 'reflexive' prefix, which indicates that the object of the verb is the same as its subject. It has the invariable shape -ji- regardless of the person, class or number of the subject.

The stem -funza means 'to teach'. -jifunza 'to study, learn' is literally 'to teach oneself'.

2.

A. -umia.

m̄guu	Juma aliumia m̄guu.	Juma hurt his leg.
miguu	Juma aliumia miguu.	Juma hurt his legs.
m̄kono	Juma aliumia m̄kono.	Juma hurt his hand.
mikono	Juma aliumia mikono.	Juma hurt his hands.
kichwa	Juma aliumia kichwa.	Juma hurt his head.

B. -aumwa.

kichwa	Juma anaumwa kichwa.	Juma has a headache.
m̄guu	Juma anaumwa m̄guu.	Juma has a sore foot.
miguu	Juma anaumwa miguu.	Juma's feet hurt.
m̄kono	Juma anaumwa m̄kono.	Juma has a sore arm.

C. -jiumiza.

kisu	Nilijiumiza kwa kisu.	I hurt myself with a knife.
kiti	Nilijiumiza kwa kiti.	I hurt myself with a chair.

bilauri baiskeli kalamu

D. Kuna plus locative.

↓	Kuna wagonjwa wengi hospitalini?	Are there many patients in the hospital?
mtu	Kuna watu wengi hospitalini?	Are there many people in the hospital?
mji	Kuna watu wengi mjini?	Are there many people in town?
mgonjwa	Kuna wagonjwa wengi mjini?	Are there many sick people in town?
mtoto	Kuna watoto wengi mjini?	Are there many children in town?
shule	Kuna watoto wengi shuleni?	Are there many children in the school?

E. -wa plus ki-tense.

kufanya	Ulikuwa ukifanya nini saa sita mchana?	What were you doing at twelve noon?
kula	Ulikuwa ukila chakula saa sita mchana?	Were you eating at twelve noon?
kusoma	Ulikuwa ukisoma saa sita mchana?	Were you reading at twelve noon?
kutembea	Ulikuwa ukitembea saa sita mchana?	Were you walking at twelve noon?
kuandika	Ulikuwa ukiandika barua saa sita mchana?	Were you writing a letter at twelve noon?

F. Concord: Noun, adjective, subject prefix.

nguo mpya	Nguo mpya zilipelekwa hospitali.	New clothes were ^{taken} _{sent} to the hospital.
mayai	Mayai yalipelekwa hospitali.	Eggs were taken to the hospital.
maziwa	ndizi vyakula vyote	

mahindi	Mahindi yote yalipelekwa sokoni.	All the maize was taken to the market.
muhogo	Muhogo wote ulipelekwa sokoni.	All the cassava was taken to the market.

mayai njugu nguruwe maembe mazima

H. Passive plus na.

baba	Kodi ililipwa jana na baba yangu.	The tax was paid yesterday by my father.
------	-----------------------------------	--

mama ndugu

I. -wa plus na-tense.

kichwa	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa kichwa.	Yesterday, I had a headache.
ngu	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa ngu.	Yesterday, I had a sore foot.
mkono	Jana nilikuwa ninaumwa mkono.	Yesterday, I had a sore arm.
vitu	Vitu hivi vyote vimeletwa na ndugu yangu.	All these things have been brought by my brother.
visu	Visu hivi vyote vimeletwa na ndugu yangu.	All these knives have been brought by my brother.
viti	machungwa mayai njugu ndizi nyama siagi	
mikate		

3.

A. Passive of verbs whose roots contain no vowel.

pombe	Pombe yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the beer has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
chai	Chai yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the tea has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
kahawa	Kahawa yote imenywewa. Nani ameinywa?	All the coffee has been drunk. Who has drunk it?

soda	Soda yote imenywewa. Nani ameyinywa?	All the soda has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
maji	Maji yote yamenywewa. Nani ameyanywa?	All the water has been drunk. Who has drunk it?
B.		
viazi	Viazi vyote vimeliwa. Nani amevila?	All the potatoes have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
maembe	Maembe yote yameliwa. Nani ameyala?	All the mangoes have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
mkate	Mkate wote umeliwa. Nani ameula?	All the bread has been eaten. Who has eaten it?
mikate	Mikate yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the loaves of bread have been eaten. Who has eaten them?
nyama	Nyama yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the meat has been eaten. Who has eaten it?
samaki	Samaki yote imeliwa. Nani ameila?	All the fish has been eaten. Who has eaten it?

Conversation Starters

1. A and his friend B, who are parents, discuss the things that they do for their children, related to their needs for food, clothing, education.

Unit 54

1. Basic Dialogue. Where have you been recently?

Sangai

Habari za siku nyingi?

How have you been all this time?

('News of many days?')

Mirambo

Njema.

Fine!

Sangai

Ulikuwa wapi siku hizi zote?

Where have you been all these days?

Mirambo

Nilikuwa huko Mbeya.

I was at Mbeya.

Sangai

Ulikuwa ukifanya nini?

What were you doing?

Mirambo

Nilikuwa nikifanya kazi ya ukarani.

I was doing clerical work.

Notes

A. Huko with names of places.

Tulikuwa nyumbani.

We were at home.

Tulikuwa huko Mbeya.

We were at Mbeya.

The locative suffix -ni is used with such words as nyumba 'house' and soko 'market'. With names of cities the word huko 'there' or hapa 'here' may be used. The literal translation of the second sentence is thus 'we were there [at] Mbeya'.

B. Verb phrases in which the first verb is -wa.

Nilikuwa nikifanya kazi.	I was working.
Atakuwa akifanya kazi.	He will be working.
Alilewa.	He got drunk.
Alikuwa amelewa.	He was drunk.
Amelewa.	He is drunk.
Ilikuwa imevunjika.	It was broken [when I saw it].

Verb phrases of this kind lend great flexibility to the expression of time and aspect with Swahili verbs. Basically, the action as a whole is located in past or future time by the use of -li- or -ta- as prefix with -wa. The shape of the action, whether continuing or completed at that time, is indicated by the use of -na-, -ki-, or of -me- as prefix for the second verb.

2.

A. Huko with names of cities.

Mbeya	Tulikuwa huko Mbeya.	We were at Mbeya.
Utete	Tulikuwa huko Utete.	We were at Utete.
soko	Tulikuwa sokoni.	We were at the market.
kanisa	Tulikuwa kanisani.	We were at the church.
Nairobi	Tulikuwa huko Nairobi.	We were in Nairobi.

B. -wa plus ki-tense.

kwenda	Nilikuwa nikienda nyumbani.	I was going home.
kula	Nilikuwa nikila chungwa.	I was eating an orange.
kujifunza	Nilikuwa nikijifunza Kiswahili.	I was learning Swahili.
kuondoka	Nilikuwa nikiondoka shuleni.	I was leaving school.
kuogelea	Nilikuwa nikiogelea.	I was swimming.

kusaidia Nilikuwa nikiwasaidia I was helping my parents.
wazazi wangu.

3.

A. Lini?

wao	Waendeleo kusoma mpaka saa saba. Walianza lini kusoma?	Let them go on reading till one o'clock. When did they begin reading?
yeye	Aendeleo kusoma mpaka saa saba. Alianza lini kusoma?	Let him/her go on reading till one o'clock. When did he/she begin reading?
wao	Waendeleo kuogelea mpaka saa saba. Walianza lini kuogelea?	Let them go on swimming till one o'clock. When did they begin swimming?
yeye	Aendeleo kuogelea mpaka saa saba. Alianza lini kuogelea?	Let him/her go on swimming till one o'clock. When did he/she begin swimming?
wao	Waendeleo kutusaidia mpaka saa saba. Walianza lini kutusaidia?	Let them go on helping us till one o'clock. When did they begin helping us?
yeye	Aendeleo kutusaidia mpaka saa saba. Alianza lini kutusaidia?	Let him/her go on helping us till one o'clock. When did he/she begin helping us?

B. -wa plus ki-tense: negative vs. affirmative.

wewe	Ulikuwa ukisoma? Hapana. Sikuwa nikisoma, nilikuwa nikiandika.	Were you (sg.) reading? No, I was not reading, I was writing.
ninyi	Mlikuwa mkisoma? Hapana. Hatukuwa tukisoma, tulikuwa tukiandika.	Were you (pl.) reading? No, we were not reading, we were writing.

karani	Karani alikuwa akisoma? Hapana. Hakuwa akisoma, alikuwa akiandika.	Was the clerk reading? No, he was not reading, he was writing.
C.		
wazungu	Wazungu hao walikuwa wakinywa chai? Hawakuwa wakinywa chai. Walikuwa wakinywa pombe.	Were those Europeans drinking tea? They were not drinking tea, they were drinking beer.
mzungu	Mzungu huyo alikuwa akinywa chai? Hakuwa akinywa chai. Alikuwa akinywa pombe.	Was that European drinking tea? He was not drinking tea, he was drinking beer.
wakulima	Wakulima hao walikuwa wakinywa chai? Hawakuwa wakinywa chai. Walikuwa wakinywa pombe.	Were those farmers drinking tea? They were not drinking tea, they were drinking beer.
ninyi	Mlikuwa mkinywa chai? Hatukuwa tukinywa chai. Tulikuwa tukinywa pombe.	Were you drinking tea? We were not drinking tea, we were drinking beer.

Unit 55

1. Basic Dialogue. How's the family?

Hasani

Habari gani za watoto wako?

How are your children?

Hadija

Hawajambo.

They're all right.

Hasani

kweli

true

Kweli, una watoto wangapi sasa?

Really, how many children do you
have now?Hadija

Nina watoto watatu.

I have three.

Hasani

kiume (VI)

the male sort

kike (VI)

the female sort

Watoto hao ni wa kiume au wa kike?

Are they boys or girls?

Hadija

mwanamke (pl. wanawake)

woman

mwanamume (pl. wanaume)

man

Mmoja ni mwanamke na wawili ni
wanaume.

One is a girl and two are boys.

Hasani

umri (U)

age

Mtoto wako mkubwa ana umri gani?

What is the age of your eldest?
('...your big [one]')

Hadija

Ana miaka kumi na mitatu sasa. Thirteen.

Notes

A. Numerals which take concordial prefixes.

Ana miaka mitano. He is five years old.

Ana miaka sita. He is six years old.

The numerals from 1 - 5, and also 8, take concordial prefixes. None of the other numerals do so.

B. Stating the ages of persons.

Note that the way of stating ages, as in the above examples, is literally 'he has (five) years'.

2.

A. Numbers and ages.

5	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka mitano sasa.	My eldest child is five years old now.
6	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka sita sasa.	My eldest child is six years old now.
7	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka saba sasa.	My eldest child is seven years old now.
8	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka minane sasa.	My eldest child is eight years old now.
9	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka tisa sasa.	My eldest child is nine years old now.
10	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka kumi sasa.	My eldest child is ten years old now.
11	Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka kumi na mmoja sasa.	My eldest child is eleven years old now.

12 Mtoto wangu mkubwa ana miaka My eldest child is twelve years
kumi na miwili sasa. old now.

13 14 15 16 17 18 19

3.

A. The double plurals; subjunctive.

↓	Wanaume waende shuleni; wanawake wakae nyumbani.	The men are to go to school, the women are to stay home.
soko	Wanaume wakae nyumbani; wanawake waende sokoni.	The men are to stay home, the women are to go to the market.
kanisa	Wanaume wakae sokoni; wanawake waende kanisani.	The men are to stay at the market, the women are to go to church.
boma	Wanaume wakae kanisani; wanawake waende bomani.	The men are to stay at church, the women are to go to the District Office.
shule	Wanaume wakae bomani; wanawake waende shuleni.	The men are to stay at the District Office, the women are to go to school.

B. Double singular vs. double plural.

mwanamke	Kuna mwanamke mmoja nyumbani. Kuna wanawake wengi shuleni.	There is one woman at home. There are many women at school.
mwanamume	Kuna mwanamume mmoja nyumbani. Kuna wanaume wengi shuleni.	There is one man at home. There are many men at school.
mkulima	Kuna mkulima mmoja nyumbani. Kuna wakulima wengi shuleni.	There is one farmer at home. There are many farmers at school.
mtoto	Kuna mtoto mmoja nyumbani. Kuna watoto wengi shuleni.	There is one child at home. There are many children at school.
karani	Kuna karani mmoja nyumbani. Kuna makarani wengi shuleni.	There is one clerk at home. There are many clerks at school.

Conversation Starters

1. A and his friend B, who are parents, exchange information about the ages of their respective children, the grades that the children are in at school, and their favorite subjects.

Unit 56

1. Basic Dialogue. When are you coming to see us?

Mirambo

-amkia

to greet, visit

Utakuja lini kutuamkia?

When are you coming to visit us?

Magese

nafasi (N)

opportunity

Jumatano

Wednesday

pamoja na

together with

mke (WA)

wife

Nikipata nafasi, nitakuja siku ya

If I get a chance, I'll come on

Jumatano pamoja na mke wangu na

Wednesday along with my wife

watoto.

and children.

Mirambo

baada (N)

after

livu (N)

leave time

Baada ya livu yako, utakwenda wapi?

Where are you going when your

leave is over?

Magese

labda

perhaps

-rudi

to return

hakika (N)

certainty

Labda nitarudi tena Mbeya, lakini

I may go back to Mbeya again, but

sina hakika.

I'm not sure.

Notes

A. The days of the week.

Jumamosi	Saturday
Jumapili	Sunday
Jumatatu	Monday
Jumaane	Tuesday
Jumatano	Wednesday
Alhamisi	Thursday
Ijumaa	Friday

Given above are the days of the week in Swahili. When naming them in series it is customary to begin with Jumamosi. The terminations -mosi, -pili, etc. are related to forms meaning respectively 'one' and 'two'. Saturday is thus 'day-one', and Tuesday is 'day-four'.

B. The noun baada.

The noun baada, like juu, does not serve as subject or object of a verb, nor occur in the plural.

2.

A. -amkia.

wazazi	Umekuja hapa kuwaamkia wazazi wako?	Have you come here to visit your parents?
rafiki	Umekuja hapa kumwaamkia rafiki yako?	Have you come here to visit your friend?
jamaa	Umekuja hapa kumwaamkia jamaa yako?	Have you come here to visit your companion?
baba	Umekuja hapa kumwaamkia baba yako?	Have you come here to visit your father?
ndugu	Umekuja hapa kumwaamkia ndugu yako?	Have you come here to visit your brother?

B. -pata nafasi.

kusoma	Sikupata nafasi ya kusoma darasa la saba.	I did not have the opportunity of studying the seventh grade.
kusema	Sikupata nafasi ya kusema na Mwandishi Mkuu.	I did not have the opportunity of speaking to the General Secretary.
kuendelea	Sikupata nafasi ya kuendelea na masomo.	I did not have the opportunity of continuing with [my] studies.
kujifunza	Sikupata nafasi ya kujifunza hesabu.	I did not have the opportunity of learning arithmetic.
kuona	Sikupata nafasi ya kuona mashindano ya farasi.	I did not have the opportunity of watching the horse races.

C. pamoja na

mke	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na mke wangu.	I went to Mbeya together with my wife.
mtoto	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na mtoto wangu mkubwa.	I went to Mbeya together with my eldest child.
Mwandishi Mkuu	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na Mwandishi Mkuu.	I went to Mbeya together with the General Secretary.
rafiki	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na rafiki yangu.	I went to Mbeya together with my friend.
wachukuzi	Nilikwenda Mbeya pamoja na wachukuzi wengine.	I went to Mbeya together with some porters.

D. 'Future progressive.' -ta- plus -ki-.

mimi	Baada ya mwaka huu, nitakuwa nikiishi Kenya.	After this year I shall be living in Kenya.
sisi	Baada ya mwaka huu, tutakuwa tukiishi Kenya.	After this year we will be living in Kenya.
yeye	Baada ya mwaka huu, atakuwa akiishi Kenya.	After this year he will be living in Kenya.

wao	Baada ya mwaka huu, watakuwa wakiishi Kenya.	After this year they will be living in Kenya.
wewe?	Baada ya mwaka huu, utakuwa ukiishi Kenya?	After this year will you (sg.) be living in Kenya?
niryi?	Baada ya mwaka huu, mtakuwa mkiishi Kenya?	After this year will you (pl.) be living in Kenya?

3.

A. Me-tense, affirmative vs. negative.

kurudi	Daudi amerudi nyumbani? Hapana, hajarudi bado.	Has Daudi gone back home? No, he hasn't gone back yet.
kwanza	Daudi ameanza kusoma? Hapana, hajaanza bado.	Has Daudi begun reading? No, he hasn't begun yet.
kumaliza	Daudi amemaliza kusoma? Hapana, hajamaliza bado.	Has Daudi finished reading? No, he hasn't finished yet.
kula	Daudi amekula maharagwe? Hapana, hajala bado.	Has Daudi eaten beans? No, he hasn't eaten yet.
kwisha	Churvi imekwisha? Hapana, haijaisha bado.	Is the salt all gone? No, it isn't all gone yet.

B. Ta-tense, affirmative vs. negative.

wewe	Utapata nafasi ya kutuamkia? Hapana. Sitapata nafasi.	Will you have a chance to come to see us? No, I will not have a chance.
ninyi	Mtapata nafasi ya kutuamkia? Hapana. Hatutapata nafasi.	Will you (pl.) have a chance to come to see us? No, we will not have a chance.
wewe	Utaendelea katika masomo? Hapana. Sitaendelea.	Will you continue with your studies? No, I will not continue.

ninyi Mtaendelea katika masomo?

Hapana, hatutaendelea.

Will you (pl.) continue with your studies?

No, we will not continue.

wewe Utalipa vitu hivyo?

Hapana, sitalipa.
(or: Sitavilipa)

Will you pay for those things?

No, I will not pay for them.

ninyi Mtalipa vitu hivyo?

Hapana, hatutalipa.

Will you (pl.) pay for those things?

No, we will not pay for them.

Unit 57

1. Basic Dialogue. Where will you go after your leave?

Mirambo

-rudishwa

to be caused to return

Unadhani utarudishwa tena hapa?

Do you think you will be sent back
here?

Magese

maana

meaning, significance; because

-ahidi

to promise

kwamba

that ('saying')

-hama

to move from one place to
another

Sichani, maana nimekwisha ahidiwa
kwamba nitahamishwa.

I don't think so, because I've already
been promised that I'll be moved.

Mirambo

ungependa

you would like

Unadhani ungependa kurudi hapa?

Do you think you would like to return
here?

Magese

Ndiyo. Ningefurahi sana.

Yes, I would be very happy.

Mirambo

-kosa

to lack, err

Asante sana. Na tafadhali usikose
kuja siku hiyo ya Jumatano!

Thanks very much. And please don't
fail to come on [that] Wednesday
[that we talked about].

Notes

A. Statements in indirect discourse.

Unadhani kwamba utarudishwa?	} Do you think you will be returned?
Unadhani kuwa utarudishwa?	
Unadhani utarudishwa?	

These three sentences are freely interchangeable with one another. That is, a statement in indirect discourse may follow the preceding verb directly, or it may be introduced by kuwa or kwamba.

2.

A. -hama.

Mbeya	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) Mbeya.	We moved from Mbeya last year.
kaskazini	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) kaskazini.	We moved from the north last year.
kusini	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) kusini.	We moved from the south last year.
mashariki	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) mashariki.	We moved from the east last year.
magharibi	Mwaka jana tulihama (kutoka) magharibi.	We moved from the west last year.

B. -hamisha.

Tanga	Serikali ilituhamisha mpaka Tanga.	The government moved us to Tanga.
mji mpya	Serikali ilituhamisha mpaka mji mpya.	The government moved us to a new town.
kijiji kidogo	Serikali ilituhamisha mpaka kijiji kidogo.	The government moved us to a small village.

jimbo jingine	Serikali ilituhamisha mpaka jimbo jingine.	The government moved us to a different district.
C. <u>-kosa</u> plus infinitive.		
kuja	Msikose kuja siku ya Jamatano.	Don't fail to come on Wednesday.
kuamkia	Msikose kuwaamkia wazazi wenu.	Don't fail to welcome your parents.
kusoma	Msikose kusoma barua hii.	Don't fail to read this letter.
kurudisha	Msikose kurudisha visahani vyote.	Don't fail to return all the saucers.
kuendelea	Msikose kuendelea katika kazi yenu.	Don't fail to continue with your work.

D. -kosa plus noun.

mvua	Mwaka huu tumekosa mvua.	We have been short of rain this year.
matunda	Mwaka huu tumekosa matunda.	We have been short of fruit this year.
nazi	Mwaka huu tumekosa nazi.	We have been short of coconuts this year.
mboga	Mwaka huu tumekosa mboga.	We have been short of vegetables this year.

3.

A. Adjective vs. related causative stem.

chakula	Chakula tayari? Hapana. Nitakitayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the food ready? No, I will prepare it right away.
nguo	Nguo tayari? Hapana. Nitaitayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the dress ready? No, I will get it ready right away.

kahawa	Kahawa tayari? Hapana. Nitaitayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the coffee ready? No, I will get it ready right away.
uji	Uji tayari? Hapana. Nitautayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the gruel ready? No, I will get it ready right away.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe tayari? Hapana. Nitamtayarisha sasa hivi.	Is the cow ready? No, I will get it ready right away.

B.

vyombo	Vyombo vyote ni safi? Hapana. Nitavisafisha sasa.	Are all the dishes clean? No, I will clean them now.
vikombe	Vikombe vyote ni safi? Hapana. Nitavisafisha sasa.	Are all the cups clean? No, I will clean them now.

sahani bilauri taa

C. Causative vs. causative plus passive.

vyombo	Rudisha vyombo nyumbani sasa. Vimekwisha rudishwa tayari. Nani amevirudisha?	Return the utensils to the house now. They have been returned already. Who returned them?
vitunguu	Rudisha vitunguu nyumbani sasa. Vimekwisha rudishwa tayari. Nani amevirudisha?	Return the onions to the house now. They have been returned already. Who has returned them?
njugu	maharagwe muhogo	

Unit 58

1. Basic Dialogue. Why didn't you come to see us?

Mirambo

mbona?

why?

Mbona hukuja siku ile ya Jumatano?

Why didn't you come that Wednesday?

Magese

-sikitika

to be sorry

homa (N)

fever

Ah! Nasikitika sana. Mke wangu
alipata homa.

Oh, I'm very sorry. My wife got a
fever.

Mirambo

Homa gani?

What kind of fever?

Magese

Sijui kwa hakika, lakini nadhani ni
malaria.

I'm not sure, but I think it is
malaria.

Mirambo

Ulimpeleka hospitali?

Did you take her to the hospital?

Magese

kidonge (VI)

tablet, pills

-piga

to hit

sindano (N)

needle

-pigwa sindano

to get an injection

Ndiyo. Alipata dawa ya vidonge,
na pia alipigwa sindano.

Yes, she got some pills and also was
given a shot.

Notes

A. Concordial agreement involving numeral phrases.

mananasi kumi na mawili	twelve pineapples
watoto kumi na wawili	twelve children

In numeral phrases which end with the numbers 1 - 5, or 8, the word for 1 - 5 or 8 must agree concordially with the noun to which the whole phrase refers. The first numeral in the phrase (kumi 'ten' in these examples) takes no concordial prefixes.

2.

A. Concord: Nouns with number over ten.

ng'ombe	Bwana Sangai ana ng'ombe kumi na wawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve cows.
watoto	Bwana Sangai ana watoto kumi na wawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve children.
mikate	Bwana Sangai ana mikate kumi na miwili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve loaves.
nazi	Bwana Sangai ana nazi kumi na mbili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve coconuts.
mananasi	Bwana Sangai ana mananasi kumi na mawili.	Mr. Sangai has twelve pineapples.

B.

vikombe	Mkewe ana vikombe kumi na vinne.	His wife has fourteen cups.
sahani	Mkewe ana sahani kumi na ñne.	His wife has fourteen plates.
nguo	Mkewe ana nguo kumi na ñne.	His wife has fourteen dresses.
samaki	Mkewe ana samaki kumi na ñne. (or: ...wanne.)	His wife has fourteen fish.

sindano	Mkewe ana sindano kumi na nine.	His wife has fourteen needles.
rafiki	Mkewe ana rafiki kumi na wane.	His wife has fourteen friends.
vidonge	Mkewe ana vidonge kumi na vinne.	His wife has fourteen pills.

3. Devise short conversations giving ten different reasons why Mirambo didn't go to see Sangai on Wednesday.

Unit 59

1. Basic Dialogue. Is your wife feeling better?

Mirambo

ulipoondoka

when you left

hali (N)

condition

namna, namna (N)

kind, sort

Ulipoondoka leo, hali yake ilikuwa
namna gani?

When you left today, what was her
condition like?

Magese

-onekana

to seem, appear, become visible

Leo anaonekana hajambo kidogo.

Today she seems to be a little better.

('Today she seems she has no trouble
a little.')

Mirambo

-ambukiza

to infect

ugonjwa (U)

illness

Unadhani ameambukizwa ugonjwa
huo huko Mbeya au hapa?

Do you think that she caught the disease
there in Mbeya, or here?

Magese

mbu (N-anim.)

mosquitoes

Nadhani ni hapa, kwa sababu hakuna
mbu wengi huko Mbeya.

I think it was here, because there
aren't many mosquitoes there in
Mbeya.

NotesA. -po- as an equivalent for 'when.'

uliondoka	you left
ulipoondoka	when you left
utamwona	you will see him
utapomwona	} when you see him
utakapomwona	

The relative prefix -po- is commonly used as an equivalent for the 'when' of an English adverbial clause. It stands between the tense prefix and the object prefix. The form with -takapo- is considered more standard than the form with -tapo-, but both are widely used.

2.

A. Huko with locative.

vitunguu	Hakuna vitunguu huko sokoni.	There are no onions in the market.
maharagwe	Hakuna maharagwe huko sokoni.	There are no beans in the market.
pilipili	samaki	nazi

B. One use of namna.

ugonjwa	Hali ya ugonjwa wake ilikuwa namna gani?	What was the condition of his sickness?
homa	Hali ya homa yake ilikuwa namna gani?	What was the condition of his fever?
miguu	watoto	motokaa kazi jamaa

3.

A. Concord; -onekana.

machungwa	Hali ya machungwa haya ni namna gani?	What is the condition of these oranges?
~bichi	Yanaonekana mabichi sana.	They look very unripe.

ng'ombe	Hali ya ng'ombe hawa ni namna gani?	What is the condition of these cows?
zuri	Wanaonekana wazuri sana.	They look very good.
nguruwe	Hali ya nguruwe hawa ni namna gani?	What is the condition of these pigs?
baya	Wanaonekana wabaya sana.	They look very bad.
njugu	Hali ya njugu hizi ni namna gani?	What is the condition of these nuts?
bovu	Zinaonekana mbovu sana.	They look very spoiled.
mahindi	Hali ya mahindi haya ni namna gani?	What is the condition of this maize.
bichi	Yanaonekana mabichi sana.	It looks very unripe.
chakula	Hali ya chakula hiki ni namna gani?	What is the condition of this food?
zuri	Kinaonekana kizuri sana.	It looks very delicious.
vitunguu	Hali ya vitunguu hivi ni namna gani?	What is the condition of these onions?
baya	Vinaonekana vibaya sana.	They look very spoiled.

B. Verb forms with -po-.

kumaliza	Nilimaliza kazi. Nilipomaliza kazi, niliondoka nyumbani.	I finished working. When I finished work, I left the house.
kuona	Niliona motakaa. Nilipoona motakaa, niliondoka nyumbani.	I saw a motor car. When I saw the motor car, I left the house.
kusikia	Nilisikia gari la moshi. Niliposikia gari la moshi, niliondoka nyumbani.	I heard a train. When I heard the train, I left the house.

kupata Nilipata taa na mafuta.
Nilipopata taa na mafuta,
niliondoka nyumbani.

I got a lamp and oil.
When I got the lamp and oil,
I left the house.

Unit 60

1. Basic Dialogue. The children have coughs.

Mutisya

Watoto wako hawajambo?

Are your children all right?

Hamisi

-koha

to cough

Hawajambo, lakini wanakohoakohoa.

They're all right, but they have
light coughs.

Mutisya

Umewapeleka hospitali?

Have you taken them to the hospital?

Hamisi

-shughulika

to be busy

Bado sijawapeleka, kwa sababu
ninashughulika na ugonjwa wa
mama yao.

I haven't taken them yet because
I'm kept busy ('I'm busied') with
the illness of their mother.

Mutisya

-faa

to be suitable

Je, huoni ingefaa kuwapeleka
hospitali pamoja na mama yao?

But don't you think it would be a
good idea to take them to the
hospital along with their mother?

Hamisi

Ndiyo, nadhani nitafanya hivyo.

Yes, I think I'll do so.

Mutisya

-salimia

to convey regards to

-pa	to give
wape	give to them
~pole	kind, gentle

Usikose kufanya hayo, na unisalimie Don't (fail) to do it, and convey my
na kuwapa (or:...,uwape) pole. regards, and my condolences.

Notes

A. -faa with 'impersonal prefix.'

Itafaa kuwasaidia. } Itafaa tuwasaidie. }	It will be a good idea to help them.
Ingefaa kuwapeleka nyumbani.	It would be a good idea to take them home.

The verb -faa with subject prefix i- is followed by an infinitive, or by the subjunctive. The translation is usually 'it is/will be/would be suitable to...' or 'it is a good idea to...'. There is no noun subject 'implied' for the verbs in these sentences; the N-class prefix with -faa is said to be used 'impersonally.'

B. The phrase -pa pole.

Wape pole.	Condole with them.
Wamekuja kutupa pole.	They have come to condole with us.

2.

A. -faa plus infinitive.

kueleza	Itafaa kueleza mambo haya yote.	It will be a good thing to explain about all these affairs.
kuelewa	Itafaa kuelewa mambo haya yote.	It will be a good thing to understand all these affairs.
kula	Itafaa kula dawa hii yote.	It will be a good thing to take all this medicine.

kusafisha	Itafaa kusafisha vyombo hivi vyote.	It will be a good thing to clean all these utensils.
kuuza	Itafaa kuuza mboga hizi zote.	It will be a good thing to sell all these vegetables.

B. Pamoja na.

baba	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na baba yetu.	We went to the beach together with our father.
ndugu	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na ndugu yetu.	We went to the beach together with our brother.
rafiki	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na rafiki yetu.	We went to the beach together with our friend.
mpishi	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na mpishi wetu.	We went to the beach together with our cook.
wazazi	Tulikwenda pwani pamoja na wazazi wetu.	We went to the beach together with our parents.

C. -salimia; WA nouns vs. N-personal nouns.

wazazi	Tusalimie wazazi wako.	Give our regards to your parents.
baba	Tusalimie baba yako.	Give our regards to your father.
ndugu	Tusalimie ndugu yako.	Give our regards to your brother.
watoto	Tusalimie watoto wako.	Give our regards to your children.
rafiki	Tusalimie rafiki yako.	Give our regards to your friend.

3.

A. Me-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kupeleka	Umewapeleka watoto hospitalini? Bado sijawapeleka.	Have you taken the children to the hospital? I haven't taken them yet.
kufuta	Umepangusa maji? (or: Umefuta maji?)	Have you wiped up the water?

Bado sijapangusa.

I haven't wiped it yet.

or: Sijafuta.

kutia Umetia mafuta katika taa?

Have you put oil in the lamp?

Bado sijayatia.

I haven't put it in yet.

kupatia Umenipatia viberiti?

Have you gotten me some matches?

Bado sijakupatia.

I haven't gotten you any yet.

B.

kusafisha Mpishi amesafisha jiko?

Has the cook cleaned the kitchen?

Bado hajasafisha.

He hasn't cleaned it yet.

kuwasha Mpishi amewasha taa?

Has the cook lit the lamp?

Bado hajawasha.

He hasn't lit it yet.

kununua Mpishi amenunua mafuta

Has the cook bought any more oil?

mengine?

Bado hajanunua.

He hasn't bought any yet.

kupa Mpishi amewapa watoto

Has the cook given the children

mkate?

some bread?

Bado hajawapa.

He hasn't given them any yet.

kutayarisha

Mpishi ametayarisha chakula

Has the cook prepared food for

cha mchana?

the day? (or: the midday meal?).

Bado hajatayarisha.

He hasn't prepared any yet.

Conversation Starters

1. A went to see C on Thursday. He tells B what C and the various members of C's household were doing when he got there.

2. A is debating whether to take his child to the hospital. He seeks advice from B.

READING SELECTION I

Dar es Salaam

Dar es Salaam ni mji mkubwa kuliko yote nchini Tanganyika, pia ni mji mkuu wa serikali. Kuna watu wa makabila mbalimbali, lakini wote husema Kiswahili. Lugha ya Kiswahili inasemwa na kila mtu hata Wazungu, Wahindi na Waarabu.

Upande wa mashariki ya Dar, kuna bahari. Bahari hii huitwa Bahari ya Hindi. Katika sehemu ya magharibi ya mji kuna majumba maarufu ya shughuli mbalimbali, kama vile, shule, boma, hospitali, na mengineyo. Bwana Gavana ni mtu mkubwa na maarufu sana mjini. Jumba lake zuri liko karibu na pwani. Pia ofisi za idara za serikali ziko karibu na pwani.

Wakati wa mchana watu huwa wengi katika hoteli. Wengine huenda kula chakula, na wengine hupenda kunywa kinywaji tu kama soda au maji ya machungwa. Katika hoteli vyakula vingi huuzwa. Katikati ya mji kuna maduka makubwa na madogo. Maduka haya yanauza vyakula, nguo, vyombo vya nyumbani, na vingine vya aina mbali mbali. Vingine vinauzwa ghali kuliko vingine, pia vingine vinauzwa rahisi.

Soko liko katikati ya mji vile vile. Huko kunapatikana samaki wa baharini, machungwa ya Utete na Morogoro, vitunguu, pilipili na muhogo wa Bagamoyo. Unajua wakulima wa Bagamoyo hupanda sana muhogo, kwa hivyo hupenda kuusa mazao yao katika soko hili maarufu.

kuliko	'than'	kama vile	'for example'
mbalimbali	'various'	gavana (N-pers.)	'governor'
kila	'each'	kama	'as'
bahari (N)	'sea, ocean'	katikati (N)	'in the midst'
hata	'even'	duka (MA)	'shop'
jumba (MA)	'building'	aina (N)	'kind'
maarufu	'famous'	ghali	'expensive'
shughuli (N)	'business'	rahisi	'cheap, easy'
		vile vile	'also'

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

QuestionsSample Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Dar es Salaam ni mji mkubwa? | Ndiyo, ni mkubwa kuliko miji yote nchini. |
| 2. Mji mkuu wa serikali ya Tanganyika ni mji gani? | Ni Dar es Salaam. |
| 3. Katika mji wa Dar es Salaam, kuna kabila moja tu? | Hapana, kuna makabila mengi mbalimbali. |
| 4. Watu wote wa Dar es Salaam husema lugha gani? | Husema zaidi Kiswahili. |
| 5. Kiswahili kinasemwa na watu wengi wa Dar es Salaam? | Ndiyo. Lugha hii inasemwa na kila mtu. |
| 6. Kuna nini upande wa mashariki wa Dar? | Kuna bahari. |
| 7. Bahari hii huitwaje? | Bahari hii huitwa Bahari ya Hindi. |
| 8. Kuna nini katika sehemu ya magharibi ya mji? | Kuna majumba mbalimbali. |
| 9. Jumba la Bwana Gavana liko wapi? | Liko karibu ya pwani. |
| 10. Mtu gani ni mkubwa mjini? | Bwana Gavana. |
| 11. Kuna majumba gani mengine karibu ya pwani? | Kuna ofisi za idara za serikali. |
| 12. Watu huwa wachache katika hoteli? | Hapana, huwa wengi. |
| 13. Watu wote huenda hoteli kula chakula? | Hapana, wengine huenda kunywa kinywaji tu. |
| 14. Vyakula huuzwa katika hoteli? | Ndiyo, bwana. Vyakula vingi huuzwa katika hoteli. |

15. Kuna maduka makubwa katikati
ya mji?

Ndiyo. Kuna makubwa na madogo pia.

16. Maduka haya yanauza nini?

Mengine yanauza nguo na vyombo vya
nyumbani, na mengine yanauza vyakula.

17. Vingine vinauzwa ghali?

Ndiyo, lakini pia vingine ni rahisi.

18. Soko liko karibu na pwani?

La, liko katikati ya mji.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 60.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Afadhali uondoke sasa usilikose
gari la moshi. | You'd better leave now so as not to
miss the train. |
| 2. Ijapokuwa sikuja jana nilizipata
habari. | Although I didn't come yesterday, I
got the news. |
| 3. Unataka kupumzika sasa? | Do you want to rest now? |
| 4. Una nguo za aina ngapi? | How many kinds of clothes do you have? |
| 5. Ukija leo jioni tutakwenda
kuwatazama jamaa zetu. | If you come this evening, we will go
visit our relatives. |
| 6. Unaweza kusoma na kuandika? | Can you read and write? |
| 7. Nikipata pesa za kutosha
nitamtembelea ndugu yangu. | If I get enough money, I will visit
my brother. |
| 8. Watapewa chakula na mama yao. | They will be given food by their mother. |
| 9. Usijiumize kwa kisu hicho. | Don't hurt yourself with that knife. |
| 10. Juma, iwashe taa sasa. | Juma, light the lamp now. |
| 11. Nina tamaa ya kunywa pombe
kidogo. | I feel like drinking a little beer. |
| 12. Ndugu yangu, usikate tamaa,
Mungu atakusaidia. | Don't give up, brother, God will help
you. |
| 13. Sijui kwa hakika, lakini nadhani
atakuja leo jioni. | I don't know for sure, but I think he
will come this evening. |
| 14. Wakipata nafasi, watakuja kesho? | If they get a chance, will they come
tomorrow? |
| 15. Ningefurahi sana kama ungekuja
hapa. | I would be very glad if you would come
here. |
| 16. Itafaa sana umpe pesa zake. | It would be a very good idea for you
to give him his money. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 17. Itanilazimu kwenda Dodoma
kumwona rafiki yangu. | I will have to go to Dodoma to see
my friend. |
| 18. Mji wa Nairobi uko kati ya
Moshi na Kisumu. | The city of Nairobi is between Moshi
and Kisumu. |
| 19. Vikombe vyote vinevunjika. | All the cups are broken. |
| 20. Vinevunjwa na mtoto. | They were broken by a child. |
| 21. Ameangusha vikombe chini. | He has dropped the cups. |
| 22. Je, sahani pia zimevunjika? | Were the plates broken too? |
| 23. Nipatie vyombo vya kupakulia. | Get me the dishes. |
| 24. Mtoto hataki maziwa hata kidogo. | The child doesn't want any milk at all. |
| 25. Baada ya kufika walisoma
vitabu. | After arriving, they read some books. |
| 26. Nguo zake zilikuwa chafu sana. | His clothes were very dirty. |
| 27. Tafadhali unisalimie Hasani
ukimwona. | Please give my regards to
Hasani if you see him. |
| 28. Nasikitika kwa sababu ya hayo
yaliyotokea. | I am sorry because of what has
happened. |
| 29. Akirudisha vitabu mpe barua hii. | When he returns the books, give him
this letter. |
| 30. Nisaidie kwa baiskeli yako,
tafadhali. | Please lend me your bicycle. |
| 31. Kwa heri, nitarudi baada ya siku
chache. | Good bye, I'll be back in a few days. |
| 32. Miguu yangu yauma sana. | My feet hurt very much. |
| 33. Nitakwenda kumwona bwana daktari. | I'll go see the doctor. |
| 34. Watoto wangu wawili wanakohoakohoa. | My two children have light coughs. |
| 35. Wapishi hao walikuwa wakila nyama. | Those cooks were eating meat. |

36. Pengine zitarudishwa nyumbani
kesho. Maybe they (N plu.) will be returned
to the house tomorrow.
37. Leo asubuhi nitatengeneza
motakaa yangu. This morning I will repair my car.
38. Habari za nyumbani, wote
hawajambo? How's everything at home? Is everyone
all right?
39. Hawajambo, asante. They're fine, thank you.
40. Mume wangu ameambukizwa ugonjwa
wa malaria. My husband has contracted malaria.

Unit 61

1. Basic Dialogue. I don't feel too well.

Ahamed

mwalimu (WA)

teacher

Tafadhali, mwalimu, naumwa.
(or:..., mimi ni mgonjwa.)

Please, teacher, I'm ill.

Magese

Wewe mgonjwa? Waumwa nini?

Are you ill? What are you suffering
from?

Ahamed

shingo (MA)

neck

jino (MA: plu. meno)

tooth

Kichwa, shingo na meno.

[My] head, neck and teeth.

Magese

mafua (or: kamasi)

cold in the head

Pengine una mafua?

Maybe you have a cold?

Ahamed

pua (N)

nose

sawa

like, equal, level

Hapana, kwa sababu ninapumua sawa
sawa.

No, because I'm breathing all right.

Magese

tabibu (MA-pers)

doctor

(or: daktari, mganga)

Jitayarishe, tutakwenda kwa tabibu.

Get yourself ready; we will go to the
doctor.

2.

A. WA nouns vs. N-personal nouns.

watoto	Watoto wetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our children have toothaches.
walimu	Walimu wetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our teachers have toothaches.
ndugu	Ndugu zetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our brothers have toothaches.
rafiki	Rafiki zetu wengi waumwa meno.	Many of our friends have toothaches.

3.

A. -a plus infinitive; personal object prefixes.

watoto	Hakuna mtu wa kuwafunza watoto hesabu. Wafunze hesabu.	There is no one to teach the children arithmetic. Teach them arithmetic.
mtoto	Hakuna mtu wa kufunza mtoto hesabu. Mfunze hesabu.	There is no one to teach the child arithmetic. Teach him arithmetic.
mimi	Hakuna mtu wa kufunza hesabu. Nifunze hesabu.	There is no one to teach me arithmetic. Teach me arithmetic.

B. Concord: Noun in first sentence, object prefix in second; adjective vs. related causative verb.

nguo	Nguo si tayari. Nitazitayarisha.	The dresses aren't ready. I will get them ready.
mimea	Mimea si tayari. Nitaitayarisha.	The plants aren't ready. I will get them ready.
mayai	Mayai si tayari. Nitayatayarisha.	The eggs aren't ready. I will get them ready.

uji	Uji si tayari. Nitautayarisha.	The porridge isn't ready. I will get it ready.
nimi	Mimi si tayari. Nitajitayarisha.	I am not ready. I will get ready.

C. Object prefixes, including the reflexive -ji-.

watoto	Watoto ni wagonjwa. Baba hawezi kuwasaidia.	The children are sick. Father can't help them.
Hamisi	Hamisi ni mgonjwa. Baba hawezi kumsaidia.	Hamisi is sick. Father can't help him.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe ni mgonjwa. Baba hawezi kumsaidia.	The cow is sick. Father can't help it.
baba	Baba ni mgonjwa. Hawezi kujisaidia.	Father is sick. He can't help himself.

D. Verb phrases with -wa-.

ninyi	Mlikuwa mkiumwa shingo? Hapana, hatukuwa tukiumwa shingo. Tulikuwa tukiumwa kichwa.	Did you have stiff necks? No, we didn't have stiff necks. We had headaches.
wewe	Ulikuwa ukiumwa shingo? Hapana, sikuwa nikiumwa shingo. Nilikuwa nikiumwa kichwa.	Did you have a stiff neck? No, I didn't have a stiff neck. I had a headache.

rafiki yako rafiki zako

Unit 62

1. Basic Dialogue. You've hurt your finger!

Sangai

kidole (VI)

finger

damu (N)

blood

Kidole chako chatoka damu!

There is blood coming from your
finger! ('your finger is coming-
from blood')

Je uliumia?

Are you hurt?

Mutisya

-jeruhi

to bruise, wound

mlango (MI)

door

Ndiyo, bwana, nilijeruhiwa na mlango. Yes, I was bruised by a door.

Sangai

-vimba

swell

Hata kimevimba sana.

It is even swollen quite a bit.

Mutisya

usaha (U)

pus

Ndiyo, jana kilitoka usaha kidogo. Yes, yesterday a little pus came out
[of it] ('out of it a little').

Sangai

mshipa (MI)

vein, artery (or any thin,
elongated tissue, such as a
nerve or tendon)

Natumaini mshipa salama.

I hope the blood vessels are all right.

Mutisya

-pona

to recover from illness or injury

Kitapona tu, asante.

Oh, it will get better, thanks.

NotesA. Grammatical subject vs. logical subject.

Kidole chake kilitoka damu. }

Damu ilitoka kidoleni mwake. }

Some blood came out of his finger.

These two sentences are synonymous. Note that the verb stem remains the same. The subject prefix agrees with whichever noun precedes it.

2.

A. MI-class with numbers 2 - 12.

2	Jumba hilo lina milango miwili.	That large building has two doors.				
3	Jumba hilo lina milango mitatu.	That large building has three doors.				
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	Jumba hilo lina milango kumi na moja.	That large building has eleven doors.				
12	Jumba hilo lina milango kumi na miwili.	That large building has twelve doors.				

B. VI-class with numbers 1 - 10.

1	Nimejeruhiwa kidole kimoja.	I am hurt on one finger.
2	Nimejeruhiwa vidole viwili.	I am hurt on two fingers.
4	Nimejeruhiwa vidole vinnie.	I am hurt on four fingers.
5	Nimejeruhiwa vidole vitano.	I am hurt on five fingers.
7	Nimejeruhiwa vidole saba.	I am hurt on seven fingers.

- 9 Nimejeruhiwa vidole tisa. I am hurt on nine fingers.
 10 Nimejeruhiwa vidole kumi. I am hurt on ten fingers.

C. Grammatical subject which is different from logical subject.

↓	Kidole chake kinatoka usaha kidogo.	His finger is discharging a little pus.
damu	Kidole chake kinatoka damu kidogo.	His finger is bleeding a little.
mishipa	Mishipa yake inatoka damu kidogo.	His blood vessels are bleeding a little.
ḡguu	ḡguu wake unatoka damu kidogo.	His foot is bleeding a little.
pua	Pua yake inatoka damu kidogo.	His nose is bleeding a little.

3.

A. Interchange of grammatical and logical subjects with -toka.

kidole	Kidole chake kilitoka damu.	His finger bled.
	Damu ilitoka kidoleni mwake.	His finger bled.
ḡguu	ḡguu wake ulitoka damu.	His foot bled.
	Damu ilitoka ḡḡnuni mwake.	His foot bled.
pua	Pua yake ilitoka damu.	His nose bled.
	Damu ilitoka puani mwake.	His nose bled.
kichwa	Kichwa chake kilitoka damu.	His head bled.
	Damu ilitoka kichwani mwake.	His head bled.
shingo	Shingo lake lilitoka damu.	His neck bled.
	Damu ilitoka shingoni mwake.	His neck bled.

4. The members of A's family have been having all kinds of misfortunes recently. He tells B about them. B inquires about details and expresses sympathy.

Unit 63

1. Basic Dialogue. Late to class.

Ahamed

-chelewa

to be late, delay, be too long

Nasikitika, nimechelewa.

I'm sorry. I'm late.

Magese

neni

word

Si neni. Tumeanza sasa hivi.

No matter. We've just now begun.

-kaa kitako

to sit down

Tafadhali nenda ukakae kitako.

Please go sit down.

ukurasa (U) (plu. in N class)

page

Tazameni ukurasa wa kumi na mbili.

Look at page 12.

----- . -----

-ongea

to converse

-fungua

to close

kitabu (VI)

book

Sasa fungeni vitabu vyenu tuongee.

Now close your books, and we will

converse.

Notes

A. Plural imperative.

Zitayarishe sasa hivi!Get them ready right now.
(said to one person)**Zitayarisheni sasa hivi!**Get them ready right now.
(said to more than one person)**Njoo nyumbani!**

Come to the house. (one person)

Njoooni nyumbani!

Come to the house. (more than one)

The plural imperative in Swahili ends with -ni. The preceding vowel is -e for those verbs whose singular imperative ends in -a.

B. 'Sitting down.'

In preparing the original edition of this course, we found that Swahili speakers who worked on or criticized the manuscript displayed an unusual lack of unanimity with regard to 'sitting down'. In that edition, we said that '-kaa kitako is commonly used in Zanzibar and Tanganyika, but kitako is regarded as redundant and somewhat vulgar on the Kenya coast.' Later critics have suggested that 'sit (on a chair)' is -kaa kiti, and that 'sit (on the ground)' is either -kaa kitako or -kaa chini.

C. Other expressions for Si neno.

In place of Si neno, one more frequently hears Si kitu (lit. 'It is nothing.') or haidhuru, from the verb -dhuru 'to cause loss or damage'.

2.

A. -chelewa plus infinitive.

darasa	Kwa nini ulichelewa kuja darasani?	Why were you late to [come] to class?
kanisa	Kwa nini ulichelewa kuja kanisani?	Why were you late to come to church?
shule	chakula	

B. Negative imperative.

kurudi	Usichelewe kurudi nyumbani!	Don't delay in returning home.
kufanya	Usichelewe kufanya kazi yako.	Don't delay in doing your work.
kutayarisha	Usichelewe kutayarisha chakula.	Don't delay in preparing food.
kuwasha	Usichelewe kuwasha taa.	Don't delay in lighting the lamp.
kuletea	Usichelewe kutuletea kahawa.	Don't delay in bringing us coffee.
kuamkia	Usichelewe kuwaamkia wazee.	Don't delay in welcoming the elders.

C. N-class with numbers.

1	Kitabu hiki kina ukurasa mmoja tu.	This book has only one page.
2	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa mbili.	This book has two pages.
3	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa tatu.	This book has three pages.
11	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na moja.	This book has eleven pages.

12	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na mbili.	This book has twelve pages.
13	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa kumi na tatu.	This book has thirteen pages.
21	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na moja.	This book has twenty-one pages.
22	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na mbili.	This book has twenty-two pages.
23	Kitabu hiki kina kurasa ishirini na tatu.	This book has twenty-three pages.

2.

A. Negative -ja- tense vs. plural imperative.

kutayarisha	Bado hamjawatayarisha watoto? Watayarisheni sasa hivi!	Haven't you got the children ready yet? Get them ready right now.
kumaliza	Bado hamjamaliza kufanya kazi yenu? Malizeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you finished doing your work yet? Finish it right away.
kuenda	Bado hamjaenda ryumbani? Nendeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you gone home yet? Go right away.
kuja	Bado hamjaja hapa? Njooni sasa hivi!	Haven't you come here yet? Come right away.
kupa	Bado hamjawaqa watoto vitabu? Wapeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you given the children books yet? Give [them to] them right away.
kwanza	Bado hamjaanza kujifunza? Anzeni sasa hivi!	Haven't you started learning yet? Start right away.

kujifunza	Bado hamjajifunza kusoma?	Haven't you learned how to read yet?
	Jifunzeni sasa hivi!	Learn right away.

B. Imperatives: singular vs. plural.

kupata	Pata taa.	Get the lamp. (you sing.)
	Pateni taa.	Get the lamp. (you pl.)
kuleta	Lete maji.	Bring some water.
	Leteni maji.	Bring some water.
kutengeneza	Tengeneza kahawa.	Make some coffee.
	Tengenezeni kahawa.	Make some coffee.
kula	Kula ndizi hizi.	Eat these bananas.
	Kuleni ndizi hizi.	Eat these bananas.
kuenda	Nenda shuleni.	Go to school.
	Nendeni shuleni.	Go to school.
kunywa	Kunywa chai hii.	Drink this tea.
	Kunyweni chai hii.	Drink this tea.
kuona	Ora farasi.	Look at the horse.
	Oneni farasi.	Look at the horse.

C. Imperatives: affirmative vs. negative.

kuleta	Lete vitabu vingine; usivilete vyote.	Bring some of the books. Don't bring them all.
kuzuza	Uza vitabu vingine; usiviuze vyote.	Sell some books. Don't sell them all.
kununua	Nunua vitabu vingine; usivinunue vyote.	Buy some books. Don't buy them all.
kusafisha	Safisha vitabu vingine; usivisafishe vyote.	Clean some of the books. Don't clean them all.
kusoma	Soma vitabu vingine; usivisome vyote.	Read some of the books. Don't read them all.

Unit 64

1. Basic Dialogue. Classroom Routine.

Magese

ubao (U)	blackboard
Tafadhali, Bwana Aramian, nenda	Mr. Aramian, please go to the black-
ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya.	board and write these words.

Magese

Bwana Butler, tafadhali anza	Mr. Butler, please begin to read.
kusoma.	

Basil	That's enough.
-------	----------------

maana (MA)	meaning
Unajua maana ya neno 'alasiri'?	Do you know the meaning of the word
	'alasiri'?

Magese

-funua	to open
Sasa tufunue vitabu tusome Somo la	Now let's open [our] books and read
Tisa.	Lesson Nine.
kosa (MA)	a mistake
Msifanye makosa mkisoma.	Don't make mistakes as you read!
	('don't make mistakes you-reading')

Notes

A. The prefix -ka- with subjunctives.

Funua kitabu usome Somo la Nane. Open [your] book and read Lesson Eight.

Nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya. Go to the board and write these words.

In a command or request involving two verbs, the second is in the subjunctive. If the first verb involves going somewhere, the prefix -ka- is used after the subject prefix of the second verb.

2.

A. Word order with lini; -anza plus infinitive.

kusoma	Juma alianza lini kusoma?	When did Juma begin reading?
kusema	Juma alianza lini kusema?	When did Juma begin speaking?
kula	Juma alianza lini kula?	When did Juma begin eating?
kufanya	Juma alianza lini kufanya kazi?	When did Juma begin working?
kupanda	Juma alianza lini kupanda mahindi?	When did Juma begin raising corn?

B. Ka-tense with the second of two verbs.

kuandika	Nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya.	Go to the board and write these words.
kusoma	Nenda ubaoni ukasome maneno haya.	Go to the board and read these words.
kueleza	Nenda ubaoni ukaeleze maana ya maneno haya.	Go to the board and explain the meaning of these words.
kusema	Nenda ubaoni ukaseme maneno haya.	Go to the board and speak ('pronounce') these words.

C.

vitabu	Nenda nyumbani ukalete vitabu vyako vyote.	Go home and bring all your books.
vitu	Nenda nyumbani ukalete vitu vyako vyote.	Go home and bring all your things.

nguo	Nenda nyumbani ukalete nguo zako zote.	Go home and bring all your clothes.
senti	Nenda nyumbani ukalete senti zako zote.	Go home and bring all your small change.
machungwa	Nenda nyumbani ukalete machungwa yako yote.	Go home and bring all your oranges.
masomo	Nenda nyumbani ukalete masomo yako yote.	Go home and bring all your lessons.
watoto	Nenda nyumbani ukawaleta watoto wako wote.	Go home and bring all your children.
wagonjwa	Nenda nyumbani ukawaleta wagonjwa wako wote.	Go home and bring all your sick persons.

D.

kutazama	Nendeni sokoni <u>n</u> katazame nazi.	Go to the market and have a look at the coconuts.
kununua	Nendeni sokoni <u>n</u> kanunue nazi.	Go to the market and buy coconuts.
kuleta	Nendeni sokoni <u>n</u> kaleta nazi.	Go to the market and bring coconuts.
kutafuta	Nendeni sokoni <u>n</u> katafute nazi.	Go to the market and look for coconuts.

3.

A. Subjunctive without -ka- vs. subjunctive with -ka- after -enda.

kusaidia	Njoo <u>u</u> msaidie mwalimu. Nenda uk <u>a</u> msaidie mwalimu.	Come and help the teacher. Go and help the teacher.
kuandika	Njoo ubaoni uandike maneno haya. Nenda ubaoni ukaandike maneno haya.	Come to the board and write these words. Go to the board and write these words.

kahawa	Njoo jikoni utengeze kahawa.	Come into the kitchen and make coffee.
	Nenda jikoni ukatergeneze kahawa.	Go into the kitchen and make coffee.
kuogelea	Njoo pwani uogelea.	Come to the beach and swim.
	Nenda pwani ukaogelea.	Go to the beach and swim.

B. Negative ja-tense vs. subjunctive.

kuondoka	Hawajaondoka shuleni. Sasa wafunge vitabu, waondoke shuleni.	They haven't yet left the school. Now let them close the books, and leave the school.
kusaidia	Hawajatusaidia. Sasa wafunge vitabu, watusaidie.	They haven't yet helped us. Now let them close the books, and help us.
kula	Hawajala chakula. Sasa wafunge vitabu, wale.	They haven't eaten food yet. Now let them close the books, and eat.
kuenda	Hawajaenda nyumbani. Sasa wafunge vitabu, waende.	They haven't gone home yet. Now let them close the books, and go.

Conversation Starters

1. Describe a typical class hour.
2. From this point on, all class sessions should be conducted entirely in Swahili. Add to the content of Units 1 - 64 whatever words and phrases are necessary to make this possible.

Unit 65

1. Basic Dialogue. A letter from a student abroad.

Asha

dada (N-pers)

sister

Dada yako anafanya kazi gani?

What work is your sister doing?

Maina

-shinda

to be first, win

mtihani (MI)

a school examination

Ulaya

Europe

Mwaka jana alishinda mtihani wa

Last year she passed the Higher

juu akaenda Ulaya kusoma.

Examination and went to Europe to
study.Asha

-safiri

to travel

Alisafiriye?

How did she travel?

Maina

-ruka

to fly

ndege (N), ndege Ulaya

bird, airplane ('European bird')

Aliruka kwa ndege Ulaya.

She flew by plane.

juzi

day before yesterday

peleka

to send

ya kwamba

that ...

chuo (VI)

school

B. Indirect statements.

kuwa na Alituletea barua akasema
ya kwamba ana vitabu
vingi.

She sent us a letter saying that she
has many books.

kuhitaji Alituletea barua akasema
ya kwamba anakitaji
vitabu vingi.

She sent us a letter saying that she
needs many books.

kusoma kununua kupoteza

C. A-tense; -tumaini plus infinitive.

mimi Natumaini kushinda mtihani
wa juu na kwenda Ulaya.

I hope to pass the Higher Examination,
and go to Europe.

sisi Twatumaini kushinda
mtihani wa juu na kwenda
Ulaya.

We hope to pass the Higher Examination,
and go to Europe.

Mariamamu ndugu yangu ndugu zangu

D. halafu plus ka-tense.

kwenda Mwaka jana nilishinda
mtihani wa juu, halafu
nikaenda Ulaya.

Last year I passed the Higher
Examination, then I went to Europe.

kupata Mwaka jana nilishinda
mtihani wa juu, halafu
nikapata kazi.

Last year I passed the Higher
Examination, then I got a job.

kurudi Mwaka jana nilishinda
mtihani wa juu, halafu
nikerudi nyumbani.

Last year I passed the Higher
Examination, then I returned home.

kuendelea Mwaka jana nilishinda
mtihani wa juu, halafu
nikaendelea kusoma.

Last year I passed the Higher
Examination, then I continued
studying.

3.

A. Kuliko

ndege	Unapenda kusafiri kwa ndege au kwa gari la moshi? Ninapenda kusafiri kwa ndege kuliko kwa gari la moshi.	Do you like to travel by plane, or by train? I prefer traveling by plane to traveling by train.
michezo	Unapenda michezo au masomo? Ninapenda masomo kuliko michezo.	Do you like playing, or studying? I prefer studying to playing.
ndizi	Unapenda ndizi mbichi au mbivu? Ninapenda mbivu kuliko mbichi.	Do you like green bananas, or ripe ones? I prefer ripe to green ones.
nazi	Unapenda nazi, au mananasi? Ninapenda nazi kuliko mananasi.	Do you like coconuts, or pineapples? I prefer coconuts to pineapples.

B. A-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kusafiri	Wasafiri mara nyingi? Hapana, sisafiri mara nyingi, nasafiri mara chache tu.	Do you travel often? No, I do not travel often, I travel only a little.
kuruka kwa ndege	Waruka kwa ndege mara nyingi? Hapana, siruki kwa ndege mara nyingi, naruka mara chache tu.	Do you fly often? No, I do not fly often, I fly only a little.

kusoma Wasoma mara nyingi?

Hapana, sisomi mara
nyingi, nasoma mara
chache tu.

Do you read often?

No, I do not read often, I read
only a little.

kunu- Wamung'unika mara nyingi?
ng'unika

Hapana, sinung'uniki
mara nyingi, nanung'unika
mara chache tu.

Do you grumble often?

No, I do not grumble often, I
grumble only a little.

Unit 66

1. Basic Dialogue. My parents are going to night school.

Maina

Wazazi wako wanajua kusoma na
kuandika?

Do your parents know how to read and
write?

Juma

Ndiyo, wanajua kusoma kidogo tu.

Yes, they know how to read just a
little.

Maina

Na kuandika je?

And what about writing?

Juma

-hudhuria

to attend

Wameanza kuhudhuria masomo ya jioni.

They've begun to attend night school.

Maina

Wanafunzwa masomo gani?

What subjects are they being taught?

Juma

-ambia

to tell

Waliniambia wanajifunza hesabu, na
kuandika Kiswahili na Kiingereza.

They told me they are learning
arithmetic, and to write Swahili
and English.

Maina

aina

kind, sort

Hesabu za aina gani?

What kind of arithmetic?

Juma

-jumlisha

to add

-toa

to take away

Za kujumlisha na kutoa.

Addition and subtraction.

2.

A. Aina.matunda Mmeleta matunda ya aina
gani?

What sort of fruit have you brought?

vitabu Mmeleta vitabu vya aina
gani?

What sort of books have you brought?

vyakula nguo nyama

B. -hudhuria.masomo Twapenda kuhudhuria masomo
ya jioni.We like to attend the evening
classes.

shule Twapenda kuhudhuria shuleni.

We like to attend the school.

kanisa Twapenda kuhudhuria kanisani.

We like to attend the church.

michezo Twapenda kuhudhuria mashindano
ya farasi.

We like to attend the horse races.

3.

A. -ambia plus indirect statement.kuanza Bwana Sangai alianza lini
masomo ya jioni?When did Mr. Sangai start the evening
classes?Aliniambia ya kwamba
alianza juzi.

He told me that he began recently.

kuhitimu Bwana Sangai alihitimu lini
masomo ya jioni?When did Mr. Sangai complete the
evening classes?Aliniambia ya kwamba
alihitimu juzi.He told me that he completed them
recently.

<p>kuchelewa Bwana Sangai alichelewa lini masomo ya jioni? Aliniambia ya kwamba alichelewa juzi.</p>	<p>When did Mr. Sangai come late for the evening classes? He told me that he came late recently.</p>
<p>4. Extra vocabulary.</p>	
<p>matunda Sokoni kuna matunda mbalimbali, kama vile machungwa, maembe, na kadhalika.</p>	<p>At the market there are various fruits such as oranges, mangoes and so forth.</p>
<p>nguo Madukani kuna nguo mbalimbali, kama vile mashati, kanzu, suruali, na kadhalika.</p>	<p>At the shops there are various kinds of clothing such as shirts, kanzus, trousers and so forth.</p>
<p>vinywaji Hotelini kunauzwa vinywaji mbalimbali, kama vile chai, kahawa, pombe, na kadhalika.</p>	<p>At the hotel there are sold various beverages such as tea, coffee, beer and so forth.</p>
<p>makabila Nchini Tanganyika kuna watu wa makabila mbalimbali, kama vile Wanyamwezi, Wabondei, Wazaramo, na kadhalika.</p>	<p>In Tanganyika there are people of different tribes such as the Nyamwezi, Bondei, Zaramo and so forth.</p>
<p>mboga Sokoni kuna mboga mbalimbali, kama vile mchicha, kábeji, na kadhalika.</p>	<p>At the market there are various vegetables such as mchicha, cabbages and so forth.</p>

Conversation Starters

1. Describe your own high school or college. Where was it located? How did you get to it? What did you study? Use the dictionary to add specialized vocabulary for the names of the various academic disciplines.

2. Tell about a letter which you have sent or received recently.

Unit 67

1. Basic Dialogue. What is it like at night school?

Maina

-endesha

to run, cause to go, drive [a car]

Nani anayeendesha shule hizi za
jioni?

Who [is it] that is running these
night schools?

Juma

msaada (MI)

assistance

-tolewa

to be put forward, be produced,
be taken away

Nafikiri sehemu ya msaada hutolewa
na Serikali.

I think a part of the support is
supplied by the government.

Maina

-kubali

to accept

Ni watu wa umri gani wanaokubaliwa?

What age people are accepted? ('It
is people of what age who are
accepted?')

Juma

hoja (N)

necessity; what is urgent

Sidhani umri ni hoja.

I don't think the age is important.

Maina

-julisha

to make known, inform, cause
to know

Basi, nitawajulisha wengi.

O.K., I'm going to tell a lot of
people.

('I'm going to cause many people to know.')

Juma

Hata ada yenyewe ni ndogo sana.

And besides, the fees themselves are very low.

Maina

Kweli? Asante! Kwa heri!

Really? Thanks! Good-bye!

Notes

A. Relative counterparts of the na- and li-tenses.

Anaendesha shule.

He runs the school.

...anayeendesha shule...

...who runs the school...

he who runs the school...

Wanakubaliwa.

They are accepted.

...wanaokubaliwa...

...who are accepted...

The verbs in the two complete sentences above are 'indicative' forms. An 'indicative' form is one that can serve as the only verb in a complete statement.

The verbs in the second and fourth examples are 'relative' counterparts of the indicative forms. In general, there is a relative counterpart for any indicative verb form in Swahili. These are generally translated into English by relative clauses beginning with who or which.

For the na and li tenses, the relative forms are like the indicative forms except for the presence of a relative affix, which occupies a slot between the tense prefix and the object prefix.

The relative affixes are identical in form with the set of suffixes found in Unit 18, Note C.

2.

A. Relatives, li-tense.

kukubaliwa	Mtu aliyekubaliwa jana ataanza kesho.	The person who was accepted yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kuja	Mtu aliyekuja jana ataanza kesho.	The person who came yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kulipa	Mtu aliyelipa ada jana ataanza kesho.	The person who paid fees yesterday will begin tomorrow.
kutumwa	Mtu aliyetumwa jana ataanza kesho.	The person who was sent yesterday will begin tomorrow.

B. Relatives, li-tense, monosyllabic stem.

kuja	Wapagazi waliokuja asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who came in the morning have gone home.
kuanza	Wapagazi walioanza asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who began in the morning have gone home.
kukubaliwa	Wapagazi waliokubaliwa asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who were accepted in the morning have gone home.
kutumwa	Wapagazi waliotumwa asubuhi wamekwenda nyumbani.	The porters who were sent in the morning have gone home.

C. Relatives, li-tense, stative verb stem.

vikombe	Vikombe vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken cups are on the table.
kikombe	Kikombe kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken cup is on the table.

visahani	Visahani vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken saucers are on the table.
kisahani	Kisahani kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken saucer is on the table.
visu	Visu vilivyovunjika viko mezani.	The broken knives are on the table.
kisu	Kisu kilichovunjika kiko mezani.	The broken knife is on the table.
sahani (sg.)	Sahani iliyovunjika iko mezani.	The broken plate is on the table.
sahani zote	Sahani zote zilizovunjika ziko mezani.	All the broken plates are on the table.
kalamu (sg.)	Kalamu iliyovunjika iko mezani.	The broken pen is on the table.
kalamu zote	Kalamu zote zilizovunjika ziko mezani.	All the broken pens are on the table.

D. Relatives, na-tense.

upishi	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya upishi waitwa wapishi.	People who do cooking are called cooks.
ukulima	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya ukulima waitwa wakulima.	People who do farming are called farmers.
ukarani	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya ukarani waitwa makarani.	People who do clerical work are called clerks.
kufunza	Watu wanaofanya kazi ya kufunza waitwa waalimu.	People who do teaching are called teachers.

3.

A. Li-tense: indicative vs. relative.

vikombe	Vikombe vipi vilivunjika? Vilivyovunjika viko jikoni.	Which cups got broken? The broken ones are in the kitchen.
---------	--	---

kikombe	Kikombe kipi kilivunjika? Kilichovunjika kiko jikoni.	Which cup got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
visu	Visu vipi vilivunjika? Vilivyovunjika viko jikoni.	Which knives got broken? The broken ones are in the kitchen.
kisu	Kisu kipi kilivunjika? Kilichovunjika kiko jikoni.	Which knife got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
sahani (sg.)	Sahani ipi ilivunjika? Iliyovunjika iko jikoni.	Which plate got broken? The broken one is in the kitchen.
sahani (pl.)	Sahani zipi zilivunjika? Zilizovunjika ziko jikoni.	Which plates got broken? The broken ones are in the kitchen.

B. Relative, na-tense, in question and answer.

kuendesha	Nani anayeendesha shule hii? Mtu anayeendesha shule hii anaitwa Bw. Hasani.	Who runs this school? The person who runs this school is Mr. Hasani.
kufunza	Nani anayefunza hesabu shuleni humu? Mwalimu anayefunza hesabu shuleni humu anaitwa Bw. Abdallah.	Who teaches arithmetic in this school? The teacher who teaches arithmetic in this school is called Mr. Abdallah.
kutenge- neza	Nani anayeweza kutengeneza kalamu yangu? Fundu anayeweza kutengeneza kalamu yako anaitwa Bw. Juma.	Who can repair my pen? The repairman who can repair your pen is called Mr. Juma.

Unit 68

1. Basic Dialogue. What about the fees?

Maina

mwezi (MI)

month

Je, ni kiasi gani kwa mwezi?

How much is it a month, by the way?

Juma

shilingi (N)

shilling

Ni kama shilingi tano tu.

It's only about 5 shillings.

Maina

haki (N)

justice

Haki? (or: Kweli?)

Is that right?

Juma

Ndiyoi!

Yes!

Maina

Wanahitaji vitabu vipi?

Which books do they need?

Juma

bure

for nothing

Ukiisha lipa ada, vitabu utavipata
bure.

Once you have paid the fee, you get
the books free.

Maina

namu (N)

desire, longing

Jamaa. Walio na hamu ya elimu,
sasa wanayo nafasi.

Brother! Those who have a desire for
education, now [they] have the
opportunity.

Juma

Tena!

Right. ('[you can say that] again!')

NotesA. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem -na.

Wana vitabu.	They have books.
...walio na vitabu...	{ ...who have books...
	{ they who have books...
...aliye na njaa...	{ ...who is hungry...
	{ he who is hungry...

The present relative affirmative forms corresponding to past aliyekuwa, waliokuwa are formed on a special stem -li-, to which we may assign the English translation 'be'. The relative affix is placed after this stem, not before it. Note that this stem is identical in sound with the prefix for the li-tense, but for practical purposes the two elements should be regarded as distinct.

2.

A. Relative counterparts of forms with the stem -na.

vitabu	Watoto walio na vitabu waende nyumbani.	The children who have books should go home.
kalamu	Watoto walio na kalamu waende nyumbani.	The children who have pens should go home.
chakula	Watoto walio na chakula waende nyumbani.	The children who have food should go home.
njaa	Watoto walio na njaa waende nyumbani.	The children who are hungry should go home.

B. Relative counterparts of indicatives in -wa na -, (past tense).

vitabu	Watoto waliokuwa na vitabu walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had books went home.
--------	--	---------------------------------------

kalamu	Watoto waliokuwa na kalamu walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had pens went home.
chakula	Watoto waliokuwa na chakula walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who had food went home.
njaa	Watoto waliokuwa na njaa walikwenda nyumbani.	The children who were hungry went home.

C.

dawa	Mgonjwa aliye na dawa akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has medicine stay in the hospital.
homa	Mgonjwa aliye na homa akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has a fever stay in the hospital.
mafua	Mgonjwa aliye na mafua akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has a chest complaint stay in the hospital.
malaria	Mgonjwa aliye na malaria akae hospitali.	Have the patient who has malaria stay in the hospital.

D.

dawa	Mgonjwa aliyekuwa na dawa alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had medicine stayed in the hospital.
homa	Mgonjwa aliyekuwa na homa alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had a fever stayed in the hospital.
mafua	Mgonjwa aliyekuwa na mafua alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had a chest complaint stayed in the hospital.
malaria	Mgonjwa aliyekuwa na malaria alikaa hospitali.	The patient who had malaria stayed in the hospital.

3.

A. Na-tense, indicative vs. relative.

kichwa	Wagonjwa wengine wanaumwa kichwa.	Some patients have headaches.
	Wanaumwa kichwa waje humu.	Have those who have headaches come in.

Unit 69

1. Basic Dialogue. A shortage of professional people.

Magese

haba

few

Nchi yetu ina walimu haba sana.

Our country has very few teachers.

Hata matabibu wachache pia.

('Even doctors [are] few like-wise.')

tangu

since

-zidi

to increase

mwanafunzi (WA)

student

Lakini tangu juzi juzi

But (since) recently students have

wanafunzi wamezidi.

increased [in number].

Butler

mia

hundred

[Haikuwa] Si mwaka jana mia tatu
walipokwenda Amerika?Wasn't it last year that 300 went to
America?Sangai

zaidi (N)

more, excess

Natumaini mwaka ujao wataruka
zaidi ya hao.I hope next year ['the year which
comes'] more will fly than that.Sangai

~gumu

hard, difficult

gharama (N)

expense, outlay

Kumbuka ni vigumu sana kupata pesa
za kulipa gharama.Remember it is very hard to get the
money to pay the expenses.

NotesA. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

mwaka ujao	the year which comes
miezi ijayo	months which come
mtu aliye na njaa	a person who is hungry

These relative forms (cf. Unit 68) are all formed with subject prefix, plus stem (-ja or -li), plus relative affix. The first two examples illustrate relative counterparts of the a-tense.

2.

A. Multiples of ten.

10	Wanafunzi kumi walikwenda Ulaya mwaka jana.	Ten students went to Europe last year.					
20	Wanafunzi ishirini walikwenda Ulaya mwaka jana.	Twenty students went to Europe last year.					
30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100

B.

12	Mwalimu mkuu wa shule amenunua vikombe kumi na viwili.	The head teacher has bought twelve cups.					
22	Mwalimu mkuu wa shule amenunua vikombe ishirini na viwili.	The head teacher has bought twenty-two cups.					
32	42	52	62	72	82	92	102

C. Relative counterpart of the a-tense.

mwaka	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi mwaka ujao.	I want to read many books next year.
miaka	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi miaka ijayo.	I want to read many books in the years to come.
mwezi	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi mwezi ujao.	I want to read many books next month.

miezi	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi miezi ijayo.	I want to read many books in the months to come.
siku	Ninataka kusoma vitabu vingi siku zijazo.	I want to read many books in the days to come.

D.

15	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu kumi na vitano.	Every student will get more than fifteen books.				
25	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu ishirini na vitano.	Every student will get more than twenty-five books.				
35	45	55	65	75	85	95
105	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu mia (moja) na vitano.	Every student will get more than a hundred and five books.				
125	Kila mwanafunzi atapata zaidi ya vitabu mia (moja) na ishirini na vitano.	Every student will get more than a hundred and twenty-five books.				

3.

A. Concord, including the last word in a numeral phrase.

chupa	Leo tumeuza chupa ishirini na tano za soda. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hizo).	Today we have sold twenty-five bottles of soda. Yesterday we sold more than that.
taa	Leo tumeuza taa ishirini na tano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hizo).	Today we have sold twenty-five lamps. Yesterday we sold more than that.
mayai	Leo tumeuza mayai ishirini na matano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hayo).	Today we have sold twenty-five eggs. Yesterday we sold more than that.
mananasi	Leo tumeuza mananasi ishirini na matano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hayo).	Today we have sold twenty-five pine- apples. Yesterday we sold more than that.

mikate	Leo tumeuza mikate ishirini na mitano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hiyo).	Today we have sold twenty-five loaves of bread. Yesterday we sold more than that.
visu	Leo tumeuza visu ishirini na vitano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hivyo).	Today we have sold twenty-five knives. Yesterday we sold more than that.
vitabu	Leo tumeuza vitabu ishirini na vitano. Jana tuliuzza zaidi (ya hivyo).	Today we have sold twenty-five books. Yesterday we sold more than that.

B. Li-tense: affirmative vs. negative.

kuingia	Hasani aliingia nyumbani. Daudi hakuingia.	Hasani entered the house. Daudi didn't enter.
kukata	Hasani alikata tamaa. tamaa Daudi hakukata tamaa.	Hasani despaired. Daudi didn't despair.
kuañkia	Hasani alituankia. Daudi hakutuankia.	Hasani welcomed us. Daudi didn't welcome us.
kuendelea	Hasani aliendelea na masomo. na Daudi hakuendelea. masomo	Hasani continued with school. Daudi didn't continue.
kuhamishwa	Hasani alihamishwa na serikali. Daudi hakuhamishwa.	Hasani was moved by the government. Daudi wasn't moved.

Unit 70

1. Basic Dialogue. A day off.

Sangai

furaha (N)

rejoicing

Leo ni Jumamosi, siku ya furaha!

Today is Saturday, a day of rejoicing.

Abasi

mipango (MI)

plan, manner, method

Tena! Una mipango yo yote?

Right! Do you have any plans?

Sangai

sinema (N) (or: senema (N))

cinema

Twende sinema leo jioni.

Let's go to the movies this evening.

Abasi

ngoma (N)

drum

Haya. Halafu tutakwenda ngomani.

O.K., and then we'll go to watch the dances.

Sangai

Ndiyo, mimi napenda ngoma sana.

Yes, I like the dances very much.

Abasi

-cheza

to play

dansi (N)

dance

Mimi pia, ijapokuwa siwezi kucheza vizuri.

Me too, even though I can't dance well.

2.

A. Days of the week.

Sat.	Tutajaribu kukutembelea Jumamosi ijayo.	We'll try to visit you next Saturday.
Sun.	Tutajaribu kukutembelea Jumapili ijayo.	We'll try to visit you next Sunday.
Monday-Jumatatu	Tuesday-Jumañine	Wednesday-Jumatano
Thursday-Alhamisi	Friday-Ijumaa	

B.

Fri.	Hamisi amekuwa (po) hapa tangu Ijumaa.	Hamisi has been here since Friday.		
Sat.	Hamisi amekuwa (po) hapa tangu Jumamosi.	Hamisi has been here since Saturday.		
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday

3.

A. Ta-tense: affirmative vs. negative, with person change.

Utakwenda sinema Jumamosi ijayo?	Are you going to the cinema next Saturday?
Hapana, sitakwenda.	No. I won't go.
Utaangusha sahani zote!	You will drop all the plates.
Hapana, sitaziangusha.	No. I won't drop them.
Utamwaga mafuta!	You will spill the oil.
Hapana, sitayamwaga.	No. I won't spill it.
Mafuta yatamwagika!	The oil will be spilled.
Hapana, hayatamwagika.	No. It won't be spilled.
Utaharibu kalamu yangu!	You will spoil my pen.
Hapana, sitaiharibu.	No. I won't spoil it.

Kalamu itaharibika!

The pen will be spoiled.

Hapana, haitaharibika.

No. It won't be spoiled.

4. A is a student in night school. B is thinking about attending, and asks A about it.

C is the father of three children who are of school age. D has five. They discuss the problems involved in the elementary education of their children.

Reading Selection II

Vyakula vya Afrika ya Mashariki

Katika Afrika ya Mashariki vyakula vitatu hutumiwa sana zaidi ya vingine na wenyeji. Upande wa Uganda, 'matoke' ndicho chakula kikuu. Ndizi huchemshwa halafu huondwa kwa mwiko mpaka ziwe kama viazi vilivyopondwa.

Ugali, ni unga wa mahindi au wa mtama unaochanganywa na maji yanayochemka. Huu hufanana na uji lakini ugali ni mkavu zaidi kuliko uji. Unga hupatikana kutoka katika mahindi yaliyosagwa. Ili chakula chenyewe kiwe kitamu, ugali huliwa na kitoweo cha nyama au mboga na mchuzi. Wajaluo ndio walioanza kupika ugali.

Kama vile wenyeji wa bara wanavyosifu ugali, vivyo ndivyo watu wa pwani wanavyosifu wali. Waarabu wanajulikana sana kwa kula wali. Mchele ukiwa na maganda huitwa mpunga, na bila maganda kabla haujapikwa, mchele, lakini ukisha kuwa tayari kwa kula ni wali.

mwenyeji (WA)	the regular possessor; inhabitant	-changanya	to mix
		-fanana	to resemble one another
matoke (pl. MA)	name of a type of food	~kavu	dry
ndicho	that is it, (sg. VI class)	-saga	to pulverize
-chemsha	to cause to boil	ili	in order that
-ponda	to crush by pounding	~tamu	sweet, pleasant delicious
mwiko (MI)	a large wooden spoon	kitoweo (VI)	a relish
ugali (U)	stiff porridge	mchuzi (MI)	gravy, soup, sauce
unga (U)	flour, meal	ndio	it is they, (plu. WA class)
mtama (MI)	millet	-pika	to cook

bara (N)	the hinterland	wali (U)	cooked rice
-sifu	to praise	maganda (MA)	husks
-julikana	to be known	kabla (N)	before

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions

1. Vyakula vingapi hutumiwa sana katika Afrika ya Mashariki?
2. Vyakula hivyo ni vipi?
3. Nani wanaotumia vyakula hivi zaidi?
4. Matoke hupatikana wapi?
5. Utatumia nini kuponda ndizi?
6. Ni unga gani unaotumiwa kwa kupika ugali?
7. Unga na maji yanayochemka hufanywaje?
8. Ugali hufanana na uji?
9. Unga hupatikana kutoka wapi?

Sample Answers

- Vyakula vitatu.
- Vyakula hivyo ni matoke, ugali na wali.
- Wenyeji hutumia vyakula hivi zaidi.
- Matoke hupatikana katika nchi ya Uganda.
- Nitatumia mwiko.
- Unga wa mahindi, au wa mtama.
- Unga na maji yanayochemka huchanganywa.
- Ndiyo, lakini ugali ni mkavu zaidi kuliko uji.
- Unga hupatikana kutoka katika mahindi.

10. Namna gani? Mahindi husagwa.
11. Ugali ni chakula kitamu? Ndiyo, ugali ni chakula kitamu.
12. Ugali huchanganywa na nini? Ugali huchanganywa na kitoweo na
mchuzi.
13. Wenyeji wa pwani wanasifu nini? Wanasifu wali.
14. Ni watu gani wanaojulikana sana
kwa kula wali? waarabu.
15. Mchele ukiwa shambani huitwaje? Mchele ukiwa shambani huitwa mpunga.
16. Wali ni mchele wa namna gani? Wali ni mchele uliopikwa.

Unit 71

1. Basic Dialogue. Let's visit the farm.

Mirambo

shamba (MA)

farm

Tafadhali twende tukatembee

Please let's go take a walk around

shambani.

the farm.

Hasani

baada (N)

after

Ndiyo. Tutakwenda baada ya saa moja

Fine. We'll go in about an hour.

hivi.

Hasani

-pita

to pass

Saa moja imepita. U tayari? (or:

An hour has passed. Are you ready?

Uko tayari?)

Mirambo

Ndiyo, ni tayari. (or: niko tayari.)

Yes, I'm ready.

Twende basi.

Well, let's go.

Hasani

-tangulia

to lead

njia (N)

path

-fuata

to follow

Tangulia. Nitakufuata. Unaijua

[You] lead [the way]. I'll follow

njia kuliko mimi.

you. You know the way better than

I do.

Mirambo

Haya, twende basi.

O.K., let's go then.

NotesA. Further example of the meaning of -ka-.

Tutembee shambani.

Let's take a walk on the farm

[beginning right where we are now].

Tukatembee shambani.

Let's [go] take a walk on the farm

[beginning from some point away from here].

The above examples provide another instance of the meaning of the prefix -ka-.

B. hivi 'about'

baada ya saa moja

after an hour

baada ya saa moja hivi

after about an hour

The word hivi, which in its shape is identical with the proximal demonstrative of the plural of the VI class, is in this sentence a modifier of saa moja, with the translation 'about'.

2.

A. 'last' with days of the week.

Sun. Ulikuwa wapi Jumapili
iliyopita?

Where were you last Sunday?

Mon. Ulikuwa wapi Jumatatu
iliyopita?

Where were you last Monday?

Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday

B. Verb phrase with -wa; 'last year?'

wewe Ulikuwa ukifanya kazi gani
mwaka uliopita?

What type of work were you doing last
year?

ninyi	Mlikuwa mkifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work were you (pl.) doing last year?
Bw. Sangai	Bw. Sangai alikuwa akifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work was Mr. Sangai doing last year?
wanafunzi hawa	Wanafunzi hawa walikuwa wakifanya kazi gani mwaka uliopita?	What type of work were these students doing last year?

C. njia ya plus infinitive.

soko	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda sokoni.	Please, show me the way (to go) to the market.
hospitali	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda hospitalini.	Please, show me the way to the hospital.
boma	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda bomani.	Please, show me the way to the administrative office.
kanisa	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda kanisani.	Please, show me the way to the church.
hoteli	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda hotelini.	Please, show me the way to the hotel.
nyumba	Tafadhali, nionyeshe njia ya kwenda nyumbani.	Please, show me the way to the house.

3.

A. Infinitive vs. past negative.

kuja	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kuja mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakuja.	Juma and Hasani promised to come last month, but they didn't.
kwenda	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kwenda masomo ya jioni mwezi uliopita, lakini hawakwenda.	Juma and Hasani promised to go to the evening classes last month, but they didn't.

kuletea	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kuniletea barua mwezi uliofita, lakini hawakuniletea.	Juma and Hasani promised to send me a letter last month, but they didn't.
kusalimia	Juma na Hasani waliahidi kunisalimia mwalimu wao mwezi uliofita, lakini hawakunisalimia.	Juma and Hasani promised to convey my best regards to their teacher last month, but they didn't.

B. Simple vs. applied stem; 'every' vs. 'last' Saturday.

Sat.	Naandika barua kwa wazazi wangu kila Jumamosi. Niliwaandikia barua Jumamosi iliyopita.	I write to my parents every Saturday. I wrote them last Saturday.
Mon.	Naandika barua kwa wazazi wangu kila Jumatatu. Niliwaandikia barua Jumatatu iliyopita.	I write to my parents every Monday. I wrote them last Monday.
Wednesday	Thursday	Friday

Unit 72

1. Basic Dialogue. The farm needs rain and fertilizer.

Mirambo

-nyesha to rain

mavuno (MA) harvest

Mvua ikinyesha nitapata mavuno If it rains, I'll get a large harvest.
mengi.

Hasani

Umepanda mimea gani shambani mwako? What kind of plants have you planted
on your farm?

Mirambo

Viazi ulaya. Irish potatoes. ('European potatoes')

ningalikuwa if I were

mbolea (N) fertilizer

Kama ningalikuwa na mbolea If I had had fertilizer, I would have
ningalipanda vitunguu. planted onions.

Hasani

-agiza to order

Unaweza kuiagiza kutoka Idara ya You can order it from the Department
Ukulima. of Agriculture.

Mirambo

robo (N) 1/4

Lázima ulipe robo ya gharama kwanza. It's necessary that you pay a quarter
of the amount at the beginning.

Hasani

Kama huna pesa, utapanda nini?

If you don't have money, what will
you plant?Mirambo

Nitapanda njugu karanga.

I will plant groundnuts.

Notes

A. The MU, KU and PA locative concords.

shambani mwako on ('in') your farm

The mw- prefix belongs to the mu- class of locatives (cf. Unit 29, Note A). A general first-approximation translation equivalent for this class is 'in'. For the ku- class of locatives, whose first-approximation equivalent is 'to', the prefix used with possessive stems is kw-, and for the pa- locatives, it is p-.

The corresponding subject prefixes used with verbs are m-/mw-, ku-/kw-, pa-/p-.

2.

A. Lázima plus subjunctive.

kutumia	Lázima utumie mbolea kwa vitunguu.	You must use fertilizer for onions.
kuagiza	Lázima uagize mbolea kutoka Idara ya Ukulima.	You must order fertilizer from the Agriculture Department.
kulipa	Lázima ulipe robo ya gharama kwanza.	You must pay a quarter of the expenses at first.
kumaliza	Lázima umalize kazi yako kesho.	You must finish your work tomorrow.

B. Relative of the na-tense.

kutumia	Wakulima wanaotumia mbolea watapata vitunguu.	The farmers who use fertilizer will get onions.
---------	---	---

kuagiza	Wakulima wanaoagiza mbolea wataipata.	The farmers who order fertilizer will get it.
kutaka	Wakulima wanaotaka mbolea watalipa robo ya gharama.	The farmers who want fertilizer will pay a quarter of the expense.

C. MU locative concord with a possessive stem.

muhogo	Twapanda muhogo mwingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of cassava in our garden.
mimea	Twapanda mimea mingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of crops in our garden.
mpunga	Twapanda mpunga mwingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of rice in our garden.
vitunguu	Twapanda vitunguu vingi shambani mwetu.	We plant a lot of onions in our garden.

D. KU locative concord with a possessive stem.

muhogo	Walileta muhogo mwingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of cassava to our garden.
mimea	Walileta mimea mingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of crops to our garden.
mpunga	Walileta mpunga mwingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of rice to our garden.
vitu	Walileta vitu vingi shambani kwetu.	They brought a lot of things to our garden.

E. MU and KU locative concords as subject prefixes.

↓	Sandukuni mna chumvi.	There is salt in the box.
soko	Sokoni kuna chumvi.	There is salt at the market.
visu	Sokoni kuna visu.	There are knives at the market.
sanduku	Sandukuni mna visu.	There are knives in the box.

3.

A. MU locative concord with possessive stem and subject prefix.

taa	Nyumbani mwako mna taa? Ndiyo, mna mbili.	Is there a lamp in your house? Yes, there are two.
meza	Nyumbani mwako mna meza? Ndiyo, mna mbili.	Is there a table in your house? Yes, there are two.
saa	Nyumbani mwako mna saa? Ndiyo, mna mbili.	Is there a clock in your house? Yes, there are two.
wino	Nyumbani mwako mna wino? Ndiyo, mna chupa mbili.	Is there ink in your house? Yes, there are two bottles of ink.

B. KU locative concord with possessive stem and subject prefix.

baiskeli	Nyumbani kwako kuna baiskeli? Ndiyo, kuna moja.	Is there a bicycle at your house? Yes, there is one.
motokaa	Nyumbani kwako kuna motakaa? Ndiyo, kuna moja.	Is there a car at your house? Yes, there is one.
mgonjwa	Nyumbani kwako kuna mgonjwa? Ndiyo, kuna mmoja.	Is there a patient at your house? Yes, there is one.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B are from different parts of Africa (or the United States).

A asks B about what things are like where he is from (kwako).

Unit 73

1. Basic Dialogue. Should I get a crop loan?

Hasani

-kopa

to borrow

mahali (PA)

place

Ukitaka, nitakuonyesha mahali pa
kukopa pesa.

If you like, I'll show you a place to
borrow money.

Mirambo

moyo (MI)

heart

Sina moyo wa kukopa pesa.

I've no liking for borrowing money.

desturi (N)

a custom, practice

Hii ni desturi mbaya.

It's a bad practice.

Hasani

mwisho (MI)

end

Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya, na (or:
nami) nitazilipa mwisho wa mwaka.

That's how I did, and I will pay it
[back] the end of the year.

Mirambo

Unajua je kama utapata mavuno mazuri?

How do you know whether you will get
good crops?

Hasani

wasiwasi (U)

doubt

-angalia

look at

jibu (MA)

answer, reply

Sina wasiwasi. Ukiangalia shambani, I don't have any doubts. If you look
 utapata majibu. at the farm, you will get the
 answer.

Notes

A. Relative affixes in agreement with the objects of verbs.

kiti ulicholeta (or: ...ulichokileta) the chair that you brought
 karanga tutakazopanda the groundnuts that we will plant
 (or: tutakazozipanda)

The relative affix (-cho- and -zo- in these examples) may stand for the object of a verb, instead of for its subject. Where it stands for the subject, it must be of the same class as the subject prefix:

(mtu) aliyesikia a person who heard ...

Where it stands for the object, it is in the class of the object:

(kitu) alichomunua (the thing) which he bought...

(motokaa) aliyosikia (the car) which he heard...

The relative affix may then be followed by the object prefix, though many speakers omit the latter.

B. Ndi- plus relative affix.

Ndicho. That is the one (e.g. kitu, kiti, kisu)

Ndiyo. That is the one (e.g. ñchi, motokaa, ndizi)

Ndizo. Those are the ones (e.g. ndizi, nyumba)

Ndivyo. Those are the ones (e.g. vitunguu, vitu)

A combination of ndi- plus the relative affix is translated approximately as in these examples.

C. Combination of the constructions described in Notes A and B.

Ndiye niliyemwona. He is the one I saw.

Ndicho ninachotumia. That is the one (e.g. the thing) that

(or: ...ninachokitumia.) I am using.

The constructions of Notes A and B are combined as shown above.

D. Concords of VI (plu.) class in expression of manner.

Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya. That is how I did.

The concords of the plural VI class are used without antecedent to refer to manner. Compare the use of these same concords in the 'adverbial' forms vizuri, vyema.

2.

A. Moyo wa plus infinitive.

kukopa	Sina moyo wa kukopa pesa.	I have no desire to borrow money.
kuendelea	Sina moyo wa kuendelea na masomo.	I have no desire to continue with studies.
kujaribu	Sina moyo wa kujaribu tena.	I have no desire to try again.
kuenda	Sina moyo wa kuenda kwa tabibu.	I have no desire to go to a doctor.

B. VI plu. concords in expression of manner.

kufanya	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofanya.	That's how I did it.
kusema	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyosema.	That's how I said it.
kufikiri	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyofikiri.	That's how I thought.
kuja	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyokuja.	That's how I came.
kuanza	Hivyo ndivyo nilivyoanza.	That's how I started.

C.

kufanya	Nataka kufanya kama ulivyofanya.	I want to do as you did.
kusema	Nataka kusema kama ulivyosema.	I want to speak as you spoke.
kuanza	Nataka kuanza kama ulivyoanza.	I want to start as you started.

kinywaji

4. vyakula Uliagiza vyakula vizuri? Did you order good food?
Ndiyo. Vyakula nilivyoviagiza Yes, the food that I
vilikuwa vizuri sana. ordered is very good.

viberiti

5. mikate Uliagiza mikate mizuri? Did you order some good
loaves?
Ndiyo. Mikate niliyoiagiza Yes, the loaves that I
ilikuwa mizuri sana. ordered are very good.

mimea

Unit 74

1. Basic Dialogue. Farm implements.

Hasani

-lima

to cultivate

kwenu

at your place

Je, kwenu mwatumia vyombo gani kwa
kulimia?

Say, what tools do you use in farm-
ing where you live?

Mirambo

jembe (MA)

hoe

uma (U, N)

rake

Tunatumia majembe na nyuma.

We use hoes and rakes.

Hasani

Kuna wakulima wanaotumia plau?

Are there farmers who use plows?

Mirambo

Ndiyo, wale walio na mashamba
makubwa.

Yes, those who have large farms.

Hasani

miti (MI)

tree

kijiti (VI)

small tree, underbrush

-kata

to cut

Mkisha angusha miti mnakata vijiti
na nini?

When you have finished felling trees,
what do you cut the brush with?

Mirambo

panga (MA)

large knife

Wengi hukata vijiti kwa mapanga.

Many cut the brush with pangas.

Hasani

laini

soft, smooth

Na kwa kulainisha udongo?

And for softening the ground?

(or: na kwa kutifua udongo?)

Mirambo

Panga latosha.

A panga is all right.

Notes

A. Locative concord plus possessive stem, with no antecedent.

Kwetu tunatumia majembe. At our place, we use hoes.

The concord kw- plus possessive stem is used where English would have 'at your place', 'where we live', etc.

B. The spelling of -ki(i)sha.

The forms which in Standard Swahili are spelled akiisha, nikiisha, etc. are commonly pronounced with only one i.

2.

A. Concords with mahali.

~ema Tumeona mahali pema leo.

We have found a good place today.

~ngapi Tumeona mahali pangapi leo?

How many places have we found today?

kupanda Tumeona mahali pazuri pa
kupanda muhogo leo.We have found a good place for
planting cassava today.kuogelea Tumeona mahali pazuri pa
kuogelea leo.We have found a good place for
swimming today.

B.

kuweka Wapi mahali pa kuwekea
taa?

Where does the lamp belong?

kupata	Wapi mahali pa kupatia dawa?	Where is the place to get medicine?
kununua	Wapi mahali pa kununua pombe?	Where is the place to buy beer?
kuvaa	Wari mahali pa kuvaa nguo?	Where is the dressing room?

C. -kisha plus verb stem.

kuangusha	Ukisha angusha miti hii, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish felling these trees, return home.
kulainisha	Ukisha lainisha udongo huu, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish breaking up the earth, return home.
kufuta	Ukisha futa maji haya, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish wiping up the water, return home.
kusafisha	Ukisha safisha majembe haya, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish cleaning these hoes, return home.
kupigwa	Ukisha pigwa sindano, rudi nyumbani.	When you finish getting your injection, return home.

3.

A. Na-tense: indicative vs. relative.

kutumia	Wakulima wengi wanatumia plau? Hapana, wanaotumia plau ni wachache.	Do many farmers use ploughs? No, those who use ploughs are few.
kujua	Watu wengi wanajua kutengeneza motakaa? Hapana, wanaojua kutengeneza motakaa ni wachache.	Do many people know how to repair cars? No, those who know how to repair cars are few.

kuangusha	Watu wengi wanaangusha miti kwa visu? Hapana, wanaoangusha miti kwa visu ni wachache.	Do many people fell trees with knives? No, those who fell trees with knives are few.
kuhudhuria	Wanafunzi wengi wanahudhuria vyuo vya juu? Hapana, wanaohudhuria vyuo vya juu ni wachache.	Do many students attend universities? No, those who attend universities are few.
B. Relative counterpart of <u>a</u> -tense.		
majembe	Wako wapi wanaume walio na majembe? Wale walio na majembe wamekwisha kwenda shambani.	Where are the men with hoes? Those who have hoes have already gone to the garden.
uma	mapanga	

Unit 75

1. Basic Dialogue. Times for planting and weeding.

Hasani

mbegu (N)

seed

Utapanda mbegu zako lini?

When are you going to plant your seeds?

MiramboMvua ikinyesha nitazipanda mbegu
zangu.

I'll plant them when it rains.

Hasani

-palilia

to weed

Umenunua vyombo vya kupalilia?

Have you bought the tools for weeding?

Mirambo

kitambo

a short period of time,
a piece (of time)Kitambo! Mapanga sita na majembe
matano.

Long ago! Six pangas and five hoes.

HasaniLakini, ni wakati gani mzuri wa
kupalilia?But what time is a good one for
weeding?MiramboTuseme, kama mimea ikisha pata inchi
sita hivi.Let's say, when the plants have already
gotten [to] about six inches.Hasani

-mea

to grow

-ota

to shoot out

jani (MA)

leaf

Maana yake ikisha ota majani?

That is to say, when they put out
[their] leaves?Mirambo

Ndiyo.

Yes.

2.

A. wakati wa plus infinitive.

kupanda	Wakati gani mzuri wa kupanda mbegu?	When is the best time to plant seeds?
kupalilia	Wakati gani mzuri wa kupalilia shamba?	When is the best time to weed a garden?
kukata	Wakati gani mzuri wa kukata vijiti	When is the best time to cut brush?
kulainisha	Wakati gani mzuri wa kulainisha udongo?	When is the best time to break up the soil?

3.

A. Me-tense (affirmative) vs. -ja- negative.

kupalilia	Umepalilia mahindi yako? Bado sijapalilia.	Have you weeded your maize? Not yet, I haven't.
kupanda	Umepanda muhogo wako? Bado sijapanda.	Have you planted your cassava? Not yet, I haven't.
kupeleka	Umepeleka kalamu yako kwa fundu? Bado sijapeleka.	Have you taken your pen to the repairman? Not yet, I haven't.

B.

kuvuna	Wakulima wamevuna mtama? Hapana. Bado hawajavuna.	Have the farmers harvested millet? - No, they haven't yet.
kupanda	Wakulima wamepanda mtama? Hapana. Bado hawajapanda.	Have the farmers planted millet? No, they haven't yet.
kutenge- neza	Fundi ametengeneza kalamu yako? Hapana. Bado hajatengeneza.	Has the pen repairer repaired your pen? No, he hasn't yet.

C. Infinitive vs. affirmative subjunctive vs. negative subjunctive.

mpunga	M̄punga huo unahitaji kupaliliwa. Tuupalilie kesho. Tusiupalilie leo.	That rice requires weeding. Let's weed it tomorrow. Let's not weed it today.
mtama	M̄tama huo unahitaji kupaliliwa. Tuupalilie kesho. Tusiupalilie leo.	That millet requires weeding. Let's weed it tomorrow. Let's not weed it today.
mahindi	Mahinci haya yanahitaji kupaliliwa. Tuyapalilie kesho. Tusiyapalilie leo.	This maize requires weeding. Let's weed it tomorrow. Let's not weed it today.
maharagwe	Maharagwe haya yanahitaji kupaliliwa. Tuyapalilie kesho. Tusiyapalilie leo.	These beans require weeding. Let's weed them tomorrow. Let's not weed them today.
njugu	Njugu hizi zinahitaji kupaliliwa. Tuzipalilie kesho. Tusizipalilie leo.	These groundnuts require weeding. Let's weed them tomorrow. Let's not weed them today.

muhogo Muhogo huo unahitaji
kupaliliwa.

Tuupalilie kesho.

Tusiupalilie leo.

This cassava requires weeding.

Let's weed it tomorrow.

Let's not weed it today.

Conversation Starters

1. Discuss agricultural practices in the part of Africa in which you are most interested.

Unit 76

1. Basic Dialogue. Boy or Girl?

Hadija

Bibiye amepata mtoto wa kiume au wa kike? Did his wife have a boy or a girl?

Hamisi

Mtoto wa kiume. A boy.

Hadija

Je, hawajambo? Are they all right?

Hamisi

mgongo (MI) back

Hawajambo, lakini mama aumwa mgongo. They're all right, but the mother's back is hurting her.

Hadija

kujifungua to release oneself

Pengine ni kwa sababu ya kujifungua. Maybe it's because of delivering the baby.

Hamisi

nafuu (N) advantage

Atapata nafuu tu. She'll recover.

Hadija

Mtoto mwenyewe ana matata? How is the baby himself?

Hamisi

fujo (MA) disturbance

wala	nor, neither
matata (pl. MA)	complications
Mzuri sana. Hana fujo wala matata.	Very fine. He has no trouble or complications.

Notes

A. Wala between negatives.

Wala either is both preceded and followed by a negative verb, or it joins two nouns which are in parallel relation to the same negative verb. See the exercises for further examples.

2.

A. Some special forms for possessives with family relationships.

mke	Mkeo anapata nafuu?	Is your wife recovering?
hibi	Bibi yako anapata nafuu?	Is your wife recovering?
mtoto	Mtoto wako anapata nafuu?	Is your child recovering?
baba	Baba yako anapata nafuu?	Is your father recovering?
mama	Mama yako anapata nafuu?	Is your mother recovering?
mume	Mumeo anapata nafuu? (or: Bwana wako...)	Is your husband recovering?
ndugu	Nduguyo anapata nafuu?	Is your brother recovering?
dada	Dadio anapata nafuu? (or: Dada yako...)	Is your sister recovering?

B. Wala

taa	Sina taa wala mafuta.	I have neither lamp nor oil.
chai	Sina chai wala kahawa.	I have neither tea nor coffee.
baiskeli	Sina baiskeli wala motakaa.	I have neither bicycle nor automobile.

C.

kiti	Wanafunzi hawana viti wala meza.	The students have neither chairs nor tables.
kitabu	Wanafunzi hawana vitabu wala kalamu.	The students have neither books nor pens.
mwalimu	Wanafunzi hawana mwalimu wala shule.	The students have neither teacher nor school.

D.

kusoma	Wanaume hawa hawajui kusoma wala kuandika.	These men know neither reading nor writing.
Kiingereza	Wanaume hawa hawajui Kiingereza wala Kiswahili.	These men know neither English nor Swahili.

3.

A. Concords, including relative forms of verbs.

kitabu	Nilinunua kitabu juzi. Kitabu nilichonunua juzi ni kibaya. (or: ...nilichokinunua...)	I bought a book the day before yesterday. The book which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
baiskeli	Nilinunua baiskeli juzi. Baiskeli niliyonunua juzi ni mbaya.	I bought a bicycle the day before yesterday. The bicycle which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.
visu	Nilinunua visu juzi. Visu nilivyonunua juzi ni vibaya.	I bought knives the day before yesterday. The knives which I bought the day before yesterday are bad.

mafuta	<p>Nilinunua mafuta juzi.</p> <p>Mafuta niliyonunua juzi ni mabaya.</p>	<p>I bought oil the day before yesterday.</p> <p>The oil which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.</p>
jembe	<p>Nilinunua jembe juzi.</p> <p>Jembe nililonunua juzi ni baya.</p>	<p>I bought a hoe the day before yesterday.</p> <p>The hoe which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.</p>
nanasi	<p>Nilinunua nanasi juzi.</p> <p>Nanasi nililonunua juzi ni baya.</p>	<p>I bought a pineapple the day before yesterday.</p> <p>The pineapple which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.</p>
ndizi	<p>Nilinunua ndizi juzi.</p> <p>Ndizi nilizonunua juzi ni mbaya.</p>	<p>I bought bananas the day before yesterday.</p> <p>The bananas which I bought the day before yesterday are bad.</p>
wino	<p>Nilinunua wino juzi.</p> <p>Wino nilionunua juzi ni mbaya.</p>	<p>I bought some ink the day before yesterday.</p> <p>The ink which I bought the day before yesterday is bad.</p>
taa	<p>vitunguu maharagwe</p>	

Unit 77

1. Basic Dialogue. Prenatal care.

Mirambo

mja mzito

a pregnant person

-tunza

to care for

Mama mja mzito hutunzwaje?

How is a pregnant woman cared for?

MohamedHupelakwa hospitalini akiwa karibu
kujifungua.She is taken to the hospital when she
is about to deliver.Mirambo

Mle anafanya nini?

What does she do in there?

Mohamed

-pima

to measure, examine

Bwana daktari humpima na kumpa
dawa.The doctor examines her and gives her
medicine.

-lisha

to feed ('cause to eat')

Pia humpa chakula cha kumlisha
mtoto.She is also given food for nourishing
the child.Mirambo

tunzo (MA)

care

Wanapata matunzo safi?

Do they get good care?

Mohamed

-punzika

to rest

Sana, hata mapunziko.

Very much so. [They] even [get a lot
of] rest.

NotesA. Sequence of verbs joined by na.

daktari humpima na kumpa dawa the doctor examines her and gives
her medicine

Here, the single subject word daktari is followed by two verbs, the stems of which are -pima and -pa. Where the action of the second verb is not clearly the goal or result of the action of the first, the second is in the infinitive form, following na 'and'.

2.

A. Causative stems based on -la and -nywa.

	Usi <u>l</u> ishe mtoto!	Don't feed the child!
↓		
kunyw <u>e</u> sha	Usi <u>nyw</u> eshe mtoto!	Don't give the child anything to drink!
watoto	Usi <u>w</u> anyweshe watoto!	Don't give the children anything to drink!
kul <u>i</u> sha	Usi <u>w</u> alishe watoto!	Don't feed the children!

B. Subjunctive with -ka- after -enda.

kuk <u>a</u>	Kaa kitako upum <u>z</u> ike.	Sit down and rest.
kw <u>e</u> nda	Nenda nyumbani ukapum <u>z</u> ike.	Go home and rest.
ku <u>ing</u> ia	Ingia nyumbani upum <u>z</u> ike.	Get into the house and rest.

C. Passive stem based on -pa.

kalamu	Wanafunzi walipewa kalamu zao.	The pupils were given their pens.
vitabu	Wanafunzi walipewa vitabu vyao.	The pupils were given their books.
viti	Wanafunzi walipewa viti vyao.	The pupils were given their chairs.

meza	Wanafunzi walipewa meza zao.	The pupils were given their tables.
D. <u>-tunza.</u>		
watoto	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza watoto.	My job was to care for children.
ng'ombe	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza ng'ombe.	My job was to care for cows.
nguruwe	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza nguruwe.	My job was to care for pigs.
taa zetu zote	Kazi yangu ilikuwa kutunza taa zetu zote.	My job was to care for all our lamps.

3.

A. MU and KU locative concords with subject prefixes and demonstratives.

hospitali	Hospitalini mnafanywa nini? Mle wagonjwa wanatunzwa.	What is done in the hospital? There patients are cared for.
shule	Shuleni mnafanywa nini? Mle wanafunzi wanasomesywa.	What is done in the school? There pupils are taught.
soko	Sokoni kunafanywa nini? Kule vyakula vinauzwa.	What is done at the market? There (foodstuffs) are sold.
pwani	Pwani kunafanywa nini? Kule watu wanaogelea.	What is done at the beach? There people swim.

Unit 78

1. Basic Dialogue. Post-natal care. (cont'd from Unit 77)

Mirambo

Wakiisha kuzaa wanakaa hospitalini? When they have finished delivering,
do they stay in the hospital?

Mohamed

Ndiyo, kwa siku chache tu. Yes, for just a few days.

Mirambo

-lia to cry
Mtoto akilia, hupewa chakula? When the baby cries, is it given food?

Mohamed

~changa young
-nyonya to suck
Akiwa mchanga sana, mama If it is very young, the mother nurses
humi nyonyesha. it.

Mirambo

hasa exactly, very much
Hasa, ni chakula gani watoto Just what food do babies like?
hupenda?

Mohamed

Kwa kawaida, maziwa. In general, milk.

Mirambo

-beba to carry a child on back or hip
Kwenu mama hubeba watoto? At your place does the mother carry
the children on her back?

Mohamed

mbavuni

by the ribs

mbeleko (N)

cloth or sling for carrying
a child

Ndiyo, huwabeba mgongoni, au
mbavuni katika mbeleko.

Yes, they carry them on [their]
back[s] or on [their] hip[s] in
a sling.

2.

A. -lilia.

nini? Mtoto analilia nini?

What is the child crying for?

chakula Mtoto analilia chakula.

The child is crying for food.

maziwa Mtoto analilia maziwa.

The child is crying for milk.

mama Mtoto analilia mama.

The child is crying for the mother.

chai baba sukari Hamisi

B. Negative imperative.

kuliza Usimlize mtoto!

Don't make the child cry.

kunyo- Usimnyonyeshe mtoto.
nyesha

Don't nurse the child.

kulisha Usimlishe mtoto.

Don't feed the child.

kupa Usimpe mtoto kisu!

Don't give the child a knife.

C. KU locative: concords with various possessive stems.

ninyi Kwenu wapi?

Where is your (pl.) home?

wewe Kwako wapi?

Where is your (sg.) home?

yeye Kwake wapi?

Where is his/her home?

wao Kwao wapi?

Where is their home?

D. PA locative concord with various possessive stems.

sisi	Hapa petu.	This is our home.
mimi	Hapa pangu.	This is my home.
wao	Hapa pao.	This is their home.
yeye	Hapa pake.	This is his home.

3.

A. -kwisha plus verb stem vs. negative imperative.

kulisha	Usimlishe mtoto! Amekwisha lishwa na dada yake.	Don't feed the child! It has already been fed by its sister.
kuryweshwa	Usimnyonyeshe mtoto! Amekwisha nyonyeshwa na mama yake.	Don't nurse the child! It has already been nursed by its mother.
kuliza	Usimlize mtoto! Amekwisha lizwa.	Don't make the child cry! It has already been made to cry.
kupa chakula	Usimpe mtoto chakula. Amekwisha pewa na mama yake.	Don't give the child food! It has already been given food by its mother.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B compare notes on the problems of pre- and post-natal care in Africa and in the United States.

Unit 79

1. Basic Dialogue. When are you getting married?

Magese

-oa

to marry

Utaca lini, Ochieng?

When are you going to get married

Ochieng?

Ochieng

mchumba

boy/girl friend, fiancé(e)

Wakati mchumba wangu atakaporudi.

At the time when my fiancée returns.

Magese

Kwani yuko wapi?

Oh? Where is she?

OchiengAlikwenda kusomesha huko upande
wa Kisumu.She went to teach in the region of
Kisumu.Magese

mahari

lobola, dowry

Umelipa mahari au bado?

Have you paid the dowry or not (yet)?

Ochieng

-ngoja

to wait

Bado. Namngoja arudi.

Not yet. I'm waiting for her to
return.Magese

-kubali

to agree

Wazazi wako na wake wamekubali?

Have your parents and hers given their
consent?

Ochieng-zua

to prevent

Hawawezi kunizua nisisimwoe.

They can't prevent me from marrying
her.NotesA. Relative future forms with -taka-.

The future tense in its non-relative forms uses -ta- as its tense prefix, but in relative forms uses the disyllabic prefix -taka-.

B. Two verbs that are followed by subjunctive forms.

Note that subjunctive verb forms often follow the verbs -zua 'to prevent from' and -ngoja 'to wait'. The former is followed by the negative subjunctive.

2.

A. -zua plus negative subjunctive.

kusema	Huwezi kunizua nisiseme.	You can't prevent me from talking.
kwenda	Huwezi kunizua nisiende.	You can't prevent me from going.
kulewa	Huwezi kunizua nisilewe.	You can't prevent me from being drunk.
kurudi	Huwezi kunizua nisirudi.	You can't prevent me from coming back.
kuendelea	Huwezi kunizua nisiendele.	You can't prevent me from moving on.

B.

kusema	Hamwezi kuwazua wasiseme.	You can't prevent them from talking.
kula	Hamwezi kuwazua wasile.	You can't prevent them from eating.

kuelewa kujifunza kusikitika

C.

kuona Hatuwezi kuwazuia wasimwone. We can't prevent them from seeing him.

kusaidia Hatuwezi kuwazuia wasimsaidie. We can't prevent them from helping him.

kusikia kupenda kupiga

D. -ngoja plus subjunctive.

kusema Hatutakungoja useme. We'll not wait for you to speak.

kwanza Hatutakungoja uanze. We'll not wait for you to begin.

kwenda kujitayarisha kurudi

E. Verb phrase with -wa.

kusema Ali alikuwa akiningoja niseme. Ali was waiting for me to speak.

kuja Ali alikuwa akiningoja nije. Ali was waiting for me to come.

kufuata kutangulia kumaliza kuingia

3.

A. -ja- negative vs. affirmative subjunctive.

Bado hajasema. He hasn't spoken yet.

Tutainingoja aseme. We'll wait for him to speak.

Bado sijasema. I haven't spoken yet.

Tutakungoja useme. We'll wait for you to speak.

Bado hawajasema. They haven't spoken yet.

Tutawangoja waseme. We'll wait for them to speak.

Bado hajaenda. He hasn't gone yet.

Tutainingoja aende. We'll wait for him to go.

B. Infinitive vs. negative subjunctive.

kisu	Nataka kukinunua kisu hiki. Usijaribu kunizuia nisikinunue.	I want to buy this knife. Don't try to prevent me from buying it.				
vitabu	Nataka kuvinunua vitabu hivi. Usijaribu kunizuia nisivinunue.	I want to buy these books. Don't try to prevent me from buying them.				
mbegu	Nataka kuzinunua mbegu hizi. Usijaribu kunizuia nisizinunue.	I want to buy these seeds. Don't try to prevent me from buying it.				
sanduku	ng'ombe	nguruwe	mkate	mikate	imea	imea

Unit 80

1. Basic Dialogue. Come along to the wedding!

Ochieng

wiki (N)

week

Je, ndugu yangu, wajua kwamba nitaoa

Say, brother, do you know I'm going

wiki ijayo?

to get married next week?

Magese

Kweli? Hiyo sijasikia bado.

Really? I hadn't heard (yet).

harusi (N) (or: arusi)

wedding

Harusi itakuwa siku gani?

What day will the wedding be?

Ochieng

kutwa

to set (of the sun)

Kesho kutwa, bwana.

The day after tomorrow.

Magese

-unga

to join

(-ungana)

to join one another

Nani atakayewaunganisheni?

Who is going to marry you?

('...to cause you to join one
another')

Ochieng

kasisi (MA pers.)

clergyman, priest

Kasisi Kamau.

The Reverend Mr. Kamau.

Magese

-fika

to arrive

-shangilia	to make rejoicings for
Nitafika kuwashangilieni.	I'll be there to cheer for you.
-simama	to stand up
Nani ambao watawasimamieni?	Who will stand up with you?

Ochieng

mume (pl. waume)	husband
Dada yangu na mumewe.	My sister and her husband.

NotesA. Relative phrases with amba-.

Certain tenses do not take the relative affix at all. Instead they form relative phrases in the following manner:

amba, plus rel. affix, plus indicative verb

vitabu ambavyo hujaviuza the books that you haven't sold yet

Even tenses which may take the relative affix sometimes form relative phrases in this way. See the exercises for further examples.

B. Object affix(es) for second person plural.

The object pronouns for first and third person singular and plural, and for second person singular, are simple in form and are used all over the Swahili speaking area. The second person plural object prefix is different in both ways: it is variously represented in different forms of Swahili (see Ashton, p. 42 for details); it also involves both a prefixial element (identical with the 3 plu. or 2 sg. object prefix) and a suffixed element. For examples of one variant, see the exercises.

2.

A. Second person plural object.

kupa	Haruna hataki kuwapeni kalamu	Haruna does not want to give
	zenu.	your pens to you.

kuletea Haruna hataki kuwaleteeni Haruna does not want to bring
kalamu zenu. your pens to you.

kuonyesha kupatia kutengenezea kurudishia

B. Relative forms with amba- -o.

kusoma Nitavisoma vitabu ambavyo I'll read the books which I
sijaviuza. haven't sold.

kuleta Nitavileta vitabu ambavyo I'll bring the books which I
sijaviuza. haven't sold.

kupa Nitakupa vitabu ambavyo I'll give you the books which
sijaviuza. I haven't sold.

kuonyesha Nitavionyesha vitabu I'll show the books which I
ambavyo sijaviuza. haven't sold.

C.

vitabu Nenda ukavichukue vitabu Go and get the books which you
ambavyo hujaviuza. haven't sold.

vitu Nenda ukavichukue vitu Go and get the things which you
ambavyo hujaviuza. haven't sold.

wino Nenda ukauchukue wino Go and get the ink which you
ambao hujauza. haven't sold.

kalamu Nenda ukaichukue kalamu Go and get the pen which you
ambayo hujaiuza. haven't sold.

jembe Nenda ukalichukue jembe Go and get the hoe which you
ambalo hujaliuza. haven't sold.

mazao Nenda ukayachukue mazao Go and get the crops which you
ambayo hujayauza. haven't sold.

mkate Nenda ukauchukue mkate Go and get the loaf of bread
ambao hujauza. which you haven't sold.

mimea	Nenda ukaichukue mimea ambayo hujaiuza.	Go and get the plants which you haven't sold.
-------	--	--

3.

A.

vikombe	Nimeleta vikombe. Vikombe ambavyo umeleta ni vingapi?	I have brought cups. ('The cups which you have brought, how many are they?')
visahani	Nimeleta visahani. Visahani ambavyo umeleta ni vingapi?	I have brought saucers. How many saucers have you brought?

kalamu sindano majembe mikate mimea wapagazi
wanafunzi

Conversation Starters

1. What kind of woman (man) would you like to marry? (This topic is one which allows ample opportunity for the use of the relative forms of verbs.)

Reading Selection III

Shule za Tanganyika Zamani.

Nchini Tanganyika mlikuwa shule za namna tatu hasa. Zile zilizoendeshwa na serikali, misheni, na pia wenyeji. Shule hizo zote zilikuwa na madarasa kutoka ya chini kabisa mpaka ya juu. Lakini zile za wenyeji zilifikia madarasa ya katikati tu, kwa sababu baadaye wanafunzi waliingia zile nyingine.

Watoto walianza masomo yao yote katika lugha ya Kiswahili. Hawaku-jifunza katika lugha za makabila yao. Walipofika darasa la tano, yaani baada ya kusoma kwa muda wa miaka minne, walianza kujifunza Kiingereza. Lugha mbili zilianza kutumiwa. Baadaye masomo yalikuwa katika Kiswahili na Kiingereza; halafu mafunzo yote yalikuwa katika Kiingereza tu mpaka mwanafunzi alipohitimu na kuendelea na masomo ya juu katika chuo kikuu.

Katika shule za chini, watoto walianza kuhudhuria shule walipokuwa na umri wa miaka sita au saba. Lakini sasa wengi huanza kusoma wakiwa na umri wa miaka mitano hivi. Shule nyingi za chini hazikuwa za serikali kwa kawaida. Zamani kidogo watoto wachache walipata nafasi ya kusoma na kuandika, lakini sasa kwa ajili ya juhudi kuu iliyofanywa na wakuu wa Idara ya Elimu watoto wengi wanaelimishwa kila mwaka. Wingi wao unazidi sana mwaka kwa mwaka kwa jinsi ambavyo hata shule za juu zinashindwa kuwapokea wote. Skuli hizo ndogo ndogo, ambazo wakati mwingine ziliitwa 'shule za vijijini' zilikuwa na madarasa ya kwanza manne tu. Mkuu wa walimu waliofundisha humo aliitwa Mwalimu Mkuu, na ndiye aliyesimamia na kuendesha shule za vijijini.

yaani	that is to say	wingi (U)	majority, number
juhudi (N)	effort, exertion	funzo (MA)	(course of) instruction
-elimisha	to educate	zamani	time past
jinsi (N, but often used with concords of VI)	way, manner	-shinda	to overcome
		-pokea	to accept
		-simamia	to oversee, supervise

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

Questions

Sample Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Nchini Tanganyika mlikuwa na shule za namna ngapi? | Mlikuwa na shule za namna tatu hasa. |
| 2. Shule hizo ni zipi? | Zile zilizoendeshwa na serikali, misheni, na wenyeji. |
| 3. Je, shule hizo zilikuwa na madarasa mpaka ya juu? | Ndiyo, lakini za wenyeji zilikuwa na madarasa mpaka ya katikati tu. |
| 4. Je, wanafunzi katika shule za wenyeji waliingia zile nyingine? | Ndiyo, waliingia. |
| 5. Watoto walianza masomo yao katika lugha za makabila yao? | Hapana, bwana, mafunzo yote yalikuwa katika Kiswahili. |
| 6. Je, Kiingereza? | Kiingereza! Watoto walijifunza walipofika darasa la tano. |
| 7. Lugha gani zilitumiwa katika mafunzo baada ya kujifunza Kiingereza? | Kiingereza. |
| 8. Watoto walianza shule wakiwa wakiwa na umri gani? | Miaka sita au saba, lakini sasa wengi huwa na miaka mitano hivi. |
| 9. Skuli zote za chini zilikuwa za serikali? | La, nyingine zilikuwa za misheni na za wenyeji. |
| 10. Watoto wachache wanapata nafasi ya kusoma na kuandika? | La, zamani kidogo. Lakini sasa wanaelimishwa wengi mwaka kwa mwaka. |

-
11. Skuli ndogo ndogo ziliitwaje? Wakati mwingine ziliitwa 'shule za vijijini'.
12. Shule za vijijini zilikuwa na madarasa mengi? Hapana, zilikuwa na madarasa ya kwanza marne tu.
13. Mkuu wa walimu alitwa Mwalimu Mkuu? Ndiyo.
14. Mwalimu Mkuu alisimamia shule za vijijini? Ndiyo, pia aliziendesha.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 80

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Juma aliwapatieni pesa ngapi? | How much money did Juma get them? |
| 2. Watu wengi wa nchi hii hunywa kahawa nyingi. | Many people of this country drink a lot of coffee. |
| 3. Unaweza kuitengeneza baiskeli hii? | Can you fix this bicycle? |
| 4. Siwezi, lakini nitaipeleka kwa fundi. | I can't, but I'll take it to the repairman. |
| 5. Maduka mengi huuza nguo na mengine huuza vyakula. | Many shops sell clothes, and others food. |
| 6. Afrika ya mashariki ni nchi nzuri sana. | East Africa is a very beautiful country. |
| 7. Wenyeji wa nchi hiyo huongea lugha mbali mbali. | The natives of that country speak various languages. |
| 8. Wanajenga nyumba zao kwa miti na udongo. | They build their houses of sticks and mud. |
| 9. Akifika jioni ya leo, tutamrudisha nyumbani kwao. | If he arrives this evening, we will have him go back home. |
| 10. Katika mji wa Dar kuna ofisi za Serikali. | In the city of Dar es Salaam there are government offices. |
| 11. Mpatieni nguo za kutosha. | Get him enough clothes. |
| 12. Nenda ukamwambie ya kwamba mimi siji. | Go tell him that I'm not coming. |

13. Mwanafunzi akisoma sana
anahitimu mitihani.
A student, if he studies a lot,
passes the examinations.
14. Hawapendi nyama wala maziwa.
They don't like milk or meat.
15. Atakaporudi atahudhuria
kanisani.
When he gets back, he will attend
church.
16. Tukatembee huko pwani.
Let's go walk along the beach.
17. Umepanda nini shambani mwako?
What have you raised on your farm?
18. Nguo ambazo ulinunua juzi
zimefika leo.
The clothes you bought the day
before yesterday have arrived
today.
19. Kitabu ndicho ninachotaka.
A book is what I want.
20. Mwambie kwamba matata
yamekwisha.
Tell him that the trouble is over.
21. Harusi yake itakuwa siku ya
Jumamosi.
His wedding will be on Saturday.
22. Nikipata pesa nitanunua
motakaa.
If I get the money, I'll buy a car.
23. Huo ulikuwa mwisho wa dansi.
That was the end of the dance.
24. Walimu walifika shuleni kitambo.
The teachers got to school early.
25. Usichanganye unga na maji.
Don't mix the meal with water.
26. Nataka msaada wa pesa.
I want financial assistance.
27. Watu wanaofanya kazi ya upishi
wanaitwa wapishi.
People who do culinary work are
called cooks.
28. Ye yote atakayeniuliza mwambie
aningoje.
Whoever asks for me, tell him to
wait for me.

29. Alikaa hapa kwa muda wa saa moja hivi. He stayed here for about an hour.
30. Kama akija, atatupigia simu. If he comes, he will call us up.
31. Kumbuka kumsalimia Bwana Hasani. Remember to say hello to Hasani.
32. Watakapofika tutasafiri mpaka Mbeya. When they get here, we will make a trip to Mbeya.
33. Pole, utapata nafuu. Take it easy, you'll get better.
34. Walimshangilia mkubwa wao alipofika. They greeted their leader noisily when he arrived.
35. Baba yake amepona, sasa hajambo. His father recovered; he's all right now.
36. Mtoto anapolia anataka kunyonya. When a child cries, it wants to nurse.
37. Ana wasiwasi juu ya mguu wake uliovimba. He's worried about his swollen foot.
38. Yafaa kuzuia magonjwa kwa kutumia dawa. It's a good idea to prevent diseases through the use of medicine.
39. Wapatieni vitu wanavyotaka ili waondoke. Get them the things they want, so that they may go.
40. Kile ndicho kitabu ninachokisoma. That one there is the book I am reading.

Unit 8:

1. Basic Dialogue. Getting into town from the airport.

Abasi

m̄zigo (MI)

load

Mizigo yangu iko tayari sasa.

My luggage ('loads') is ready now.

kwenye

which has/where there is

Tafadhali, ichukue mpaka kwenye
teksi.

Please take it to the taxi stand.

piga

to strike, hit

simu

telephone, telegraph

Kwanza, nataka kupiga simu.

First, I want to make a phone call
(or: to send a telegram)

Hamisi

Bwana, unataka teksi?

Do you want a taxi, sir?

Abasi

Ndiyo. Bei gani kutoka hapa mpaka
m̄jini?

Yes. How much from here to downtown?

Hamisi

Itaonyeshwa na mita. Una mizigo
mingapi?

It is shown by the meter. How many
bags have you?

Abasi

~eusi

black

~ekundu

red

Nina miwili mikubwa nyeusi, na mmoja mwekundu. ~zito	I have two big black ones, and one red one. heavy
Mwekundu ni mdogo, lakini ni mzito sana.	The red one is small, but it is very heavy.

NotesA. The stem ~enye.

mahali penye teksi	a place where there are taxis
kahawa yenye sukari	coffee with sugar in it
kijana mwenye mchumba	a young fellow who has a fiancée

The stem ~enye is used as in these examples. With the ku concord it is frequently used without an antecedent, as in the basic dialogue for this unit.

2.

A. ~enye; concords with ~wili 'two'.

nyumba	Tulifika kwenye nyumba mbili.	We arrived where there were two houses.
mti	Tulifika kwenye miti miwili.	We arrived where there were two trees.
shule	Tulifika kwenye shule mbili.	We arrived where there were two schools.

jumba shamba hoteli

B. Concords with ~ingine and ~eusi.

vitabu	Vitabu vingine ni vyeusi.	Some books are black.
kitu	Kitu kingine ni cheusi.	Some thing is black. (or: the other thing...)
meza	Meza nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some tables are black.
baiskeli	Baiskeli nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some bicycles are black.
nguo	Nguo nyingine ni nyeusi.	Some clothes are black.

wino Wino mwingine ni mweusi. Some ink is black.

C. Concorde with ingine and ekundu.

kitabu Vitabu vingine ni vyekundu. The other books are red.

tunda Tunda jingine ni jekundu. The other piece of fruit is red.

baiskeli nguo wino

D. Concorde with ingine and zito.

mzigo Mizigo mingine ni mizito. Some luggage is heavy.

barua Barua nyingine ni nzito. Some letters are heavy.

jembe Majembe mengine ni mazito. Some hoes are heavy.

meza jiko kiti kitabu

3.

A. -po- as an equivalent for 'when.'

kusema Alikuwa akisema. He was speaking.
 Nilifika alipokuwa I arrived while he was speaking.
 akisema.

kusoma Alikuwa akisoma. He was reading.
 Nilifika alipokuwa I arrived when he was reading.
 akisoma.

kufanya Alikuwa akifanya kazi. He was working.
 Nilifika alipokuwa I arrived when he was working.
 akifanya kazi.

kula Alikuwa akila. He was eating.
 Nilifika alipokuwa akila. I arrived when he was eating.

B.

kurudi Bado hajarudi. He hasn't returned yet.
 Atakaporudi, When he returns I'll go with him.
 nitakwenda naye.

kumaliza	Bado hajamaliza kazi yake. Atakapomaliza kazi yake nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't finished his work yet. When he finishes his work I'll go with him.
kuingia	Bado hajaingia nyumbani. Atakapoingia nyumbani nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't entered the house yet. When he enters the house, I'll go with him.
kuondoka	Bado hajaondoka. Atakapoondoka, nitakwenda naye.	He hasn't left yet. When he leaves I'll go with him.
giza	Giza halijaingia. Giza litakapoingia, tutawasha taa.	It is not dark yet. When it gets dark, we will light the lamps.
teksi	Teksi haijafika. Teksi itakapofika, tutakwenda.	The taxi hasn't arrived. When the taxi arrives, we will go.
mvua	Mvua haijanyesha. Mvua itakaponyesha tutapanda mbegu.	It hasn't rained yet. When the rain falls, we will plant seeds.

Unit 82

1. Basic Dialogue. A trip to Tanga.

Sangai

Ninakusudia kusafiri Tanga kesho. I'm planning to make a trip to Tanga tomorrow.

Magese

nauli (N) fare

kiasi (KI sg. only) amount

Nauli ya kutoka hapa mpaka Tanga How much is the fare from here to ni kiasi gani? Tanga?

Sangai

Ni shilingi thelathini na mbili. It's 32 shillings.

Magese

Utakapofika Korogwe utashuka? Are you going to get off (to disembark) when you get to Korogwe?

Sangai

La. Nitakwenda moja kwa moja. No, I'm going to go straight on.

abiria (N-an.) passenger

~refu long, tall

mwendo (MI) journey

Kwa gari ni mwendo wa siku moja tu. By bus it is a trip of only one day.

Si mrefu. It's not long.

Magese

Vema. Ujaliwapo kufika nisalimie Good! If you are helped (i.e. by jamaa. God) to arrive, give my regards

to (your) family.

- - - - -

2.

A. Some sentences containing nijaliwapo.

kufika	Nijaliwapo kufika Tanga nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to arrive at Tanga, I will be happy.
kuhitimu	Nijaliwapo kuhitimu masomo nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to finish my education, I will be happy.
kupata	Nijaliwapo kupata mavuno mazuri nitakuwa na furaha.	If I am helped to get a good harvest, I will be happy.

B. -shuka katika-.

gari	Shukeni katika gari!	Get off the train!
motakaa	Shukeni katika motakaa!	Get out of the car!
baiskeli	Shukeni katika baiskeli!	Get off the bicycle!
mti	Shukeni katika mti!	Get down from the tree!

C. Things that can be refu.

mwendo	Mwendo ule ni mrefu.	That is a long journey.
mkate	Mkate ule ni mrefu.	That loaf of bread is long.
mtoto	Mtoto yule ni mrefu.	That child is tall.
mwanamke	Mwanamke yule ni mrefu.	That lady is tall.
jembe	Jembe lile ni refu.	That hoe is long.
gari la moshi	Gari la moshi lile ni refu.	That train is long.
ndizi	Ndizi zile ni ndefu.	Those bananas are long.

D. Sentences containing another form of -jalia.

kufika	Ujaliwe kufika Tanga.	May you be helped to reach Tanga.
kupata	Ujaliwe kupata mimea mizuri.	May you be helped to get good crops.
kuhitimu	Ujaliwe kuhitimu mtihani wako.	May you be helped to pass your examination.
kupona	Ujaliwe kupona homa yako.	May you be helped to recover from your fever.

3. A and B discuss a trip that one of them has taken recently, to see a friend of his get married.

Unit 83

1. Basic Dialogue. How much is the basket?

Hadija

kikapu (VI)

basket

Kikapu hiki kidogo ni bei gani?

How much is this little basket?

Mr. Patel

Shilingi mbili na senti hamsini.

Two shillings and fifty cents.

Hadija

-punguza

to make less

Nakitaka, lakini nipunguzie kidogo.

I want it, but reduce it a little
for me.

Mr. Patel

Ah! Hiyo ndiyo bei yake.

Ah! That is its price.

Hadija

Ndiyo, lakini nitakupa shilingi
moja tu.

Yes, but I'll give you just one
shilling.

Mr. Patel

Shilingi moja ni kidogo sana!

One shilling is very low.

Hadija

-dhuru

to harm

Haidhuru. Nitakupa shilingi
moja na senti kumi.

No matter. I'll give you 1.10.

(to be continued)

2. This entire series of exercises, involving the comparison of numbers, should be done orally with books closed. The exercises are printed chiefly as a guide to the tutor.

A. Which of the prices is greater - the first or the second?

a.	1s - 3s	shilingi moja	-	shilingi tatu	tatu
	2s - 3s	shilingi mbili	-	shilingi tatu	tatu
	3s - 6s	shilingi tatu	-	shilingi sita	sita
	6s - 3s	shilingi sita	-	shilingi tatu	sita
	4s - 6s	shilingi nne	-	shilingi sita	sita

f.	4s - 5s	k.	8s - 10s	p.	8s - 7s
	7s - 4s		7s - 5s		7s - 9s
	7s - 6s		6s - 4s		3s - 5s
	8s - 9s		9s - 10s		5s - 9s
	9s - 6s		10s - 11s		8s - 4s

3.

A. Of each set of three numbers, which is greatest?

a.	3-5-7	tatu - tano - saba	saba
	4-2-3	nne - mbili - tatu	nne
	6-7-5	sita - saba - tano	saba
	1-3-2	moja - tatu - mbili	tatu
	8-4-5	nane - nne - tano	nane

f. 3-6-5

9-8-7

4-8-3

2-4-6

7-6-5

k. 9-10-11

7-6-8

5-3-4

2-6-9

6-4-7

p. 4-3-5

8-9-7

6-9-7

8-4-6

3-5-1

Unit 84

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling on a price. (continued)

Patel

Ah! Siuzi. Ukitaka toa shilingi moja na senti ishirini na tano... Ah, I won't sell, but if you want to pay 1.25...

Hadija

ghali expensive
Ndiyo lakini naona ni ghali, bado. Yes, but it seems to me it is still high.

Patel

mwisho (MI) end
Utatoa kiasi gani, mwisho wako? What amount will you give, your last price?

Hadija

Nitakupa shilingi moja na senti I'll give you \$1.15.
kumi na tano.

Patel

rahisi cheap
Vema. Kwako tu. Lakini ni rahisi All right. Only for you. But it's very cheap.
sana.

Hadija

-shika to grasp, hold fast
Vema. Shika shilingi mbili na Fine. Take these two shillings and
nirudishie =/85 cts. give me back 85 cts.

2.

A. Practice in imitation, reading, and dictation.

5 cts.	45 cts.	85 cts.
10 cts.	50 cts.	90 cts.
15 cts.	55 cts.	95 cts.
20 cts.	60 cts.	18
25 cts.	65 cts.	1.10
30 cts.	70 cts.	1.25
35 cts.	75 cts.	1.30
40 cts.	80 cts.	1.50

B.

shs. 1.25	shs. 2.80	shs. 4.00
shs. 1.50	shs. 3.00	shs. 4.20
shs. 1.75	shs. 3.15	shs. 5.40
shs. 2.00	shs. 3.35	shs. 6.60
shs. 2.20	shs. 3.55	shs. 7.80
shs. 2.40	shs. 3.75	shs. 8.25
shs. 2.60	shs. 3.95	shs. 9.50

3.

In each part of these exercises, two prices are given, followed by a third. In most instances, the third is between the first and the second. Try to pick out the instances when it is not. In subsequent use of the exercise, listen to the first two prices and try to quote a middle price.

A. Higher, lower, split the difference:

shs. 10	shs. 8	shs. 9
9	7	8
8	6	7
7	5	6
6	4	9
5	3	4
4	2	3

shs. 3	shs. 1	shs. 0.20
10	7	8.50
8	5	6.50
6	3	4.50
4	1	2.50
5	2	6
7	4	5.50
2	1	1.50
1.50	0.50	1.00

B. Lower, higher, split the difference:

sh. 1.00	shs. 3	shs. 2
shs. 4.00	8	6
6.00	10	8
0.10 cts.	0.30 cts.	0.20 cts.
0.20 cts.	0.30 cts.	0.25 cts.
0.50 cts.	1.00	1.75
1.00	2.00	1.50

4.

Simulate bargaining involving several exchanges of quoted prices, for:

	(usual selling price)
a large basket	shs. 3.00
a pair of trousers	shs. 45.00
3 yards of cloth	shs. 15.00
a pair of shoes	shs. 45.00
a shirt	shs. 24.00
a loaf of bread	0.60 cts.

Unit 85

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling on a price (concluded).

Patel

-vunja

to break

Nasikitika, sina senti za kuvunja. I'm sorry, I can't change (it).

Hadija

Tutafanya nini sasa?

What shall we do now?

Ikiwa huwezi kuvunja utaniuziaje

Inasmuch as you can't change (it),

kile kikapu kikubwa?

how (much) will you sell me that

big basket (for)?

Patel

Kwako wewe, toa hizo shilingi mbili. For you, pay those two shillings.

Hadije

haya

o.k.

Haya, bwana. Nitatoa hizo shilingi

O.K. (sir) I'll give the two

mbili. Lakini kesho nikija tena,

shillings. But if I come again

lázima unipunguzie zaidi.

tomorrow, you've got to reduce

(your prices) for me more.

Patel

mnunuzi (WA)

customer

bila shaka

undoubtedly

Bila shaka! Umekuwa mnunuzi

No doubt! You've become my great

wangu mkubwa. Nitakuuzia kwa

customer. I'll sell to you at a

bei nafuu.

reasonable price.

2.

Try to give the sum of the first two numbers before it is given on the tape.

A.

$2 + 1 = 3$	Mbili na moja ni	tatu
$3 + 1 = 4$	Tatu na moja ni	nne
$4 + 1 = 5$	Nne na moja ni	tano
$5 + 1 = 6$	Tano na moja ni	sita
$6 + 1 = 7$	Sita na moja ni	saba
$7 + 1 = 8$	Saba na moja ni	nane
$8 + 1 = 9$	Nane na moja ni	tisa
$9 + 1 = 10$	Tisa na moja ni	kumi
$10 + 11 = 11$	Kumi na moja ni	kumi na moja

$2 + 2 = 4$	$6 + 2 = 8$	$2 + 3 = 5$
$3 + 2 = 5$	$8 + 2 = 10$	$4 + 3 = 7$
$5 + 2 = 7$	$9 + 2 = 11$	$6 + 3 = 9$
		$9 + 3 = 12$

3.

A.

$20 + 10 = 30$	Ishirini na kumi ni	thelathini
$30 + 10 = 40$	Thelathini na kumi ni	arobaini
$40 + 10 = 50$	Arobaini na kumi ni	hamsini
$50 + 10 = 60$	Hamsini na kumi ni	sitini
$60 + 10 = 70$	Sitini na kumi ni	sabini
$70 + 10 = 80$	Sabini na kumi ni	themanini
$80 + 10 = 90$	Themanini na kumi ni	tisini
$90 + 10 = 100$	Tisini na kumi ni	mia

B.

$15 + 5 = 20$

Kumi na tano,
na tano ni

ishirini

$25 + 5 = 30$

Ishirini na tano,
na tano ni

thelathini

$35 + 5 = 40$

$45 + 5 = 50$

$55 + 5 = 60$

$65 + 5 = 70$

$75 + 5 = 80$

$85 + 5 = 90$

$95 + 5 = 100$

C.

$15 + 15 = 30$

Kumi na tano na kumi na tano ni

thelathini

$25 + 15 = 40$

Ishirini na tano na kumi na tano ni arobaini

$45 + 15 = 60$

$75 + 15 = 90$

$15 + 25 = 40$

$25 + 25 = 50$

$50 + 25 = 75$

$75 + 25 = 100$

D.

$3 + 2 = 5$

Tatu na mbili ni

tano

$50 + 10 = 60$

Hamsini na kumi ni

sitini

$25 + 5 = 30$

Ishirini na tano,
na tano ni

thelathini

$7 + 2 = 9$

Saba na mbili ni

tisa

$75 + 15 = 90$

Sabini na tano na
kumi na tano ni

tisini

$25 + 15 = 40$

Ishirini na tano
na kumi na tano ni

arobaini

$35 + 2 = 37$

Thelathini na tano
na mbili ni

thelathini na saba

$8 + 2 = 10$

$5 + 2 = 7$

$90 + 10 = 100$

$4 + 2 = 6$

$25 + 25 = 50$

$65 + 15 = 80$

$25 + 50 = 75$

$85 + 5 = 90$

Unit 86

1. Basic Dialogue. Buying trousers.

Hamisi

suruali (N)

a pair of trousers

Nataka kununua suruali.

I want to buy a pair of trousers.

Patel

kipande (VI)

a piece

Suruali ndefu au suruali kipande?

Long trousers, or short?

Hamisi

Suruali ndefu.

Long (trousers).

Patel

rangi (N)

color

Wataka suruali ya rangi gani?

What color trousers do you want?

Hamisi

~eupe

white

Nyeupe.

White ones.

Patel

kipimo (VI)

measurement

Na vipimo vyako?

And your measurements?

Hamisi

urefu (U)

length

kiuno (VI)

waist

Kiuno inchi thelathini na mbili,
na urefu thelathini na nne.

Waist 32 inches, and length 34.

Patel

-enea

to fit

Hii inakuenea.

These fit your measurements.

Hamisi

Asante.

Thanks.

- - - - -

2.

Which is greater?

A.

32 - 34	thelathini na mbili	thelathini na nne
44 - 42	arobaini na nne	arobaini na mbili
32 - 44	thelathini na mbili	arobaini na nne
42 - 34	arobaini na mbili	thelathini na nne
54 - 42	hamisini na nne	arobaini na mbili

35 - 33 73 - 65 65 - 73 84 - 92 77 - 66

B.

21 - 31	ishirini na moja	thelathini na moja			
45 - 53	arobaini na tano	hamisini na tatu			
27 - 18	81 - 41	55 - 65	46 - 43	87 - 86	63 - 65
26 - 27	97 - 96				

3.

A.

Try to give the sum before it is given on the tape.

21 + 3 = 24

Ishirini na moja, na tatu ni ishirini na nne.

31 + 3 = 34 Thelathini na moja, na tatu ni thelathini na nne.

61 + 3 = 64 Sitini na moja, na tatu ni sitini na nne.

91 + 3 = 94 Tisini na moja, na tatu ni tisini na nne.

94 + 3 = 97 76 + 3 = 79 52 + 3 = 55 47 + 3 = 50

35 + 3 = 38

B.

38 + 3 = 41 Thelathini na nane, na tatu ni arobaini na moja

18 + 3 = 21 Kumi na nane, na tatu ni ishirini na moja

19 + 3 = 22 17 + 3 = 20 58 + 3 = 61 57 + 3 = 60

72 + 3 = 75 89 + 3 = 92 99 + 3 = 102 97 + 3 = 100

Unit 87

1. Basic Dialogue. Settling the price of the trousers.

Hamisi

Bei yake ni pesa (or: shilingi) What is the price (of it)?
ngapi, Bwana?

Patel

Bei yake ni sh. 7/- na senti 75. It's 7.75.

Hamisi

Oh! Hii ni ghali sana! Oh! That is very high!

Patel

maarufu	famous
Si ghali sana. Hiyo ni suruali maarufu.	It's not very expensive those are [a] well known [brand of] trousers.
Ni ngumu sana.	They're very tough.
kitambaa (VI)	cloth, material
kisasa (Sg. VI)	modern style
Kitambaa chake ni cha kisasa.	The material (of it) is modern.

Hamisi

Hapana! Hii ni suruali rahisi tu. No! These are just cheap trousers!
-raruka to get torn
-upesini quickly
Itararuka upesi. They'll get torn quickly.

Patel

Lete sh. 6/- basi. Just pay six shillings.

Hamisi

Hiyo afadhali. Chukua sh. 6/-.

That's more like it. Here's the six shillings.

2.

A. Concords with the demonstrative stem le.

masomo	Yale masomo ni rahisi sana.	Those lessons are very easy.
somo	Lile somo ni rahisi sana.	That lesson is very easy.
kazi	Ile kazi ni rahisi sana.	That work is very easy.
nauli	Ile nauli ni rahisi sana.	That fare is very cheap.
kitabu	Kile kitabu ni rahisi sana.	That book is very cheap.
nguo	Ile nguo ni rahisi sana.	That dress is very cheap.
machungwa		
	Yale machungwa ni rahisi sana.	Those oranges are very cheap.
bei	Ile bei ni rahisi sana.	That price is very cheap.
lugha	Ile lugha ni rahisi sana.	That language is very easy.

B. Concords with the demonstrative h_o.

bei	Bei hiyo ni ghali sana.	That price is very expensive.
nauli	Nauli hiyo ni ghali sana.	That fare is very expensive.
kitabu	Kitabu hicho ni ghali sana.	That book is very expensive.
nguo	Nguo hiyo ni ghali sana.	That dress is very expensive.

C. Concords with gumu.

kitambaa	Kitambaa chake ni kigumu sana.	Her handkerchief is very heavy material.
kichwa	Kichwa chake ni kigumu sana.	His head is very hard.
kitabu	Kitabu chake ni kigumu sana.	His book is very difficult.

kazi	Kazi yake ni ngumu sana.	His work is very hard.
mtihani	Mtihani wake ni mgumu sana.	His examination is very hard.
moyo	Moyo wake ni mgumu sana.	His heart is very hard.
lugha	Lugha yake ni ngumu sana.	His language is very hard.

D. ConCORDS with ~pya.

suruali	Suruali yake mpya ilikuwa imeraruka.	His new trousers were torn.
nguo	Nguo yake mpya ilikuwa imeraruka.	Her new dress was torn.
kitambaa	Kitambaa chake kipya kilikuwa kimeraruka.	His new handkerchief was torn.
vitambaa	Vitambaa vyake vipya vilikuwa vimeraruka.	His new handkerchiefs were torn.
mbeleko	Mbeleko yake mpya ilikuwa imeraruka.	Her new mbeleko was torn.
shati	Shati lake jipya lilikuwa limeraruka.	His new shirt was torn.

3.

A. -raruka vs. -rarua.

suruali	Suruali yangu imeraruka. Nani ameirarua?	My trousers are torn. Who has torn them?
nguo	Nguo yangu imeraruka. Nani ameirarua?	My dress is torn. Who has torn it?
kitambaa	Kitambaa changu kimeraruka. Nani amekirarua?	My handkerchief is torn. Who has torn it?
shati	Shati langu limeraruka. Nani amelirarua?	My shirt is torn. Who has torn it?

B. -raruka vs. -raruliwa.

suruali	Suruali yangu imeraruka. Imeraruliwa na nani?	My trousers are torn. By whom?
nguo	Nguo yangu imeraruka. Imeraruliwa na nani?	My dress is torn. By whom was it torn?
mbeleko	Mbeleko yangu imeraruka. Imeraruliwa na nani?	My 'mbeleko' is torn. By whom?
shati	Shati langu limeraruka. Limeraruliwa na nani?	My shirt is torn. By whom?
kitambaa	Kitambaa changu kimeraruka. Kimeraruliwa na nani?	My handkerchief is torn. By whom?

4.

A goes to a shop to buy a pair of trousers. He ends by buying two, but at a reduced price.

C buys a table and four chairs, starting with the table and two chairs.

Unit 88

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is the consulate?

Maina

balozi (MA pers)

consul

Unajua ofisi ya Balozi wa Amerika?

Do you know the American Consulate?

Aramian

Ndiyo, iko karibu na Post Office.

Yes, it's near the post office.

Maina

Nitawezaje kufika huko?

How will I be able to get there?

Aramian

njia panda (N)

intersection (N)

Fuata njia hii mpaka penye njia
panda.Follow this road to where there is
an intersection.

mkono wa kulia

right hand

Halafu fuata barabara ya mkono wa
kulia.

Then follow the road on the right.

mtaa (MI)

street

mkono wa kushoto

left hand

Ufikapo penye njia panda nyingine,
fuata mtaa wa Suleman, mkono wa
kushoto, na nenda moja kwa moja.When you get to the next intersection,
follow Suleman Street, on the left,
and go straight ahead.

-ita

to call

Baadaye utacua hoteli inaitwa

Then you will see a hotel called

'Cosy Café.'

'Cosy Cafe.'

(to be continued)

2.

A. Talking about the map.

Using maps, practice pointing out places and giving their names, using the following frames:

Sehemu hii ya	Afrika Tanganyika Kenya Uganda	inaitwa _____
---------------	---	---------------

Njia	hii	(i)naitwa _____
Jimbo	hili	
Mji	huu	

Sehemu hii ya _____ inaitwaje?

Use this as an occasion to become familiar with the geography of East Africa.

Unit 89

1. Basic Dialogue. Where is the consulate? (concluded)

Aramian

Hapo mbele yako pana hoteli ya
'Cosy Café.'

Iipite.

Mbele kuna barabara ya Acacia.

Nenda moja kwa moja tu.

ñje (N)

Na mara utaona jumba kubwa mkono
wa kulia, ñje pameandikwa 'Cable
and Wireless.'

orofa (N)

Orofa ya pili ndio ofisi ya Balozi
wa Amerika.

There in front of you is the 'Cosy
Cafe Hotel.'

Go past it.

Ahead there is Acacia Avenue.

Just go straight ahead.

outside

And immediately after, you will see
a big building on the right, out-
side (of which) is written 'Cable
and Wireless.'

story

The third floor, that is the American
Consulate.

2.

A. Talking about a street map.

Practice giving directions from a number of points in Dar es Salaam to various other points, using a simplified map. Some of the words and phrases that will be most useful are:

utafika kwenye _____

moja kwa moja _____

mbele ya _____

karibu na _____

mkono wa kulia/kushoto _____

utaona _____

Unit 90

1. Basic Dialogue. Clothes for the laundryman.

Magese

Unabeba nguo, wazipeleka wapi?

You are carrying clothes on your back.

Where are you taking them?

Sangai

~chafu

dirty

dobi (MA pers)

laundryman

Hizi nguo chafu, nazipeleka kwa
dobi.

These dirty clothes, I'm taking them
to the laundryman.

Magese

Dobi yupi?

Which laundryman?

Sangai

ng'ambo (N)

on the other side

Yule aliye na duka kule ng'ambo.

That one who has the shop there on
the other side.

Magese

júmla

sum

Unazo ngapi kwa júmla?

How many do you have altogether?

Sangai

koti (MA)

coat

Zote ni suruali tatu na makoti
mawili.

Altogether there are three pairs of
trousers and two coats.

Magese

Atakutoza pesa ngapi?

How much will he make you pay?

Sangai

thumni (N)

50 ct. piece

Kama shilingi mbili na thumni.

About 2.50.

Notes

A. Abstract nouns of the U class.

~chache	few
uchache	paucity
safi	clean
usafi	cleanliness

A large number of abstract nouns are members of the u class. Frequently, except for the u prefix, they are identical in form with adjective stems.

2.

A. ng'ambo; concords with -ko.

duka	Duka lake liko ng'ambo ya mji.	His shop is on the other side of town.
soko	Soko liko ng'ambo ya mji.	The market is on the other side of town.
hoteli	Hoteli iko ng'ambo ya mji.	The hotel is on the other side of town.
kanisa	Kanisa liko ng'ambo ya mji.	The church is on the other side of town.
shule	Shule iko ng'ambo ya mji.	The school is on the other side of town.

shamba	Shamba lake liko ng'ambo ya mji.	His plantation is on the other side of town.
maduka	Maduka yake yako ng'ambo ya mji.	His shops are on the other side of town.
mashamba	Mashamba yake yako ng'ambo ya mji.	His plantations are on the other side of town.

B. Concords with ngapi; U-class singulars with plurals in the N-class.

nguo	Unazo nguo ngapi kwa jumla?	How many clothes do you have altogether?
jembe	Unayo majembe mangapi kwa jumla?	How many hoes do you have altogether?
kidole	Unavyo vidole vingapi kwa jumla?	How many fingers do you have altogether?
mzigo	Unayo mizigo mingapi kwa jumla?	How many loads do you have altogether?
ngoma	Unazo ngoma ngapi kwa jumla?	How many drums do you have altogether?
uma	Unazo nyuma ngapi kwa jumla?	How many forks do you have altogether?
ubao	Unazo mbao ngapi kwa jumla?	How many boards do you have altogether?
ukurasa	Unazo kurasa ngapi kwa jumla?	How many pages do you have altogether?

C. Kiasi gani?

wino	Una wino kiasi gani?	How much ink do you have?	
maji	Una maji kiasi gani?	How much water do you have?	
pombe	chumvi	michele	wali

3. Adjective vs. U-class (abstract) noun.

~zuri	Ule <i>ñji</i> ni <i>ñzuri</i> . Walituambia juu ya uzuri wa <i>ñji</i> .	That city is beautiful. They told us about the beauty of the city.
~chache	Walimu ni wachache <i>ñchini</i> <i>mwetu</i> . Walituambia juu ya uchache wa walimu.	Teachers are few in our country. They told us about the scarcity of teachers.
~refu	Gari la moshi lilikuwa refu. Walituambia juu ya urefu wa gari la moshi.	The train is long. They told us about the length of the train.
~eupe	Shuka zote zilikuwa nyeupe sana. Walituambia juu ya weupe wa shuka.	All the sheets were very white. They told us about the whiteness of the sheets.
~ingi	Wanafunzi wa shule ni wengi sana. Walituambia juu ya wingi wa wanafunzi.	The school pupils were very many. They told us about the [large] number of pupils.
safi	Jikoni <i>mwa</i> hoteli ni safi sana. Walituambia juu ya usafi wa jikoni.	The inside of the hotel kitchen is very clean. They told us about the cleanness of the inside of the kitchen.
~gumu	Masomo yao ni magumu sana. Walituambia juu ya ugumu wa masomo.	Their lessons are very difficult. They told us about the difficulty of the lessons.
hodari	Watoto wake ni hodari sana. Walituambia juu ya uhodari wa watoto.	His children are very clever. They told us about the cleverness of the children.

Conversation Starters

1. A asks B to go pick up his laundry for him, B asks directions for finding the place.

Reading Selection IV

Nama ya Kulima

Katika wilaya yetu Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima kwa kuwaonyesha jinsi ya kupata mavuno mengi. Wakulima wengi wanayo mashamba yaliyotawanyika mahali mbali mbali. Hawa ndio wanaoonyeshwa vile wawezavyo kuyaunganisha mashamba yao.

Katika Idara ya Ukulima wako watu walio hodari kwa ukulima ambao wanasinamia mipango hii. Watu hawa huenda mashambani pamoja na wakulima na kufanya kazi kwa mikono yao. Hii huwasaidia wenyeji kuona na kujizoeza kulima vizuri.

Shamba hugawanywa katika sehemu tatu; ya kwanza, ni kiwanja cha nyumba; ya pili ni boma la ng'ombe, kuku, mbuzi, nguruwe na kadhalika; na ya tatu ni ya kupanda mimea.

Hii sehemu ya tatu, yaani ya mimea, hugawanywa katika visehemu vidogo vingi ambavyo mimea fulani hupandwa na kubadilishwa kila mwaka.

Mimea ikibadilishwa, haichoshi udongo, na hivi mkulima aweza kulima shamba lake kila mwaka. Hii ndiyo faida ya kupanda mimea tofauti kila mara baada ya kuvuna.

QuestionsAnswers

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ni wapi Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima? | Serikali imeanza kuwasaidia wakulima katika wilaya yetu. |
| 2. Serikali imeanza kuwasaidiaje? | Kwa kuwaonyesha jinsi ya kulima vizuri. |
| 3. Wenyeji wakulima vizuri hupata faida gani? | Hupata mavuno mengi. |
| 4. Mashamba ya wakulima wengi yako pamoja? | Hapana, yametawanyika mahali mbali mbali. |
| 5. Mashamba yatafanywaje? | Mashamba yataunganishwa. |

6. Kuna wakulima hodari katika Idara ya Afya?
Hapana. Watu hodari kwa kulima wako katika Idara ya Ukulima.
7. Kazi yao ni nini?
Kusimamia mipango hii.
8. Wasimamizi hawa hufanya kazi shambani?
Ndiyo, wanafanya kazi mashambani kwa mikono.
9. Hii ni faida gani?
Wenyiji huona na kuzoea kulima vizuri.
10. Shamba hugawanywa katika sehemu ngapi?
Tatu.
11. Sehemu ya kwanza ni ya nini?
Sehemu ya kwanza ni kiwanja cha nyumba.
12. Na ya pili?
Sehemu ya pili ni boma ya ng'ombe, kuku, mbuzi na kadhalika.
13. Na ya tatu je?
Sehemu ya tatu ni ya kulima.
14. Kuna faida katika kubadili mimea?
Ndiyo. Udongo hauchoki.
15. Ukiwa mkulima utabadili mimea yako?
Ndiyo, nikiwa mkulima nitabadili mimea yangu.

wilaya (N)	district, province
jinsi (N)	way, method
-tawanya	to scatter
-simamia	to stand by, to oversee
-zoea	to become familiar with
-gawanya	to divide up, distribute
kiwanja (VI)	a plot of ground
kuku (N-anim)	chicken
mbuzi (N-anim)	goat
kadhalika	likewise, similarly
kisehemu (VI)	a small section
fulani	such-and-such
-badili	to change
-chosha	to make tired
faida (N)	profit, advantage
tofauti (N)	difference, discrepancy

Unit 91

1. Basic Dialogue. Doing the wash.

Maina

-fua

to launder

Nani afuaye nguo zako?

Who washes your clothes?

Juma

Mama hunisaidia.

Mother helps me.

Maina

Yeye hufua kwa mkono au kwa mashine?

Does she wash [them] by hand or by
machine?Juma

sabuni (N)

soap

(ya) uvuguvugu (U)

lukewarm

Anatumia mikono, sabuni na maji ya

She does them by hand ('uses her

uvuguvugu.

hands') [with] soap, and lukewarm
water.Maina

-ondoa

to get rid of

Unafikiri mikono huondoa uchafu

Do you think that [washing by] hand(s)

kweli?

really gets rid of the dirt?

Juma

Sana!

Definitely!

Maina

wanga (U)

starch

Lakini anatia wanga lini?

But when does she pour in the starch?

Juma

-loweka

to wet something

Kwa kawaida, nguo ikiwa imelowekwa.

Ordinarily, when the clothes are wet.

NotesA. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

Nani afuaye nguo?

Who washes the clothes?

Nini kiondoshacho uchafu?

What gets the dirt off?

The relative counterparts of the indicative forms of the a-tense are formed as follows:

<u>Subj. pref.</u>	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Rel. affix</u>	
ni	jua	ye	'I who know'
u	jua	ye	'you (sg.) who know'
a	jua	ye	'he who knows'
wa	jua	o	'they who know'
li	ondosha	lo	'(that) which removes'

etc.

atumiaye...

he who uses...

atumialo...

which he uses (referring to something in sg. MA class).

As in other relative forms, the relative affix may refer to and agree with the subject or the object of the verb.

2.

A. Relative counterparts of the a-tense.

kufua	Nani afuaye nguo zako?	Who washes your clothes?
kupiga pasi	Nani apigaye pasi nguo zako?	Who irons your clothes?
kununua	Nani amunuaye nguo zako?	Who buys your clothes?

B.

kulima	(Watu) walimao shamba hili wako wapi?	Where are the people who cultivate this farm?
kuhudhuria	(Watu) wahudhuriao masomo haya wako wapi?	Where are the people who attend these lessons?
kutaka	(Watu) watakao kwenda wako wapi?	Where are the people who want to go?
kujua	(Watu) wajuao Kiswahili wako wapi?	Where are the people who know Swahili?
kufua	(Watu) wafuao nguo wako wapi?	Where are the people who wash clothes?

C. -ondoa.

uchafu	Tutaondoa je uchafu katika nguo hizi?	How shall we remove the dirt from these clothes?
wino	Tutaondoa je wino katika nguo hizi?	How shall we remove the ink from these clothes?
damu	sabuni wanga	

D. -ondoka.

uchafu	Uchafu umeondoka katika nguo sasa.	The dirt is off the clothes now.
wino	Wino umeondoka katika nguo sasa.	The ink is off the clothes now.

damu sabuni wanga

3.

A. Indicative vs. relative (relative subject).

kufua	Nguo hizi zinafuliwa kila wiki.	These clothes are washed every week.
	Nani anazifua?	Who washes them?
kupalilia	Shamba hili linapaliliwa mara kwa mara.	This farm is weeded often.
	Nani analipalilia?	Who weeds it?
kuzuia	Unanizulia nisipumzike.	You prevent me from resting.
	Nani anakuzuia?	Who prevents you?

B. Indicative vs. relative (relative object).

sabuni	Tunatumia sabuni.	We use soap.
	Sabuni gani inayotumia?	What kind of soap do you use?
mafuta	Tuna mafuta.	We use oil.
	Mafuta gani inayotumia?	What kind of oil do you use?
kalamu	Tuna kalamu.	We use pens.
	Kalamu gani inayotumia?	What kind of pens do you use?
jembe	Tuna jembe.	We use a hoe.
	Jembe gani inalotumia?	What kind of hoe do you use?
wanga	Tuna wanga.	We use starch.
	Wanga gani inaotumia?	What kind of starch do you use?
wino	Tuna wino.	We use ink.
	Wino gani inaotumia?	What kind of ink do you use?

Unit 92

1. Basic Dialogue. A good-looking uniform.

Maina

mwenzi (WA)

companion

(mwenzangu)

(mwenzi wangu)

-ng'aa

to shine

Mwenzangu, nguo zako zang'aa.

Your clothes are very bright my
friend.Juma

kabla ya

before

pasi (N)

iron (for pressing)

Ndiyo. Zilitiwa wanga kabla ya

Yes, they were starched before being
ironed.

kupigwa pasi.

moto (MI)

fire

Hata pasi yenyewe ilikuwa ya moto
kweli.Besides, the iron itself was really
hot.Maina

-kauka

to get dry

Ndiyo, nguo zikisha kauka vizuri

Yes, when clothes have dried to the
right point, they iron very well.

sapigika pasi vizuri.

kifungo (VI)

button

Na hivi vifungo vyang'aa. Vimetiwa
wanga pia?And these buttons shine. Have they
also been starched?

Juma

-sugua

to polish

Hapana, lakini vilisuguliwa na
'Brasso'.

No, but they've been polished with
'Brasso'.

2.

A. ~a moto.

kahawa Kahawa hii ni ya moto.

This coffee is hot.

chai nyama

uji Uji huu ni wa moto.

This porridge is hot.

wali

B. -po- in first verb, followed by verb phrase with alikuwa haja-.

kumalisa Hasani alipofika, Ali
alikuwa hajamalisa kazi
yake.

When Hasani arrived, Ali had
not finished his work.

kwanza Hasani alipofika, Ali
alikuwa hajaansa kazi
yake.

When Hasani arrived, Ali had
not started his work.

kusema Hasani alipofika, Ali
alikuwa hajasema.

When Hasani arrived, Ali had
not spoken.

kufunga Hasani alipofika, Ali
alikuwa hajafunga
mlango.

When Hasani arrived, Ali had
not closed the door.

3.

A. Concord: Subject prefix in the first sentence, with object prefix
in the second.

nguo Nguo hisi zimekauka.
(pl.) Usisiloweke.

These clothes are dry.
Don't wet them.

shati	Shati hili limekauka. Usililoweke.	This shirt is dry. Don't wet it.
mashati	Mashati haya yamekauka. Usiyaloweke.	These shirts are dry. Don't wet them.
suruali (sg.)	Suruali hii imekauka. Usililoweke.	This pair of trousers is dry. Don't wet it.
suruali (pl.)	Suruali hizi zimekauka. Usiziloweke.	These pairs of trousers are dry. Don't wet them.
koti	Koti hili limekauka. Usililoweke.	This coat is dry. Don't wet it.
makoti	Makoti haya yamekauka. Usiyaloweke.	These coats are dry. Don't wet them.
B. <u>-ja-</u> negative verb <u>vs.</u> affirmative subjunctive verb		
kukauka	Nguo hizi hazijakauka. Yafaa zikaushwe.	These clothes have not gotten dry. They ought to be dried.
kupigwa	Nguo hizi hazijapigwa pasi. Yafaa zipigwe pasi.	These clothes have not been ironed. They ought to be ironed.
kutiwa wanga	Nguo hizi hazijatiwa wanga. Yafaa zitiwe wanga.	These clothes have not been starched. They ought to be starched.
kufuliwa	Nguo hizi hazijafuliwa. Yafaa zifuliwe.	These clothes have not been washed. They ought to be washed.

Conversation Starters

1. A is a laundryman. B discusses with him the way he wants his shirts done. He doesn't want his drip-dry shirts ironed.
2. B checks through the returned laundry with A and finds some articles missing.

Unit 93

1. Basic Dialogue. Making a bed.

Hadija

-tandika to spread

mgeni (WA) guest

kitanda (VI) bed

Asha, mtandikie mgeni kitanda. Asha make the bed for [our] guest.

Asha

shuka sheet

Uliweka blanketi na shuka wapi? Where did you put the blankets and sheets?

Hadija

ndani ya inside of

Zimo ndani ya sanduku langu. They're inside my cabinet.

Asha

godoro (MA) mattress

Sioni godoro. I can't find the mattress for the bed.

Hadija

-uliza to ask

Mulize Juma akuonyeshe liliko. Ask Juma to show you where it is.

Asha

Juma, tafadhali niletee godoro upesi. Juma, please bring me the mattress quickly.

foronya (N)

pillowcase

Bado foronya tu. Asante, Juma.

And now just the pillowcase. Thank
you, Juma.Notes

A. A verb with two objects.

Mtandikie mgeni kitanda.

Make the bed for the guest.

This verb has two objects. The first of them is translated as what we would call an 'indirect object'.

B. -uliza plus subjunctive.

Mwulize akusaidie.

Ask him to help you.

The verb -uliza may be followed by subjunctive forms, with the meaning 'to ask someone to do something'.

C. -li- as a verb stem.

Atakuonyesha liliko.

He will show you where it (the
mattress) is.

In the word liliko, the first li- is the subject prefix, the second -li- is the stem usually translated 'be', and ko is a suffix with the concord of the ku- class.

2.

A. Number agreement.

mgeni Mtandikie mgeni kitanda.

Make the bed for the guest.

mwalimu baba

wageni Watandikie wageni vitanda.

Make the beds for the guests.

waalimu

B. -onyesha plus a clause; concord: subject noun and -liko.godoro Juma atakuonyesha godoro
liliko.Juma will show you where the
mattress is.

kitanda	Juma atakuonyesha kitanda kiliko.	Juma will show you where the bed is.
shuka	Juma atakuonyesha shuka iliko.	Juma will show you where the bedsheet is.
mito	Juma atakuonyesha mito uliko.	Juma will show you where the pillow is.
mito	Juma atakuonyesha mito iliko.	Juma will show you where the pillows are.
blanketi	Juma atakuonyesha blanketi iliko.	Juma will show you where the blanket is.

C. Concord: noun subject and locative stem -mo.

↓	Vitanda vimo ndani ya nyumba.	The beds are in the house.
shuka	Shuka zimo ndani ya nyumba.	The sheets are in the house.
sanduku	Shuka zimo ndani ya sanduku.	The sheets are in the box.
mito	Mito imo ndani ya sanduku.	The pillows are in the box.
mito	Mito umo ndani ya sanduku.	The pillow is in the box.
shati	Shati limo ndani ya sanduku.	The shirt is in the box.
mashati	Mashati yamo ndani ya sanduku.	The shirts are in the box.

3.

A. Imperative with object prefix vs. subjunctive with object prefix.

kusaidia	Tafadhali, nisaidie. Mwombe Juma akusaidie.	Please, help me. Ask Juma to help you.
kupiga pasi	Tafadhali, zipige pasi suruali hizi. Mwombe Juma azipige pasi.	Please, iron these trousers. Ask Juma to iron them.
kupalilia	Nenda ukapalilie mahindi. Mwombe Juma aende akapalilie mahindi.	Go to weed the maize. Ask Juma to go to weed the maize.

kutunza	Kaa nyumbani uwatunze watoto. Mwombe Juma akae nyumbani awatunze.	Stay at home and look after the children. Ask Juma to stay and look after them.
---------	--	--

B. A-tense: indicative vs. relative.

kutaka	Watoto wataka chakula gani? Nitawauliza chakula watakacho.	What kind of food do the children want? I will ask them the kind of food they want.
kufanya	Watoto wanafanya nini? Nitawauliza kazi wafanyayo.	What are the children doing? I will ask them (what) [work] they are doing.
kusema	Watoto wanasema nini? Nitawauliza wasemalo. (cf. <u>jambo</u> (MA) 'matter')	What are the children saying? I will ask them what they are saying.
kula	Watoto wanakula nini? Nitawauliza vyakula walavyo.	What are the children eating? I will ask them (the kinds of food) they are eating.
kusoma	Watoto wanasoma vitabu gani? Nitawauliza vitabu wasomavyo.	What books are the children reading? I will ask them the type of books they are reading.
kupumzika	Kwa nini watoto wanapumzika? Nitawauliza sababu wapumzikayo.	Why are the children resting? I will ask them the reason for their resting.
kucheza	Kwa nini wanacheza? Nitawauliza sababu gani wanacheza.	Why are they playing? I will ask them why they are playing.

Unit 94

1. Basic Dialogue. The mosquito net.

Maina

Hapa katika jimbo hili pana mibu
wengi sana.

Here in this province there are very
many mosquitoes.

chandalua (VI)

mosquito net

(or: chandarua)

Hivi yatulazimu kuwa na chandalua.

Thus it's necessary for us to have a
mosquito net.

Butler

Mnabadili nguo za kitanda mara
ngapi kwa wiki?

How many times a week do you change
the bed linens?

Maina

Mama huzibadili kila Ijumaa.

Mother changes them every Friday.

Butler

usingizi (U)

sleep

-sumbua

to annoy, tease, trouble

Mkiwa usingizini, hawa mibu
wawasumbueni?

When you are asleep, do the mosquitoes
bother you?

Maina

kelele (N)

noise

Wapiga kelele sana usiku.

They make a lot of noise at night.

Butler

Nasikia kuwa mibu wa hapa waleta
malaria?

I hear that the mosquitoes (of) here
carry malaria.

Maina

Ndiyo, bwana, twasumbuliwa sana nao. Yes, indeed. We are bothered a lot
by them.

Notes

A. Pa as a subject prefix.

Note the subject prefix pa- agreeing with the word hapa.

B.

The use of the na tense (anabadili) followed in the next sentence by the hu tense raises questions about the adequacy with which the published rules concerning these tenses reflect actual usage.

2.

A. Various objects used with -badili.

kitanda	Siwezi kubadili nguo za kitanda sasa.	I can't change the bed linen now.
nguo	Siwezi kubadili nguo zangu sasa.	I can't change my clothes now.
shilingi tano	Siwezi kuvunja shilingi tano sasa.	I can't change five shillings now.
meza	Siwezi kubadili kitambaa cha meza sasa.	I can't change the tablecloth now.

B. Various verbs used with mbu as subject.

kusumbua	Mbu husumbua watu.	Mosquitoes bother people.
kuuma	Mbu huuma watu.	Mosquitoes bite people.
kudhuru	Mbu hudhuru watu.	Mosquitoes harm people.
kuletea	Mbu huwaletaa watu malaria.	Mosquitoes bring malaria to people.

3.

A. Various tenses in reported speech.

kuumia	Nilisikia kuwa uliumia mkono wako.	I heard that your hand was hurt.
	Ndiyo. Niliumia juzi.	Yes. I hurt it the day before yesterday.
kujiumiza	Nilisikia kuwa ulijiumiza mkono wako.	I heard that you hurt your hand.
	Ndiyo. Nilijiumiza juzi.	Yes. I hurt myself the day before yesterday.
kuchelewa	Nilisikia kuwa wewe huchelewa kila siku.	I heard that you are always late.
	Ndiyo. Nilichelewa juzi.	Yes. I was late the day before yesterday.
kupalilia	Nilisikia kuwa utaupalilia ua.	I heard that you were to weed the yard.
	Ndiyo. Niliupalilia juzi.	Yes. I weeded it the day before yesterday.

B. Kama in indirect questions.

kusafisha	Mama amesafisha vyombo? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amevisafisha.	Has mother washed the utensils? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has washed them.
kutandika	Mama ametandika kitanda? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekitandika.	Has mother made the bed? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has made it.
kuchemsha	Mama amechemsha maziwa? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama ameyachemsha.	Has mother boiled the milk? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has boiled it.

kuita	Mama amewaita watoto? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amewaita.	Has mother called the children? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has called them.
kulipa	Mama amelipa mafuta? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama ameyalipa.	Has mother paid for the oil? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has paid.
kutenge- neza	Mama ametengeneza chakula cha jioni? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekitengeneza.	Has mother prepared supper? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has prepared it.
kuenda	Mama amekwenda kununua sukari? Sijui. Nitamwuliza kama amekwenda.	Has my mother gone to buy some sugar? I don't know. I'll ask her if she has gone.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a housewife) discusses with B (a domestic servant) the way in which she wants the bedrooms to be maintained.
2. C and D discuss the furniture that will be needed for C's house in Tabora.

Unit 95

1. Basic Dialogue. A guest is coming for dinner!

Hamisi

-tembelea	to visit
mashuhuri	famous
Leo jioni tutatembelewa na mgeni mashuhuri.	This evening we're going to be visited by a famous guest.
Kwa hivyo Adija, tandika meza vizuri.	Therefore, Adija, set the table well.
Weka kitambaa na nyuma mbili upande wa kushoto.	Put the serviette and two forks on the left.
kijiko (VI)	spoon
Kulia kwa sahani, visu viwili na vijiko vitatu.	[To] the right of the plate, two knives and three spoons.
-sahau	to forget
Usisahau kuleta maji, bilauri, pilipili na chumvi.	Don't forget to bring water, glasses, salt and pepper.
Kwa kupakulia, tutahitaji vijiko vikubwa.	For dishing up the food, we will need some big spoons.

Hadija

Nikimaliza hayo yote nitakuita.	When I finish all those [things] I'll call you.
---------------------------------	---

Notes

1. Concord with a noun having the prefix ku.

In kulia kwa sahani, the prefix kw agrees with the ku of the preceding word.

2.

1. Location of one object relative to another.

kijiko-sahani	Kijiko kiko kulia kwa sahani.	The spoon is to the right of the plate.
sahani-kijiko	Sahani iko kushoto kwa kijiko.	The plate is to the left of the spoon.
kijiko-kisu	Kijiko kiko kulia kwa kisu.	The spoon is to the right of the knife.
kisu-kijiko	Kisu kiko kushoto kwa kijiko.	The knife is to the left of the spoon.
visu-vijiko	Visu viko kushoto kwa vijiko.	The knives are to the left of the spoons.
uma-sahani	Uma iko kushoto kwa sahani.	The fork is to the left of the plate.
sahani-uma	Sahani iko kulia kwa uma.	The plate is to the right of the fork.
nyuma-sahani	Nyuma ziko kushoto kwa sahani.	The forks are to the left of the plate.
kijiko cha supu-sahani	Kijiko cha supu kiko mbele ya sahani.	The soup spoon is in front of the plate.
bilauri-visu	Bilauri ya maji iko mbele ya visu.	The glass of water is in front of the knives.
kikombe-nyuma	Kikombe kiko kulia kwa nyuma.	The cup is on the right of the forks.

kitambaa-sahani Kitambaa kiko kushoto
kwa sahani.

The napkin is on the left of the
plate.

kikombe-kitambaa Kikombe kiko mbele ya
kitambaa.

The cup is in front of the
napkin.

3.

A. -sahau and -kumbuka.

wewe Usisahau pilipili.
Bila shaka nitakumbuka.

Don't forget the pepper.
I will certainly remember.

ninyi Msisahau pilipili.
Bila shaka tutakumbuka.

Don't forget the pepper.
We will certainly remember.

yeye Asisahau pilipili.
Bila shaka atakumbuka.

He must not forget the pepper.
He will certainly remember.

wao Wasisahau pilipili.
Bila shaka watakumbuka.

They must not forget the pepper.
They will certainly remember.

Unit 96

1. Basic Dialogue. At the table.

Hadija

Karibu mezani, Wambua.

Come to the table, Wambua.

Wambua

Starehe.

You're very kind.

~tamu

sweet, delicious

Kweli leo ina vyakula vitamu sana.

Really, you have some very delicious
dishes today.Hadija

Asante, lakini tumeishiwa siagi.

Thank you, but we've run out of
butter.Wambua

Si kitu.

Don't worry. ('It's nothing.')

-sogeza

to bring near

Tafadhali nisogezee maziwa.

Please pass the milk.

- - - - -

Hadija

Juma, tafadhali ondoa vyombo mezani;

Juma, please clear the dishes from

tumekwisha maliza kula.

the table; we have finished eating.

Juma

Ndiyo, mama.

Yes, mother.

Chai na kahawa viko (or: iko) tayari.

The tea and coffee are ready.

Hadija

bakuli (MA)

bowl

birika (MA)

pot (tea)

Leta vikombe na visahani vyake,

Bring the cups and saucers, the sugar

bakuli la sukari na birika la chai.

bowl, and the tea pot.

Juma

Ngoja kidogo.

Wait a bit.

Notes

A. Concord with two or more nouns.

Where two inanimate nouns (e.g. chai and kahawa) are the subject of the same verb, the question arises which subject prefix to use. The question is further complicated when the two nouns happen to belong to different classes (e.g. uma and jembe). Speakers differ in their practice in such situations; a final resolution of the problem must await further study.

B. ake with an inanimate plural antecedent.vikombe na visahani vyake

Hitherto we have translated ake as either 'his' or 'her'. It may also correspond to the English possessive forms its and their(s). Note that ake is the stem used whether the inanimate antecedent of the stem (vikombe in this example) is singular or plural. Contrast, with animate nouns, ake when the antecedent is singular and ao when it is plural:

akulima na watoto wakewakulima na watoto wao

2.

A. Verb phrase with ne-tense in second verb.

siagi Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa siagi. Yesterday we were short of butter.

chumvi	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa chumvi.	Yesterday we were short of salt.
sukari	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa sukari.	Yesterday we were short of sugar.
wino	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa wino.	Yesterday we were short of ink.
sabuni	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa sabuni.	Yesterday we were short of soap.
mafuta	Jana tulikuwa tumeishiwa mafuta.	Yesterday we were short of oil.

B. -ja- negative; -ondoa with locative.

vyombo	Kwa nini hujaondoa vyombo mezani?	Why haven't you removed the utensils from the table?
sahani	Kwa nini hujaondoa sahani mezani?	Why haven't you removed the plates from the table?
vijiko	vikombe	kitambaa

3.

A. Concord: Subject prefix with two noun subjects.

chai	Chai iko tayari.	The tea is ready.
kahawa	Kahawa iko tayari.	The coffee is ready.
	Chai na kahawa viko (or: iko) tayari.	The tea and coffee are ready.
bilauri	Bilauri ziko tayari.	The glasses are ready.
sahani	Sahani ziko tayari.	The plates are ready.
	Bilauri na sahani ziko (or: viko tayari) tayari.	The glasses and plates are ready.

B.

suruali (sg.)	Suruali iko tayari.	The trousers are ready.
------------------	---------------------	-------------------------

koti	Koti liko tayari.	The coat is ready.
uma	Uma uko (or: iko) tayari.	The fork is ready.
suruali (pl.)	Suruali ziko tayari.	The trousers are ready.
makoti	Makoti yako tayari.	The coats are ready.
suruali na makoti	Suruali na makoti viko (or: yako) tayari.	The trousers and coats are ready.
kalamu (pl.)	Kalamu ziko tayari.	The pens are ready.
wino	Wino uko tayari.	The ink is ready.
kitanda	Kitanda kiko tayari.	The bed is ready.
bakuli	Bakuli liko tayari.	The bowl is ready.
birika	Birika liko (or: iko) tayari.	The kettle is ready.
vyakula	Vyakula viko tayari.	The food is ready.
kalamu na wino	Kalamu na wino viko (or: upo) tayari.	The pens and ink are ready.

Unit 97

1. Basic Dialogue. Washing dishes.

Hadija

Nani atakayesafisha vyombo leo?

Who is going to wash the dishes
today?Juma

Mimi, mama, Asha atanisaidia.

I [will], mother. Asha will help me.

Hadija

Nitawapatieni maji ya moto.

I'll get you some hot water.

JumaAsha, tafadhali lete sabuni na
vitamba.

Asha, please bring soap and cloths.

Hadija

ili

so that

-chelesha

to boil

Nimechelesha maji ili yaondoe mafuta
katika vyombo.I've boiled the water so that it will
remove the grease from (on) the
plates.Juma

Asante, mama.

Thank you, Mother.

Hadija

kabati (N or MA)

cupboard

Asha, weka vyombo vilivyokauka
kabatini.Asha, put the dry plates in the cup-
board.

Junna

-ng'ang'ania

here: to stick to

Mayai yameng'ang'ania katika sahani. Some egg is stuck to the plate.

Hadija

Irudishe majini ili uisafishe
visuri.

Put it back into the water so that
you [can] get it good and clean.

Notes

A. The subjunctive with ili.

Note the use of the subjunctive after ili 'so that'.

2.

A. Relative and locative suffixes on the same verb.

vyombo Vyombo vilivyomo kabatini The utensils that are in the
vimekauka. cupboard are dry.

vikombe

sahani Sahani zilizomo kabatini The plates that are in the cup-
zimekauka. board are dry.

bilauri nguo kisu kijiko uma nyuma

B.

vyombo Vyombo vilivyoko mezani The utensils that are on the
vina majimaji. table are wet.

visahani

sahani Sahani zilizoko mezani The plates that are on the table
zina majimaji. are wet.

nguo kisu kijiko uma nyuma

C. Concord: noun object in first clause and subject prefix in second.

vyombo	Weka vyombo mezani ili vikauke.	Put the utensils on the table to dry.
nyuma	Weka nyuma mezani ili zikauke.	Put the forks on the table to dry.
bilauri	Weka bilauri mezani ili zikauke.	Put the glasses on the table to dry.
uma	Weka uma mezani ili ikauke.	Put the fork on the table to dry.

3.

A. -na-tense affirmative vs. -ja- negative.

maji	Maji yanachemka? Hapana, hayajachemka bado.	Is the water boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
chai	Chai inachemka? Hapana, haijachemka bado.	Is the tea boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
kahawa	Kahawa inachemka? Hapana, haijachemka bado.	Is the coffee boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.
maziwa	Maziwa yanachemka? Hapana, hayajachemka bado.	Is the milk boiling? No. It hasn't boiled yet.

B. Concord in multiple positions.

viazi	Viazi hivi havina moto. Virudishe ndani ya jiko ili vipate moto.	These potatoes are not warm. Put them back on the fire to get warm.
nyama	Nyama hii haina moto. Irudishe ndani ya jiko ili ipate moto.	This meat is not warm. Put it back in the kitchen to get warm.
mboga	Mboga hizi hazina moto. Zirudishe ndani ya jiko ili zipate moto.	These vegetables are not warm. Put them back on the fire to get warm.

wali Wali huu hauna moto.

This rice is not warm.

Urudishe ndani ya jiko ili
upate moto.

Put it back on the fire to get
warm.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a mother) discusses with B (a domestic servant) B's duties in setting the table and caring for the dishes.

2. C and D discuss the differences between British and American customs relating to the setting of a dinner table.

Unit 98

1. Basic Dialogue. Caring for the lawn.

Hamisi

mkasi (MI) scissors

ua (U) hedge

mwiba (MI) thorn

Nipatie mkasi wa kukatia ua wa
mwiba. Get me the clippers for cutting the
thorn hedge.

Juma

nyasi (N pl.) grass

Chukua. Ukimaliza, uje tukate nyasi Here you are ('take'). When you
uani. finish, come and we'll cut the
grass in the yard.

Hamisi

Hapana. Wewe kata nyasi peke yako, No. You cut the grass by yourself.
mimi nina kazi nyingine. I have other work.

Juma

Kazi gani? What work?

Hamisi

ua (MA) flower

Maua yanahitaji kupaliliwa. The flowers need to be weeded.

Juma

-mea to grow

gugu (MA) weed

Kwani magugu yamemea? Why? Have the weeds come up?

Hamisi

Tena!

Of course!

Juma

Usisahau kumwagilia maua maji.

Don't forget to water the flowers.

Hamisi

-onana

to see one another

Haya. Tutaonana baadaye.

O.K. See you later.

Notes

A. The reciprocal suffix.

The 'reciprocal' suffix -an- corresponds roughly to English '...one another'.

2.

A. Concord: subject prefixes with some new nouns.

muhindi	Muhindi umemea upesi sana.	The maize has sprouted very soon.
mpunga	Mpunga umemea upesi sana.	The rice has sprouted very soon.
magugu	Magugu yamemea upesi sana.	The weeds have sprouted very soon.
ua (flower)	Ua limemea upesi sana.	The flower has sprouted very soon.
maua	Maua yamemea upesi sana.	The flowers have sprouted very soon.
nyasi	Nyasi zimemea upesi sana.	The grass has sprouted very soon.

B. Reciprocal stems.

kuona	Wanaonana kila siku.	They see each other every day.
kupiga	Wanapigana kila siku.	They fight each other every day.
kusaidia	Wanasaidiana kila siku.	They help each other every day.
kuañkia	Wanañkiana kila siku.	They greet each other every day.

kungoja Wanangojeana kila siku. They wait for each other every day.

C. A sentence which contains three examples of reciprocal stems.

kufuata,

kupoteza,

kuona

Hamisi na rafikiye (or:
rafiki yake) walifuatana
sokoni asubuhi, wakapotezana
huko, wakaonana tena
alasiri.

Hamisi and his friend went together
to the market in the morning;
they lost each other over there,
and then saw each other again in
the afternoon.

3.

A. Plural imperative: negative vs. affirmative.

kumwagilia Msisahau kumwagilia maua
maji.

Don't forget to water the flowers.

Hapana. Ninyi mwagilieni
maua peke yenu.

No. Water the flowers by
yourselves.

kukata Msisahau kukata nyasi.

Don't forget to cut the grass.

Hapana. Ninyi kateni
nyasi peke yenu.

No. Cut the grass by
yourselves.

kuchemsha Msisahau kuchemsha maji ya
kusafishia vyombo.

Don't forget to boil water for
washing the dishes.

Hapana. Ninyi chemsheni
maji peke yenu.

No. Boil the water by
yourselves.

kutandika Msisahau kutandika kitanda
cha mgeni.

Don't forget to make the guest's
bed.

Hapana. Ninyi tandikeni
kitanda peke yenu.

No. Make the bed by yourselves.

B. -ta- tense vs. -ki- tense.

kukata Utakata ua?

Will you cut the hedge?

Ukikata ua, nitakata
nyasi.

If you cut the hedge, I'll cut
the grass.

kumwagilia Utamwagilia maua maji?

Will you water the flowers?

Ukimwagilia maua, nitakata
nyasi.

If you water the flowers, I
will cut the grass.

kupalilia shamba kusafisha vyombo

kufua nguo

Unit 99

1. Basic Dialogue. Trials of a baby-sitter.

Maria

-chungu	to care for
Watoto wadogo wahitaji kuchungwa (or: kutunzwa) sana.	Young children need to be cared for very well.
-acha	to leave
Wakiachiliwa peke yao wataumia.	If they are left alone they will get hurt.
-ruhusu	to allow
-kimbia	to run
barabára	road, highway
Si vizuri kuwaruhusu wakimbie barabarani.	It's not good to let them run around in the street.
-epa	to avoid, escape
hatari (N)	danger
Hawajui kuesa hatari -- kama magari.	They don't know how to escape from dangers, like cars.
-linda	to protect
Wanataka kulindwa kila mara.	They require protection every minute.

Notes

A. The verb -ruhusu with infinitive or subjunctive.

The verb -ruhusu 'to permit' may be followed by infinitive or by subjunctive verb forms.

2.

A. Vocabulary practice in a sentence with an example of the use of the -ki- tense.

kuumia	Watoto wakiachiliwa peke yao wataunia.	If children are left alone they'll get hurt.
--------	---	---

kukimbia	Watoto wakiachiliwa peke yao watakimbia huko na huko.	If children are left alone they'll run around.
----------	---	---

kucheza kupigana

B. -acha plus infinitive.

kusema	Wakati gani aliacha kusoma?	At what time did he stop reading?
--------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

kulima	Wakati gani aliacha kulima?	At what time did he stop cultivating?
--------	-----------------------------	--

kucheza kulia

C.

kusoma	Acheni kusoma!	Stop reading!
kushangilia	Acheni kushangilia!	Stop rejoicing!
kupigana	Acheni kupigana!	Stop fighting!
kelele	Acheni kupiga kelele!	Stop making noise!
kuchemsha	Acheni kuchemsha maji!	Stop boiling water!

D. -kimbia na _____.

pesa	Watoto walikimbia na pesa zangu.	The children ran away with my money.
------	-------------------------------------	---

kalamu	Watoto walikimbia na kalamu yangu.	The children ran away with my pen.
--------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------------

kitabu jembe kijiko

3.

A. -ruhusu plus a subjunctive form; infinitive vs. subjunctive of a single verb.

kucheza	Watoto wataka kucheza barabarani. Hatuwaruhusu wacheze humo.	The children want to play in the road. We don't allow them to play in it.
---------	---	---

kukimbia	Watoto wataka kukimbia barabarani. Hatuwaruhusu wakimbie humo.	The children want to run in the road. We don't allow them to run in it.
----------	---	---

kukaa kwenda

B. -acha and -endelea plus infinitive; mpaka.

kusema	Acha kusema! Siachi. Nitaendelea kusema mpaka usiku.	Stop talking! I won't stop. I will keep on talking until dark.
--------	--	--

kusoma	Acha kusoma! Siachi. Nitaendelea kusoma mpaka usiku.	Stop reading! I won't stop. I will keep on reading until dark.
--------	--	--

kufanya kazi kuogelea kukata nyasi

Unit 100

1. Basic Dialogue. Trials of a baby-sitter. (continued)

Mirambo

kifaranga (VI - pers.)

chick (dim.): small child
(colloq.)

-onja

to taste, try

Vifaranga hupenda kuonja kila kitu.

Small children like to taste every-
thing.Magese

-jali

to give honor to

Hata udongo na uchafu, hawajali.

They don't even stop at soil and
dirt.Mirambo

jua (MA)

sun

-choma

to burn, apply fire to

Tena, watoto wa kizungu wakikaa

Also, European children, if they

juani kwa muda mrefu, huchomwa

stay in the sun for a long period,

na jua vibaya.

get badly burned (by the sun).

Magese

-tii

to obey

Watoto yawalazimu kuwatii wazazi

It's necessary for children to obey

wao.

their parents.

Mirambo

-lea

to rear

-kua

to grow

'Mtoto unileavyo ndivyo akuavyo.'

'As the twig is bent, the tree's inclined.'

2.

A. tanguJan. Hamisi amekua sana tangu
Januari.Hamisi has grown a lot since
January.Feb. Hamisi amekua sana tangu
Februari.Hamisi has grown a lot since
FebruaryMachi Aprili Mei Juni
Oktoba Novemba Desemba

Julai Agosti Septemba

B. -kusudia plus infinitive.soko Hatukusudii kukaa sokoni
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay in the
market long.pwani Hatukusudii kukaa pwani
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay at the
coast long.nyumba Hatukusudii kukaa nyumbani
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay in the
house long.kwao Hatukusudii kukaa kwao kwa
muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay at their
place long.Morogoro Hatukusudii kukaa Morogoro
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay in
Morogoro long.kusini Hatukusudii kukaa kusini
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay in the
south long.mashariki Hatukusudii kukaa mashariki
kwa muda mrefu.We don't intend to stay in the
east long.C. -tii

wazazi Watii wazazi wako!

Obey your parents!

waalimu Watii waalimu wako!

Obey your teachers!

mwalimu	Mtii mwalimu wako!	Obey your teacher!
baba	Mtii baba yako!	Obey your father!
mama	Mtii mama yako!	Obey your mother!

3.

A. Concord: the word mahali and the PA locative.

kalamu	Nimepoteza kalamu yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha kalamu, ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my pen! The place where you left the pen, is where it is.
pesa	Nimepoteza pesa zangu! Mahali ulipoziacha pesa, ndipo zilipo.	I have lost my money! The place where you left the money, is where it is.
kofia	Nimepoteza kofia yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha kofia, ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my hat! The place where you left the hat, is where it is.
kitabu	Nimepoteza kitabu changu! Mahali ulipokiacha kitabu, ndipo kilipo.	I have lost my book! The place where you left the book, is where it is.
chupa	Nimepoteza chupa yangu! Mahali ulipoiacha chupa ndipo ilipo.	I have lost my bottle! The place where you left the bottle, is where it is.
viberiti	Nimepoteza viberiti vyangu! Mahali ulipoviacha viberiti, ndipo vilipo.	I have lost my matches! The place where you left your matches, is where they are.

Conversation Starters

1. A (a mother) discusses with B (a baby sitter) B's responsibilities in caring for a three year old child during the day and putting the child to bed at night.

2. A (a homeowner) discusses with B (a gardener) B's responsibilities in caring for the lawn.

READING SELECTION V

Motokaa Za Abiria

Motokaa za abiria sina manufaa sana kwa wasafiri. Ingawa abiria wapanda gari la moshi, motokaa ina sifa kabisa.

Ni ajabu kuwa safari ya motokaa si ya raha kama ile ya gari la moshi, lakini wasafiri wengi hupenda kupanda motokaa. Ukipanda motokaa, utafika upesi saidi kuliko kama ukipanda gari la moshi. Sababu yake ni kwamba motokaa yakimbia upesi saidi ya gari la moshi.

Motokaa ni nyingi sana, nazo zinasafiri kila upande nchini. Katika miji mikubwa kuna namna mbili za motokaa hisi. Zile zinazosafiri nje ya mji, na nyingine zile zinasozungukazunguka humo humo mjini. Safari nyingi huanza asubuhi na aduhuri, na chache hufanywa alasiri na jioni. Magari haya hupita katika sehemu mbali mbali, milimani na mabondeni. Juu ya mito kuna madaraja. Madaraja mengine ni membamba na mengine ni mapana. Yale membamba huruhusu gari moja moja kupita, polepole. Katika sehemu zilizo sawa, yaani zisizokuwa sa milima, magari hukimbia sana. Ni vibaya kukimbiza sana gari la abiria kwa sababu ni hatari. Wenye magari hupata faida kubwa, lakini wakati mwingine hupata hasara pia. Magari ya bidhaa, kama yale yachukusyo madebe ya mafuta, au magogo, hayachukui abiria. Hii ni amri ya serikali.

Ni wasi kwamba ukisafiri kwa motokaa, safari ndefu huwa fupi.

manufaa (pl. MA)	useful things, tools	hasara (N)	loss, damage
sifa (N)	praise, reputation	debe (MA)	a four-gallon tin
raha (N)	rest, comfort	amri (N)	a command; law authority, rule
-zunguka	to go around	wasi	open, evident
bonde (MA)	valley, low-lying country		
~embamba	narrow - thin		
~pana	broad, (flat)		

Questions and Answers over Reading Selection

QuestionsSample Answers

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Motokaa za abiria zina manufaa kwa wasafiri? | Ndiyo, zina manufaa sana kwao. |
| 2. Je, safari ya motokaa ni ya raha kama ile ya gari la moshi? | La, si ya raha. |
| 3. Kwa nini wasafiri hupenda kupanda motokaa? | Kwa sababu motokaa hukimbia upesi zaidi. |
| 4. Ni kweli kwamba ukipanda motokaa utafika upesi? | Ndiyo. |
| 5. Motokaa zinasafiri upande mmoja tu hchini? | La, ni nyingi sana, zinasafiri kila upande. |
| 6. Katika miji mikubwa, kuna namna zipi za motokaa za abiria? | Zile zinazosafiri hje ya mji na zile zinazozungukazunguka humo. |
| 7. Safari huanza lini? | Nyingi huanza asubuhi na aduhuri, na chache alasiri na jioni. |
| 8. Magari haya hupita sehemu za namna gani? | Milimani na mabondeni. |
| 9. Juu ya mito kuna nini? | Kuna madaraja. |
| 10. Madaraja yote ni membamba? | Hapana, mengine ni mapana. |
| 11. Magari hupitaje juu ya madaraja membamba? | Hupita moja moja, polepole. |
| 12. Katika sehemu gani magari hukimbia sana? | Katika sehemu zilizo sawa, zisizokuwa na milima. |
| 13. Ni vibaya kukimbisa sana gari la abiria? | Oh ndiyo, kwa sababu ni hatari. |
| 14. Wenye magari hupata faida tu? | Sio faida tu, pia hasara. |

15. Kwa nini magari ya bidhaa
hayachukui abiria?

Ni amri ya serikali.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 100

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Alinipa vitabu viwili. | He gave me two books. |
| 2. Kimoja ni cheusi na kingine ni chekundu. | One is black and the other is red. |
| 3. Mahali penyewe ni pazuri sana. | The place itself is very beautiful. |
| 4. Watoto walifika alipokuwa akila. | The children arrived when he was eating. |
| 5. Mama alifika mtoto alipoanza kulia. | The mother arrived when the child began to cry. |
| 6. Bado hajamaliza kazi yake. | He hasn't finished his work yet. |
| 7. Alivinunua kwa shilingi hamsini na tano. | He bought them for 55 shillings. |
| 8. Nijaliwapo kufika Nairobi nitamtembelea Hamedu. | If God grants that I reach Nairobi, I'll visit Hamedu. |
| 9. Akinipunguzia bei nitakinunua kile kikapu. | If he reduces the price for me, I'll buy that basket there. |
| 10. Suruali yako inayo mifuko mingapi? | How many pockets do your trousers have? |
| 11. Mbuzi wako huko kwenye nyasi nyingi. | The goats are where there is lots of grass. |
| 12. Bila shaka barabara za kwao ni nzuri sana. | Certainly their roads are very nice. |
| 13. Unayo mizigo mingapi kwa jumla? | How many pieces of luggage have you altogether? |
| 14. Ataongea juu ya elimu ya Waafrika. | He will speak on the education of Africans. |
| 15. Mimea hubadilishwa kila mwaka. | The crops are rotated every year. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 16. Shamba langu limegawanywa katika sehemu tano. | My farm is divided into five parts. |
| 17. Mtandikie mgeni kitanda. | Make the bed for the guest. |
| 18. Wakulima na watoto wao walipewa msaada wa fedha. | The farmers and their children were given financial assistance. |
| 19. Yeye na dada yake wanafanana. | He and his sister resemble one another. |
| 20. Nguo avaaazo huzimunua kutoka Ulaya. | The clothes he wears are purchased in Europe. |
| 21. Mwambie akuonyeshe godoro liliko. | Ask him to show you where the mattress is. |
| 22. Unafikiri nguo zimelowe kwa? | Do you think the clothes are wet? |
| 23. Nani apigaye pasi nguo zake? | Who irons his clothes? |
| 24. Watoto wachungao ng'ombe hawa, wako wapi? | Where are the children who tend the cattle? |
| 25. Tutaondokaje hapa? | How will we leave here? |
| 26. Mtapanda gari la moshi. | You will take the train. |
| 27. Tutafanyaje ili tupate msaada na pesa? | What shall we do in order to get financial assistance? |
| 28. Baba alipofika, mama alikuwa hajaanza kupika. | When Father arrived, Mother had not yet begun cooking. |
| 29. Maziwa yamechemka hata yakamwagika. | The milk boiled over. |
| 30. Suruali haijapigwa pasi. | The pair of trousers hasn't been ironed yet. |
| 31. Mto umo ndani ya sanduku. | The pillow is in the chest. |
| 32. Kwanini balozi hajafika? | Why hasn't the diplomat arrived? |

33. Haya, twendelee basi. O.K., let's go on.
34. Vifungo vyote vya koti lake vimepotea. All the buttons of his coat are lost.
35. Sina pesa za kuvunja noti ya shilingi ishirini. I don't have change for a 20 shilling note.
36. Duka liko kushoto kwa jumba la sinema. The shop is to the left of the theater.
37. Juzi tulikuwa tumeishiwa chakula chote. The day before yesterday, we were completely out of food.
38. Msipigane kwa sababu ya thumni. Don't fight over a 50 cent piece.
39. Hawakusudii kuja kesho kututembelea. They don't plan to come to see us tomorrow.
40. Yafaa kuwasua watoto wasichezecheze barabarani. It's necessary to prevent children from playing around in the street.

Unit 101

1. Basic Dialogue. Riding a bicycle on the streets.

Hamisi

Unajua kuendesha baiskeli?

Do you know [how] to ride a bicycle?

Abasi

Ndiyo, lakini nilianza majuzi hivi.

Yes, but I began only recently.

Hamisi

-sikiliza

to listen

sheria (N)

law

Sikiliza bwana, ni hatari sana
kuendesha baiskeli kama hujui
sheria za barabara.

Listen, Mister, it is very dangerous
to ride a bicycle if you don't
the traffic regulations.

Kila wakati endesha upande wa
kushoto wa barabara.

Always ride on the left side of the
road.

kengele (N)

bell

Piga kengele kama kuna mtu mbele
yako.

Ring the bell if there is someone
ahead of you.

-geuka

to turn

ishara (N)

signal

Ukitaka kugeuka, onyesha ishara.
Waangalie sana wapitao kwa mguu.

If you want to turn, give a signal.
Watch the pedestrians carefully.

Notes

A. 'Next' and 'last' with units of time.

The Swahili equivalents for 'next week', 'next month', etc. are in the form:

<u>noun</u>	<u>rel. a-tense of kuja</u>
mwezi	() ja () o
wiki	
mwaka	

2.

A. Relative forms of the a-tense.

miguu	Waangalie sana wapitao kwa miguu.	Watch out for those crossing on foot.
baiskeli	Waangalie sana waendeshao baiskeli.	Watch for those riding bicycles.
motokaa	Waangalie sana waendeshao motokaa.	Watch for those driving automobiles.

B. Relative forms of a-tense, in time expressions.

↓	Tutaanza kujifunza mwezi ujao.	We'll begin studying next month.
mwaka	Tutaanza kujifunza mwaka ujao.	We'll begin studying next year.
wiki	Tutaanza kujifunza wiki ijayo.	We'll begin studying next week.
kupanda	Tutaanza kupanda mbegu wiki ijayo.	We'll begin sowing seeds next week.
kuvuna	Tutaanza kuvuna wiki ijayo.	We'll begin harvesting next week.
mwezi	Tutaanza kuvuna mwezi ujao.	We'll begin harvesting next week.

C. Nouns used as objects of -geuza.

maneno	Tugeuze maneno haya.	Let's change these words.
mpango	Tugeuze mpango huu.	Let's change this program.
mipango	Tugeuze mipango hii.	Let's change these programs.
majibu	Tugeuze majibu haya.	Let's change these answers.
rangi	Tugeuze rangi hii.	Let's change this color.

D. Nouns used as objects of -badili.

sheria	Tubadili sheria hizi.	Let's change these laws.
shati	Tubadili shati hili.	Let's exchange this shirt.
nguo	Tubadili nguo hii.	Let's exchange this piece of cloth.

E. The derived stem -badilishana.

koti	Tubadilishane makoti.	Let's exchange coats.
nguo	Tubadilishane nguo.	Let's exchange clothes.
kofia	kalamu	kitabu

3.

A. Relative forms of the a-tense.

vyombo	Vyombo vinahitaji kusafishwa. Nani asafishaye vyombo?	The dishes need washing. Who washes the dishes?
vitanda	Vitanda vinahitaji kutandikwa. Nani atandikaye vitanda?	The beds need making. Who makes the beds?
maji	Maji yanahitaji kufutwa. Nani afutaye maji?	The water needs wiping up. Who wipes the water up?
vijiti	Vijiti vinahitaji kukatwa. Nani akataye vijiti?	The bushes need cutting. Who cuts the bushes?

Unit 102

1. Basic Dialogue. Conditions of employment.

Sangai

Siku hizi wafanya kazi wapi?

Where are you working these days?

Wambua

fedha (N)

money

Katika Idara ya Fedha.

In the Ministry of Finance.

Twafanya kazi kwa siku tano.

We work five days [a week].

Sangai

Mshahara ni kiasi gani?

How much is the pay?

Wambua

Shilingi mia mbili hamsini.

250 shillings [per month].

Tunafanya kazi kwa muda wa saa saba.

We work a seven-hour day.

Sangai

Mnaanza lini asubuhi?

When do you begin in the morning?

Wambua

aduhuri

noon

Saa mbili mpaka aduhuri tupumzikapo.

8:00 until noon, when we rest.

Sangai

Halafu?

Then?

Wambua

alasiri

early afternoon

Halafu, tunaanza tena alasiri mpaka

Then, we begin again in the afternoon

saa kumi.

[and work] until 4.

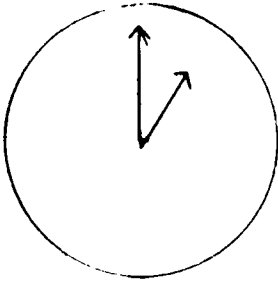
A. Matching hours with portions of the day.

Point to the appropriate hour as each sentence is practiced. Practice in fixed, then random order.

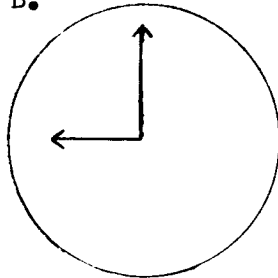
moja	Alifika saa moja asubuhi.	He arrived at seven o'clock in the morning.
mbili	tatu	nne
	tano	
sita	Alifika saa sita aduhuri.	He arrived at noon.
saba	Alifika saa saba mchana.	He arrived at one o'clock in the afternoon.
nane	tisa	kumi
kumi na moja	Alifika saa kumi na moja jioni.	He arrived at five o'clock in the evening.
kumi na mbili	Alifika saa kumi na mbili jioni.	He arrived at six o'clock in the evening.

3. A. What are the following in Swahili? (Assume that the sun is up.)

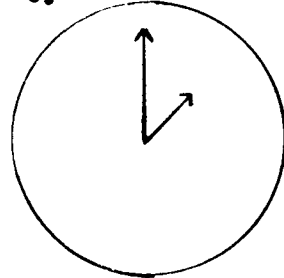
A.



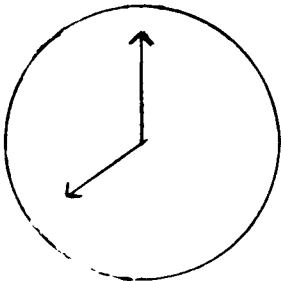
B.



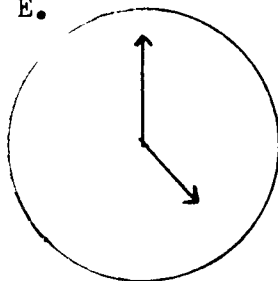
C.



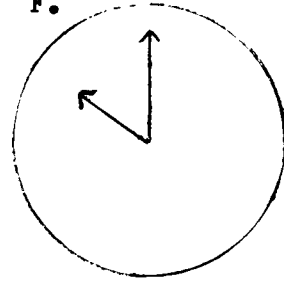
D.



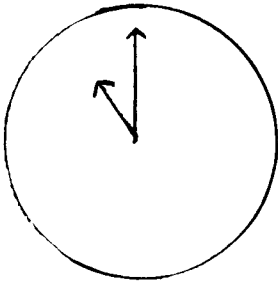
E.



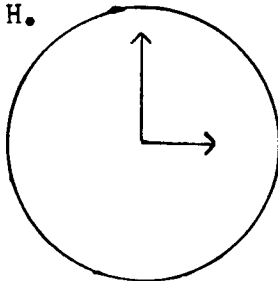
F.



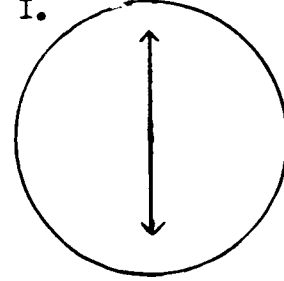
G.



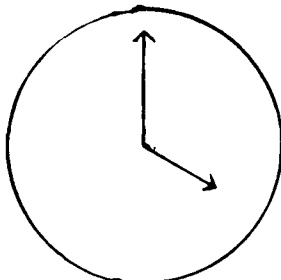
H.



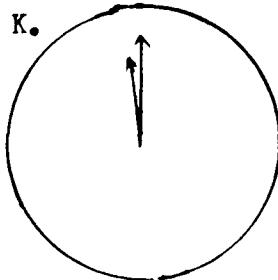
I.



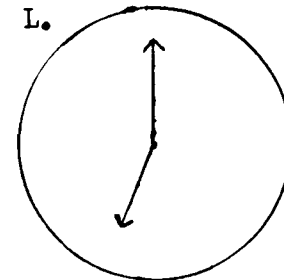
J.



K.



L.



Unit 103

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Sangai

Kazi yenyewe ni ngumu?

Is the work itself hard?

Wambua

afisi (N)

office

Hapana, ukiwa umeelimika, unafanya
kazi afisini. Lakini wengine
wanafanya kazi ngumu.

No, if you are educated, you work in
an office. But some do hard work.

bidhaa (N)

merchandise

kadhalika

etc.

Wanabeba bidhaa kama sabuni, mafuta
ya taa, na kadhalika.

They carry merchandise like soap,
kerosene, and so forth.

-paka

to apply

(-pakia)

(to pile up)

Wanazipakia katika motokaa.

They load them into a lorry.

Sangai

jasho (MA)

sweat

Kweli ni kazi ya jasho!

[That] is really sweaty work.

Wambua

mapumziko

place/time of resting

Lakini sote twapewa nguo bure, na
chakula saa ya mapumziko.

But we all are given free clothing,
and food during the rest hour.

Sangai

bahasa (N)	envelope
karatasi (N)	paper
-omba	to request

Nitakwenda kununua bahasa na
 karatasi ya barua ya kuomba
 kazi kwenu. I'm going to buy an envelope and
 letter paper for applying for work
 at your place!

Notes

A. The stem ote 'all'.

As we have seen, the stem ote takes a full set of class concords. It also takes prefixes for first person and second person plural:

sote	we all
nyote	you all

2.

A. Subjunctive with object prefixes.

bidhaa	Ziweke bidhaa karibu na mlango.	Put the goods near the door.
bahasa	Ziweke bahasa karibu na mlango.	Put the envelopes near the door.
jembe	Liweke jembe karibu na mlango.	Put the hoe near the door.
majembe	Yaweke majembe karibu na mlango.	Put the hoes near the door.
meza	Iweke meza karibu na mlango.	Put the table near the door.

B. Relatives of me-tense and a-tense.

kuelimika	Wote waliocelimika wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who are educated work in the office.
-----------	---	---

kujua	Wote wajuao kuandika na kusoma wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who know how to read and write work in the office.
kusema	Wote wasemao Kiingereza wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who speak English work in the office.
kujifunza	Wote waliojifunza Ulaya wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who studied in Europe work in the office.
kuhitimu	Wote waliohitimu wafanya kazi afisini.	All those who qualified work in the office.

C. Sote 'we all'.

kuchelewa	Tutachelewa sote.	We'll all be late.
kufurahi	Tutafurahi sote.	We'll all be happy.

kusaidia kwenda

D. Nyote 'you all'.

kuenda	Nendeni nyote.	All of you go.
kuja	Njoooni nyote.	All of you come.

kungoja kuanza kuandika

3.

A. Relative with 1 plu. s.p.

kuwa	Sote tulikuwa kanisani. Sote tuliokuwako tulipata homa kesho yake.	We all were in the church. All of us who were there got a fever the following day.
kuenda	Sote tulikwenda kanisani. Sote tuliokwenda huko tulipata homa kesho yake.	We all went to church. All of us who went there got a fever the following day.
kula	Sote tulikula chakula kanisani.	We all ate food in the church.

Sote tuliokula chakula
huko tulipata homa
kesho yake.

All of us who ate food there
got a fever the following day.

kushinda Sote tulishinda mjini.
Sote tulioshinda huko
tulipata homa kesho yake.

We all spent the day in town.
All of us who spent the day
there got a fever the following
day.

B. Relative with 2 plu. s.p.

kuwa Nyote mlikuwa shuleni.
Nyote mliokuwako mlipata
homa.

You all were in the school.
All of you who were there got
a fever.

kuenda Nyote mlikwenda sokoni.
Nyote mliokwenda huko
mlipata homa.

You all went to market.
All of you who went there got
a fever.

kula Nyote mlikula mjini.
Nyote mliokula huko
mlipata homa.

You all ate in town.
All of you who ate there got
a fever.

kushinda Nyote mlishinda Morogoro.
Nyote mliosshinda huko
mlipata homa.

You all spent the day in Morogoro.
All of you who spent the day
there got a fever.

Conversation Starters

1. A is looking for a good job. His friend B advises him.

Unit 104

1. Basic Dialogue. Rearranging the furniture.

Abasi

chumba (VI)	room
Chumba hiki kimejaa vyombo vingi visivyohitajiwa upesi.	This room is full of furniture which which will not be needed soon.
pambo (MA)	furniture, ornament
(better: <u>fanicha</u> , or <u>vifaa vya nyumbani</u>)	

Mutisya

Ni mapambo ya nyumba.	They are pieces of furniture for the house.
-----------------------	---

Abasi

Tafadhali viondoe ukipata wakati.	Please remove them when you have time.
-----------------------------------	--

Mutisya

Nitaviweka wapi?	Where shall I put them?
------------------	-------------------------

Abasi

rafu (N)	shelf
dari (N)	upper floor
Chukua rafu na kabati ndani ya chumba cha Hamisi, darini.	Take the shelf and the cupboard into Hamisi's room, upstairs.
kinanda (VI)	stringed instrument, gramophone
Kile kinanda, weka upande wa kitanda.	That musical instrument, put [it] by the bed.
kufuli (N)	padlock
ufunguo (U-N)	key
-fungu	to lock

-fungua

to unlock

Kisha, chukua kufuli na funguo hizi [When you] finish, take this padlock
 ufunge ili watoto wasiweze kufungua. and key and lock [the room] so that
 the children aren't able to unlock
 [it].

Notes

A. Negative relative present verbs.

visivyohitajiwa [things] which are not needed

The negative relative forms corresponding to the present tense have -si- in the slot between subject prefix and relative affix.

B. The 'reversive' suffix.

kufunga to lock
 kufungua to unlock

The 'reversive' suffix -u- is found in the word kufungua. Compare also kuvaa 'to don', kuvua 'to doff'.

2.

A. Object before the verb.

kitanda Kile kinanda, weka upande That (stringed) instrument, put it
 wa kitanda. beside the bed.

meza Kile kinanda, weka upande That (stringed) instrument, put it
 wa meza. beside the table.

mlango kiti jiko

B. ~pi 'which' followed by relative.

vyombo Vyombo vipi visivyohitajiwa Which dishes are not wanted now?
 sasa?

kikapu Kikapu kipi kisichohitajiwa Which basket is not wanted now?
 sasa?

birika	Birika lipi lisilohitajiwa sasa?	Which kettle is not wanted now?				
magodoro	Magodoro yapi yasiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which mattresses are not wanted now?				
wino	Wino upi usiohitajiwa sasa?	Which ink is not wanted now?				
mkasi	Mkasi upi usiohitajiwa sasa?	Which pair of scissors is not wanted now?				
mito	Mito ipi isiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which pillows are not wanted now?				
sabuni	Sabuni ipi isiyohitajiwa sasa?	Which soap is not wanted now?				
shuka (pl.)	Shuka zipi zisizohitajiwa sasa?	Which sheets are not wanted now?				
vijiko	kitanda	godoro	mapanga	ubao	mimea	pasi
nguo (pl.)						

C. Negative relative, present tense.

kupiga	Wasiopiga kelele watapewa pesa.	Those who do not make noise will be given money.
kukimbia	Wasiokimbia watapewa pesa.	Those who do not run will be given money.
kupewa	Wasiopewa livu watapewa pesa.	Those who are not given leave will be given money.
kusumbua	Wasiotusumbua watapewa pesa.	Those who do not bother us will be given money.
kuchelewa	Wasiochelewa watapewa pesa.	Those who are not late will be given money.
kucheza	Wasiocheza watapewa pesa.	Those who do not play will be given money.

kulima	Wasiolina njugu watapewa fedha na serikali.	Those who do not grow peanuts will be given money by the government.
--------	--	--

3.

A. The reversive stem -vua.

kofia	Vaa kofia hii. Usivue mpaka aduhuri.	Put on this hat. Don't take it off till noon.
suruali	Vaa suruali hii. Usivue mpaka aduhuri.	Put on these trousers. Don't take them off till noon.
nguo	Vaa nguo hizi. Usizivue mpaka aduhuri.	Put on these clothes. Don't take them off till noon.
shati	Vaa mashati haya. Usiyavue mpaka aduhuri.	Put on these shirts. Don't take them off till noon.

B.

kofia	Vua kofia ile! Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off that hat! It's mine. Why did you put it on?
suruali	Vua suruali ile! Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off those trousers! They're mine. Why did you put them on?
nguo	Vua nguo ile. Ni yangu. Kwa nini uliivaa?	Take off that cloth! It's mine. Why did you put it on?
shati	Vua shati lile. Ni langu. Kwa nini ulilivaa?	Take off that shirt! It's mine. Why did you put it on?

Unit 105

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a trip by car.

Butler

Nataka kwenda Bagamoyo kwa motokaa. I want to go to Bagamoyo by car.

Je, njia ni nzuri? Is the road good?

Hamisi

Njia ni nzuri, lakini si sana. The road is good, but not very good.

Butler

Kwa nini? Why?

Hamisi

daraja (MA) bridge

Kwa sababu juzi ilinyesha mvua kubwa, Because the day before yesterday
na daraja moja limevunjika. there was a big rain, and one
bridge was washed out.

Butler

Sasa nitafikaje Bagamoyo? Now how shall I get to Bagamoyo?

Hamisi

gogo (MA) log

Utaweza kufika kwa sababu watu You will be able to get there because
wameweka magogo, na motokaa inaweza they've put logs [there], and a car
kupita hapo polepole. can cross there [by going] very
slowly.

2.

A. N-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri Njia hiyo ilikuwa nzuri. That road was good.

~refu	Njia hiyo ilikuwa ndefu.	That road was long.
~kubwa	Njia hiyo ilikuwa kubwa.	That road was big.
~pya	Njia hiyo ilikuwa mpya.	That road was new.

B. LI-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa zuri.	That bowl was good.
~bovu	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa bovu.	That bowl was unfit for use.
~kubwa	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa kubwa.	That bowl was large.
~pya	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa jipya.	That bowl was new.
~chafu	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa chafu.	That bowl was dirty.
~eusi	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa jeusi.	That bowl was black.
~zito	Bakuli hilo lilikuwa zito.	That bowl was heavy.

C. M-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Mto huo ulikuwa mzuri.	That pillow was good.
~kubwa	Mto huo ulikuwa mkubwa.	That pillow was big.
~bovu	Mto huo ulikuwa mbovu.	That pillow was in a bad shape.
~pya	Mto huo ulikuwa mpya.	That pillow was new.
~chafu	Mto huo ulikuwa mchafu.	That pillow was dirty.
safi	Mto huo ulikuwa safi.	That pillow was clean.
~eupe	Mto huo ulikuwa mweupe.	That pillow was white.

D. MI-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mizuri.	Those pillows were good.
~bovu	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mibovu.	Those pillows were in bad shape.
~pya	Mito hiyo ilikuwa mipya.	Those pillows were new.
~chafu	Mito hiyo ilikuwa michafu.	Those pillows were dirty.
~eupe	Mito hiyo ilikuwa myeupe.	Those pillows were white.

E. U-class forms of some adjectives.

~zuri	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̄zuri.	That board was good.
~zito	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̄zito.	That board was heavy.
~bovu	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̄bovu.	That board was rotten.
~pya	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̄pya.	That board was new.
~eusi	Ubao huo ulikuwa m̄eusi.	That board was black.

3.

A. Switching tense.

↓	Watu wameweka magogo.	People have put logs in place.
kesho	Watu wataweka magogo kesho.	People will put logs in place tomorrow.
sasa	Watu wanaweka magogo sasa.	People are putting logs in place now.
jana	Watu waliweka magogo jana.	People put logs in place yesterday.
bado	Watu hawajaweka magogo bado.	People haven't put logs in place yet.
waambie	Waambie watu waweke magogo.	Tell people to put logs in place.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Atafika Bagamoyo kesho.	He will arrive at Bagamoyo tomorrow.
jana	Alifika Bagamoyo jana.	He arrived at Bagamoyo yesterday.
tayari	Amekwisha fika Bagamoyo tayari.	He has arrived at Bagamoyo already.
bado	Hajafika Bagamoyo bado.	He hasn't arrived at Bagamoyo yet.

jana Hakufika Bagamoyo jana.

He didn't arrive at Bagamoyo
yesterday.

C. Switching tenses.



Atajaza chumba mapambo
kesho.

He will fill the room with
furniture tomorrow.

sasa Anajaza chumba mapambo sasa.

He is filling the room with
furniture now.

jana Alijaza chumba mapambo jana.

He filled the room with
furniture yesterday.

wapi Aliyejaza chumba mapambo
yuko wapi?

Where is the one who filled the
room with furniture?

sasa Anayejaza chumba mapambo
yuko wapi?

Where is the one who is filling
the room with furniture?

Unit 106

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler

Je, mbele hakuna hatari nyingine?

Say, is there any danger ahead?

Hamisi

ajabu (N)

a surprise

Sijui, lakini si ajabu daraja la

I don't know, but I wouldn't be

Mapinga pia limsharibika.

surprised if the Mapinga bridge

is out as well.

ButlerNaweza kupata mtu mmoja wa kufuatana
naye?Can I get someone to go along with
me? ('one person to travel with
him')Hamisi

iwapo

in case, if

shida (N)

difficulty

Ndiyo. Mimi mwenyewe nitaweza
kufuatana nawe na kukusaidia
iwapo utapatwa na shida.Yes, I myself will be able to go
with you and help you if you meet
difficulty.Butler

Vema. Asante sana.

Good! Thanks a lot!

Hamisi

hali (N)

condition

Kabla ya kuondoka inafaa uangalie kama gari limo katika hali nzuri.	Before leaving it's a good thing for you to check whether the car is in good shape.
---	---

Butler

Bila shaka, hata petroli nitaangalia pia.	By all means. I'll also see to the petrol.
--	---

2.

A. Si ajabu...

kuharibu	Si ajabu gari lake limeharibika.	It's no wonder his vehicle is broken down.
kutengeneza	Si ajabu gari lake limetengenezwa.	It's no wonder his vehicle is repaired.
kuzuza	Si ajabu gari lake limeuzwa.	It's no wonder his vehicle is sold.
hali	Si ajabu gari lake limo katika hali nzuri.	It's no wonder his vehicle is in good condition.

B. ~enyewe.

mimi	Mimi mwenyewe nitakwenda nawe.	I myself will go with you.
yeye	Yeye mwenyewe atakwenda nawe.	He himself will go with you.
sisi	Sisi wenyewe tutakwenda nawe.	We ourselves will go with you.
wao	Wao wenyewe watakwenda nawe.	They themselves will go with you.

C. na with personal pronouns.

sisi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nasi.	Father himself will go along with us.
------	-----------------------------------	--

wewe	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nawe.	Father himself will go along with us.
yeye	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana naye.	Father himself will go along with her.
ninyi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nanyi.	Father himself will go along with you (pl).
wao	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nao.	Father himself will go along with them.
mimi	Baba mwenyewe atafuatana nam.	Father himself will go along with me.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Mbele naona magari.	I see vehicles ahead.
jana	Mbele niliona magari jana.	I saw vehicles ahead yesterday.
hapana	Mbele sikuona magari jana.	I didn't see vehicles ahead yesterday.
bado	Mbele sijaona magari bado.	I haven't seen any vehicles ahead yet.

B. Questions included in a larger sentence.

gari	Gari limo katika hali nzuri? Inafaa uangalie kama gari limo katika hali nzuri.	Is the vehicle in good condition? You'd better check whether the vehicle is in good condition.
vifungo	Vifungo vimo sandukuni? Inafaa uangalie kama vifungo vimo sandukuni.	Are the buttons in the box? You'd better check if the buttons are in the box.
hatari	Kuna hatari nyingine mbele?	Is there other danger ahead?
miiba	Kuna miiba mingi njiani?	Are there many thorns on the road?

Unit 107

1. Basic Dialogue. In a shoe store.

Patel

Karibu, bwana.

Come in, sir!

Je, unataka viatu vya aina gani?

What kind of shoes do you want?

Butler

Ngoja niangalie kwanza.

Wait and let me look first.

Je, mna viatu vya Bata?

Do you have Bata shoes?

Patel

Oh, ndiyo, tunavyo katika rangi

Oh yes, we have them in two colors:

mbili: nyeusi na nyekundu.

black and brown.

Unataka vipi, basi?

Which do you want?

Butler

hebu

'well, then!'

mwundo (MI)

shape, form

chini (N)

below, under

Hebu nione mwundo huo chini ya
viatu vyekundu; pia mwundo huu
hapa.

Well, then, let me see that style
under the brown shoes; also this
style here.

Patel

Nitakuonyesha, bwana!

I'll show [them] to you, sir!

2.

A. Chini

kucheza Watoto wanacheza chini.

The children are playing on the ground.

kuanguka	Mkasi umeanguka chini.	A pair of scissors has fallen down.
kuangusha	Hamisi aliangusha sabuni chini.	Hamisi dropped soap on the ground.
kiko	Kikapu kiko chini.	The basket is on the ground.

B. Negative relative, present tense.

shati	Nataka shati lisiloraruka upesi.	I want a shirt that doesn't get torn easily.
mashati	Nataka mashati yasiyoraruka upesi.	I want shirts that don't get torn easily.
suruali	Nataka suruali isiyoraruka upesi.	I want trousers that don't get torn easily.
nguo	Nataka nguo isiyoraruka upesi.	I want a dress that doesn't get torn easily.
chandalua	Nataka chandalua kisichoraruka upesi.	I want a mosquito net that doesn't get torn easily.
vyandalua	Nataka vyandalua visivyoraruka upesi.	I want mosquito nets that don't get torn easily.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Tunavyo katika rangi tatu.	We have them in three colors.
jana	Tulikuwa navyo katika rangi tatu.	We had them in three colors.
kesho	Tutakuwa navyo katika rangi tatu.	We will have them in three colors.
sasa	Tunavyo katika rangi tatu.	We have them in three colors.

B. Switching tenses.

	↓ Wana viatu vya Bata.	They have Bata shoes.
kesho	Watakuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They will have Bata shoes.
jana	Walikuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They had Bata shoes.
hapana	Hawakuwa na viatu vya Bata.	They didn't have Bata shoes.

C. Switching tenses.

	↓ Mariamu anataka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamamu wants brown shoes.
kesho	Mariamamu atataka viatu vyekundu kesho.	Mariamamu will want brown shoes tomorrow.
hapana	Mariamamu hatataka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamamu will not want brown shoes.
jana	Mariamamu hakutaka viatu vyekundu.	Mariamamu did not want brown shoes.

D. Switching tenses.

	↓ Sanduku hili limejaa viatu.	This box is full of shoes.
jana	Sanduku hili lilikuwa limejaa viatu jana.	This box was full of shoes yesterday.
kesho	Sanduku hili litakuwa limejaa viatu kesho.	This box will be full of shoes tomorrow.
sasa	Sanduku hili limejaa viatu sasa.	This box is full of shoes now.
wapi?	Sanduku lililokuwa limejaa viatu liko wapi?	Where is the box that was full of shoes?

Conversation Starters

1. A and B discuss preparations for a cross-country trip.
2. Improvise several conversations beginning with the question 'Utafanya nini kesho?'

Unit 108

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler

jozi (N)

pair

soli

sole

~embamba

narrow, delicate, thin

Bei gani jozi hii yenye soli

How much [is] this pair with thin

nyembamba?

soles?

Patel

Shilingi thelathini na tisa tu.

Only 39 shillings.

Butler

Na hii jozi nyingine?

And this other pair?

Patel

kuliko

where there is, than

Hii ni shilingi arobaini na sita,

These are 46 shillings, sir, because

bwana, kwa sababu jozi hii ni

this style is more attractive than

nzuri zaidi kuliko hii.

this [other].

Butler

mno

much

Lakini, bwana, bei yake ni ghali mno. But sir, their price is very high.

Patel

hafifu

poor in quality

bora

best

Ndiyo. Unajua, kitu bora siku zote
ni ghali zaidi kuliko kitu hafifu.

Yes, you know the best (thing) is
always more expensive than the
low-quality stuff.

2.

A. Kinds of soles.

nyembamba Nataka viatu vyenye soli
nyembamba.

I want the shoes with thin soles.

ngumu Nataka viatu vyenye soli
ngumu.

I want the shoes with hard soles.

laini Nataka viatu vyenye soli
laini.

I want the shoes with soft soles.

nzito Nataka viatu vyenye soli
nzito.

I want the shoes with heavy soles.

mpira Nataka viatu vyenye soli
ya mpira.

I want the shoes with rubber soles.

ngozi Nataka viatu vyenye soli
ya ngozi.

I want the shoes with leather soles.

B. Comparisons with kuliko.

mzigo Mzigo huu ni mzito kuliko
huu.

This load is heavier than that.

mizigo Mizigo hii ni mizito kuliko
hii.

These loads are heavier than those.

kikapu Kikapu hiki ni kizito .
kuliko hiki.

This basket is heavier than this.

vikapu Vikapu hivi ni vizito
kuliko hivi.

These baskets are heavier than these.

gogo Gogo hili ni zito kuliko
hili.

This log is heavier than this.

magogo	Magogo haya ni mazito kuliko haya.	These logs are heavier than these.
ndege	Ndege huyu ni mzito kuliko huyu.	This bird is heavier than this.
meza	Meza hii ni nzito kuliko hii.	This table is heavier than this.
ubao	Ubao huu ni mzito kuliko huu.	This board is heavier than this.

C. Comparison with zaidi kuliko.

mimi	Juma asema Kiswahili vizuri zaidi kuliko mimi.	Juma speaks Swahili better than I.
wewe	Juma asema Kiswahili vizuri zaidi kuliko wewe.	Juma speaks Swahili better than you.

Daudi sisi ninyi wengine

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Bei ya viatu ni ghali mno.	The price of shoes is exceedingly high.
mwaka ujao	Bei ya viatu itakuwa ghali mno mwaka ujao.	The price of shoes will be exceedingly high next year.
mwaka uliopita	Bei ya viatu ilikuwa ghali mno mwaka uliopita.	The price of shoes was exceedingly high last year.
hapana	Bei ya viatu haikuwa ghali mwaka uliopita.	The price of shoes was not exceedingly high last year.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Niko katika darasa la tano.	I am in the fifth grade.
mwaka ujao	Mwaka ujao, nitakuwa katika darasa la tano.	Next year, I will be in the fifth grade.

mwaka uliopita	Mwaka uliopita, nilikuwa katika darasa la tano.	Last year, I was in the fifth grade.
bado	Bado sijawa katika darasa la tano.	I'm not in the fifth grade yet.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Alikuwa Mbeya.	He was at Mbeya.
ni nani	Ni nani aliyekuwa Mbeya?	Who was at Mbeya?
ujao	Ni nani atakayekuwa Mbeya mwaka ujao?	Who will be at Mbeya next year?
uliopita	Ni nani aliyekuwa Mbeya mwaka uliopita?	Who was at Mbeya last year?
sasa	Ni nani aliye Mbeya sasa?	Who is at Mbeya now?

Unit 109

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Butler

Hivi hapa je?

What about these here?

Patel

sawa

like

Bei ya viatu hivi ni sawa na bei ya
jozi hii.The price of these shoes is the same
as the price of those.ButlerHivi si ghali kama vile! Unavyo
vyeusi?These are not so expensive as those.
Do you have them [in] black?Patel

Ndiyo.

Yes [we have]!

ButlerAha, hivyo ndivyo viatu nivitakavyo!
Lakini, nipunguzie bei kidogo bwana.Aha! These are the shoes that I want.
But reduce the price a little for me,
sir.PatelTuna bei moja tu; hatupunguzi wala
hatuzidishi.We have only one price; we don't
lower or increase [our prices].Butler

Haidhuru! Nipatie kwa bei hiyo hiyo.

No matter. Give it to me at that
price.Patel

Vyema!

Fine!

Notes

A. The negative word wala.

hatupunguzi wala hatuzidishi we neither lower nor raise [prices]

The word wala between two negative verbs corresponds to English 'neither ...nor...'

2.

A. ndi() plus noun plus relative of a-tense.

viatu	Hivyo ndivyo viatu nivitakavyo!	Those are the shoes that I want.
kitambaa	Hicho ndicho kitambaa nikitakacho!	That is the handkerchief that I want.
mfuko	Huo ndio mfuko niutakao!	That is the bag that I want.
mifuko	Hiyo ndiyo mifuko niitakayo!	Those are the bags that I want.
panga	Hilo ndilo panga nilitakalo!	That's the panga that I want.
mapanga	Hayo ndiyo mapanga niyatakayo!	Those are the pangas that I want.
sabuni	Hiyo ndiyo sabuni niitakayo!	That's the soap that I want.
shuka	Hiyo ndiyo shuka niitakayo!	That's the sheet that I want.
wino	Huo ndio wino niutakao!	That's the ink that I want.

B. ndi () plus noun plus relative of a-tense.

vifungo	Hivi ndivyo vifungo tuvipendavyo.	These are the buttons that we like.
kitabu	Hiki ndicho kitabu tukipendacho.	This is the book that we like.
mpango	Huu ndio mpango tuupendao.	This is the plan that we like.

mahali	Hapa ndipo mahali tupapendapo.	This is the place that we like.
godoro	Hili ndilo godoro tulipendalo.	This is the mattress that we like.
matunda	Haya ndiyo matunda tuyapendayo.	This is the fruit that we like.
urefu	Huu ndio urefu tuupendao.	This is the length that we like.
mbegu	Hizi ndizo mbegu tuzipendazo.	These are the seeds that we like.
shuka	Hii ndiyo shuka tuipendayo.	This is the sheet that we like.

3.

A. wala

kupunguza	Wanapunguza bei? Hawapunguzi wala hawazidishi.	Do they reduce the price? They neither lower nor increase.
kuzuza	Wanauza maharagwe? Hawauzi wala hawamunui.	Do they sell beans? They neither sell nor buy.
kwenda	Wanakwenda? Hawaendi wala hawaji.	Do they go? They don't go nor come.
kulima	Wanalima? Hawalimi wala hawapalili.	Do they cultivate? They don't cultivate nor weed.

B. Switching tenses.

	↓ Wamezidisha nauli ya gari la moshi.	They have increased the train fare.
mwezi uliopita	Walizidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi uliopita.	They increased the train fare last month.
ujao	Watazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi ujao.	They will increase the train fare next month.

hapana	Hawatazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi mwezi ujao.	They will not increase the train fare next month.
bado	Bado hawajazidisha nauli ya gari la moshi.	They haven't yet increased the train fare.
C. Adjective antonyms.		
ghali	Viatu hivi ni ghali kama vile? Hapana, vile ni rahisi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as expensive as those? No, those are cheaper than these.
~gumu	Viatu hivi ni vigumu kama vile? Hapana, vile ni laini zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as tough as those? No, those are softer than these.
~zuri	Viatu hivi ni vizuri kama vile? Hapana, vile ni vibaya zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as beautiful as those? No, those are uglier than these.
~chafu	Viatu hivi ni vichafu kama vile? Hapana, vile ni safi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as dirty as those? No, those are cleaner than these.
~zito	Viatu hivi ni vizito kama vile? Hapana, vile ni vyepesi zaidi kuliko hivi.	Are these shoes just as heavy as those? No, those are lighter than these.

Conversation Starters

1. Buy a pair of shoes or a hat. Discuss the price, and also the qualities of the merchandise.

Unit 110

1. Basic Dialogue. I live in the country.

Abasi

Bwana Mirambo, siku hizi unaishi
wapi?

(Mr.) Mirambo, where are you living
these days?

Mirambo

Ninaishi shamba, bwana.

I'm living on a farm (sir).

Abasi

Nyumba yako iko mahali gani huko
shamba?

Where is your house there on the
farm?

Mirambo

mlima (MI)

mountain

mpaka (MI)

boundary

kati

between, among

Ikiwa watoka mjini, iko chini ya
mlima kati ya mpaka wa jimbo letu
na lenu.

If you leave the city, it is below the
mountain between the boundary of our
province and yours.

Abasi

nyuma (N)

after, on far side of

mwitu (MI)

forest

mtu (MI)

river

Nyuma ya mlima huo kuna mwitu na
mtu vile vile?

On the far side of that mountain are
there also a forest and a river?

Mirambo

Hasa!

Right!

2.

A. Kati

nyumba	Mpaka uko kati ya nyumba yetu na yao.	The boundary is between our house and theirs.
shamba	Mpaka uko kati ya shamba letu na lao.	The boundary is between our shamba and theirs.
kijiji	Mpaka uko kati ya kijiji chetu na chao.	The boundary is between our village and theirs.
mji	Mpaka uko kati ya mji wetu na wao.	The boundary is between our town and theirs.

3.

A. Relative forms, past tense, agreeing with object of verb.

pombe	Alikunywa pombe. Pombe aliyoinywa ilikuwa mbaya.	He drank beer. The beer that he drank was bad.
maji	Alikunywa maji. Maji aliyoyanywa yalikuwa mabaya.	He drank water. The water that he drank was bad.
chai	Alikunywa chai. Chai aliyoinywa ilikuwa mbaya.	He drank tea. The tea that he drank was bad.
maziwa	Alikunywa maziwa. Maziwa aliyoyanywa yalikuwa mabaya.	He drank milk. The milk that he drank was bad.
kinywaji	Alikunywa kinywaji. Kinywaji alichokinywa kilikuwa kibaya.	He took a beverage. The beverage he took was bad.
uji	Alikunywa uji. Uji aliounywa ulikuwa mbaya.	He drank gruel. The gruel that he drank was bad.

B. Relative past, agreeing with object of verb.

kisu	Alinunua kisu jana. Leo amejiuiza kwa kisu alichokinunua jana.	He bought a knife yesterday. Today, he hurt himself with the knife which he bought yesterday.
panga	Alinunua panga jana. Leo amejiuiza kwa panga alilolinunua jana.	He bought a panga yesterday. He hurt himself with the panga which he bought yesterday.
jembe	Alinunua jembe jana. Leo amejiuiza kwa jembe alilolinunua jana.	He bought a hoe yesterday. He hurt himself today with the hoe which he bought yesterday.
uma	Alinunua uma jana. Leo amejiuiza kwa uma alioununua jana.	He bought a fork yesterday. He hurt himself with the fork which he bought yesterday.
kalamu	Alinunua kalamu jana. Leo amejiuiza kwa kalamu aliyoininunua jana.	He bought a pen yesterday. He hurt himself with the pen which he bought yesterday.

READING SELECTION VI

Chama cha Wafanyi Kazi

Kama tunavyojua, wafanyi kazi hunung'unika katika kazi zao. Pengine wananung'unika kwa ajili ya mshahara au pengine juu ya saa za kazi. Wakipeleka au wakituma mashtaka kwa bwana mkubwa wao, kwa kawaida mjumbe huwa taabuni.

Katika miaka kumi au kumi na mitano iliyopita, wafanyi kazi wa Kenya walijiunga katika vyama mbali mbali. Madereva wote walianzisha chama chao. Wapishi, waalimu, wapagazi, na kadhalika, wote walifanya vyama vyao. Waliwachagua viongozi wao wenyewe, kama vile, mwenye kiti, mwandishi mkuu, na mweka hazina.

Walichanga pesa hata wakajenga afisi zao wenyewe--mahali pa kukutania. Wanachama wa vyama hivi mbali mbali walikusanyika wakachagua mkubwa wao, ambaye ndiye aliyekuwa mtu wa kuwaongoza wakati wanapogoma.

Pakiwa na mabishano juu ya mshahara kati ya wafanyi kazi na wakuu wa kazi, yule mkubwa wao humwendea mkuu wa kazi na kuwasemea wafanya kazi wote.

Sasa tunacho chama kikubwa sana cha wafanyi kazi wa kila aina katika nchi ya Kenya.

MaswaliMajibu

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Wafanyi kazi hunung'unika juu ya vitu gani? | Juu ya mshahara au juu ya saa za kazi. |
| 2. Ukitaka mshahara zaidi utamwambia nani? | Utamwambia mwenye kazi. |
| 3. Wajumbe wako taabuni? | Ndiyo, wakubwa wa kazi hawawapendi wajumbe. |
| 4. Tangu lini wafanyi kazi wa Kenya wakajiunga pamoja? | Tangu miaka kumi hivi iliyopita. |
| 5. Walijiungaje? | Walifanya vyama mbali mbali. |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. Ni watu gani waliofanya vyama? | Watu kama, madereva, wapishi,
makarani na kadhalika. |
| 7. Walichanga pesa za nini? | Za kujengea afisi na vyombo vya
kuandikia. |
| 8. Wanao wakubwa wao? | Ndiyo, waliwachagua viongozi wao. |
| 9. Wafanyi kazi wasipopata maongezo
ya mshahara wanafanya je? | Wanagoma. |
| 10. Kwa muda gani? | Mpaka viongozi watulize
manung'uniko. |
| 11. Wafanyi kazi wa Amerika hugoma? | Ndiyo. |
| 12. Nani mkubwa wa Idara ya Kazi
katika Amerika? | Bwana _____. |

Vocabulary

(ma)bishano (MA)	dispute, quarrel
-chagua	to choose, elect
chama (VI)	club, union, party
-changa	to collect
-goma	to strike (work)
-jenga	to build
kiongozi (VI pers)	leader
-kusanyika	to be gathered together
-ongoza	to lead
(ma)shtaka (MA)	accusation, complaint
taabu (N)	trouble, distress

Unit 111

1. Basic Dialogue (continued)

Abasi

Napajua mahali hapo!

I know that place!

Mirambo

zamani

time, ancient times

ovyo

at random, carelessly

ardhi (N)

soil

Zamani, pale palikuwa pa ovyo, ingawa
ardhi yake ilikuwa nzuri.

In early times, that place was a mess,
even though the soil was good.

Abasi

ajili (N)

cause, reason, sake

akili (N)

ability, intelligence

~erevu

shrewd, clever

Sasa bwana ni pazuri kabisa, kwa
ajili ya akili na werevu wa
wenyeji wa pale.

Now, it's quite lovely, because of
the intelligence and cleverness of
the inhabitants of the place.

Mirambo

Wamefanya nini?

What have they done?

Abasi

~vivu

lazy

wivu

jealousy, envy

Unajua, wao si wavivu, pia hawana
wivu.

You know, they are not lazy, nor are
they envious.

fitina (N)

discord

heshima (N)

respect

Ingawa wana fitina, wanayo heshima.

Although they have discords yet they
respect one another.Abasi

Hali ya hewa, je?

How is the weather?

Mirambo

baridi (N)

coldness

ila

except, unless, but

barafu (N)

ice

Huko kuna baridi, ila alimani
hakuna barafu.There it is cold, but there is no
frost in the mountains.NotesA. Further examples of pa concords.

Pale palikuwa pa ovyo.

Napajua mahali hapo.

Note the example of pa-class concords in these sentences.B. Concessive verb forms with -nge-.Ingawa wana fitina,
wanayo heshima.Although they have discord,
they have respect [for one
another].Kama ningekuwa na maji ya
moto, ningesafisha vyombo.If I had hot water, I would
wash the dishes.

Kama ningejua, ningemwambia.

If I knew, I would tell him.

The prefix -nge- occurs between the subject and object prefixes. Its meaning, however, is not related primarily to time, but to the fact that the

condition described by the verb is not realized. Verb forms with this prefix thus correspond to English phrases beginning with although, even though, etc.

Negative counterparts of the above forms may be formed with the prefix -si-:

Kama nisingejua ...	If I didn't know ...
	[but I do know].

C. Concessive forms with -ngali-.

Kama ningalikuwa na maji ya moto, ningalisafisha vyombo.	If I had had hot water, I would have washed the dishes.
---	--

Kama nisingalijua...	If I had not known ... [but I did know].
----------------------	---

Parallel to the affirmative and negative forms with -nge-, there exists a set of forms with -ngali-. The latter set of forms are supposed to refer to contrary-to-fact condition in the past, while the -nge- forms are supposed to be used only for contrary-to-fact condition in the present. It is recommended that the student observe this distinction, which is a part of Standard Swahili, even though Ashton (p. 187) states that 'in actual practice there is considerable laxity in the use of -nge- and -ngali-,' and Perrott (p. 53) goes further, saying that 'in actual practice, few natives make this distinction consistently; they are as uncertain about the use of -nge- and -ngali- as many English people are about the use of should and would.

2.

A. heshima kwa

wazazi	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa wazazi wetu.	If it's proper to show respect to our parents.
ye	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwake.	It's proper to show respect to him.
serikali	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa serikali yetu.	It's proper to show respect to our government.
walimu	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa walimu wetu.	It's proper to show respect to our teachers.

kanisa	Inafaa kuwa na heshima kwa wakuu wa kanisa.	It's proper to show respect to the church elders.
--------	---	---

B. fitina na.

mimi	Juma alikuwa na fitina nami.	Juma had a quarrel with me.
wewe	Juma alikuwa na fitina naye.	Juma had a quarrel with him.
mama	Juma alikuwa na fitina na mama yake.	Juma had a quarrel with his mother.
mchumba	Juma alikuwa na fitina na mchumba wake.	Juma had a quarrel with his fiancée.

C. wivu juu ya

mimi	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu yangu.	Hasani was jealous of me.
sisi	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu yetu.	Hasani was jealous of us.
nyumba	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya nyumba yetu.	Hasani was jealous of our house.
mchumba	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya mchumba wa rafiki yake.	Hasani was jealous of his friend's girl friend.
motokaa	Hasani alikuwa na wivu juu ya motokaa ya rafiki yake.	Hasani was jealous of his friend's car.

D. ila

-ita	Nimewaita watoto wote ila Daudi.	I have called all the children except Daudi.
-saida	Nimewasaidia watoto wote ila Daudi.	I have helped all of them except Daudi.
-ona	-piga	

3.

A. ingawa.

werevu	Haruni ana werevu mkubwa. Ingawa Haruni ana werevu mkubwa, hawezi kusoma.	Haruni has great shrewdness. Though Haruni has great shrewdness, he can't read.
chai	Haruni anywa chai nyingi. Ingawa Haruni anywa chai nyingi, hanywi kahawa.	Haruni drinks a lot of tea. Though Haruni drinks lots of tea, he doesn't drink coffee.
maembe	Haruni apenda sana maembe. Ingawa Haruni apenda maembe sana, hawezi kuyala.	Haruni likes mangoes very much. Though Haruni likes mangoes very much, he can't eat them.
kuenea	Shati hili halinienei. Ingawa shati hili halinienei, nitalinunua.	This shirt does not fit me. Though this shirt doesn't fit me I will buy it.

B. yu.

kulima	Juma alima vizuri sana. Yu mwerevu kwa kulima.	Juma cultivates very well. He is clever in cultivating.
kuotesha	Juma aotesha vitunguu vizuri sana. Yu hodari kwa kuotesha vitunguu.	Juma grows very good onions. He is clever in growing onions.
kupanda	Juma apanda viazi vizuri sana.	Juma plants very good potatoes.
kutengeneza	Juma atengeneza baiskeli vizuri sana.	Juma repairs bicycles very well.

C. The -nge tense.

kusafisha	Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningesafisha vyombo.	If I had hot water, I would wash the dishes.
kufua	Kama ningekuwa na maji ya moto, ningefua nguo zangu.	If I had hot water, I would wash my clothes.

kutengeneza Kama ningekuwa na maji ya If I had hot water, I would make
moto, ningetengeneza coffee.
kahawa.

D. The -ngali tense.

mimi Sikujua kuwa utakuja jana. I didn't know that you would come
yesterday.

Kama ningalijua kuwa utakuja, If I had known that you were
nisingaliondoka nyumbani. coming, I would not have left
the house.

wewe Hukuja jana. You didn't come yesterday.

Kama ungalikuja, If you had come, I would not
nisingaliondoka nyumbani. have left the house.

mvua Mvua haikunyeshwa jana. The rain didn't fall yesterday.

Kama ingalinyesha, If it had rained, I would not
nisingaliondoka nyumbani. have left the house.

Conversation Starters

1. A and B discuss a mountainous area that A has visited recently.
2. Talk about the topography and climate of an area where you have lived for some time.

Unit 112

1. Basic Dialogue. You'd better not go hunting without a license.

Abasi

Mnafanya kazi gani huko shamba?

What kind of work do you do there on
the farm?

Mirambo

biashara (N)

trade, commerce

vilevile

just the same, likewise

-winda

to hunt

bunduki (N)

gun

Tunalima na kufanya biashara.

We hunt and carry on trade. Also

Vilevile kuwinda, kwa sababu wengi

hunting, because many of us have

tuna bunduki.

guns.

Abasi

cheti (VI)

certificate

Nadhani ni lazima ukate cheti ukitaka
kuwinda, au sivyo?

I think it's necessary that you get a
license if you want to hunt. Or
isn't that so?

Mirambo

-shtaki

to accuse, prosecute

baraza (N)

verandah, place of public
council

Hakika. Ukiwinda pasipo cheti
utashtakiwa barazani.

Certainly, if you hunt without a
license you will be prosecuted in
court.

Abasi

Lakini, nani atajua kuwa huna cheti? But, who will know that you don't have
a license?

Mirambo

ajabu (N or MA) amazement

askari (WA) policeman

Askari! Ni ajabu kwamba wanajua A policeman! It's amazing that they
nani amekata cheti na nani know who has gotten a license and
hakukata. who hasn't.

2.

A. pasipo.

jembe Ukijaribu kulima pasipo If you try to cultivate without a
jembe, utapatwa na shida. hoe, you'll find it difficult.

uma Ukijaribu kulima pasipo If you try to cultivate without a
uma, utapatwa na shida. rake, you'll find it difficult.

mbolea mbegu njema

B. bila

baiskeli Huwezi kununua baiskeli You can't buy this bicycle without
hii bila fedha nyingi. a lot of money.

motokaa Huwezi kununua motokaa hii You can't buy this motor car
bila fedha nyingi. without a lot of money.

vitabu jiko kitanda

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓ Mama alipelekwa hospitali My mother was taken to the hospital
jana. yesterday.

kesho	Mama atapelekwa hospitali kesho.	My mother will be taken to the hospital tomorrow.
tutafanya nini	Mama akipelekwa hospitali, tutafanya nini?	If my mother is taken to the hospital, what shall we do?
lázima	Ni lázima mama apelekwe hospitalini.	My mother must be taken to the hospital.
jana	Mama alipelekwa hospitali jana.	My mother was taken to the hospital yesterday.
ndiye	Mama ndiye aliyepelekwa hospitali jana.	It was my mother who was taken to the hospital yesterday.
kesho	Mama ndiye atakayepelekwa hospitali kesho.	It's my mother who will be taken to the hospital tomorrow.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Yeye ni mgonjwa sana.	He is very sick.
tutafanya nini	Yeye akiwa mgonjwa sana, tutafanya nini?	If he is very sick, what shall we do?
jana	Yeye alikuwa mgonjwa sana.	He was very sick.
sasa	Yeye ni mgonjwa sana sasa.	He is very sick now.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye aliyekuwa mgonjwa sana.	He is the one who was sick.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Anatumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	He hopes to continue with his studies.
mwaka uliopita	Mwaka uliopita, alitumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	Last year, he hoped to continue with his studies.
hapana	Mwaka uliopita, hakutumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	Last year, he didn't hope to continue with his studies.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye ambaye hakutumaini kuendelea katika masomo.	He is the one who didn't hope to continue with his studies.

Unit 113

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Mirambo

m̄jomba (WA)

kinship term used reciprocally
by brother and son of a woman

bahati (N)

luck (good or bad)

Mwaka jana, m̄jomba wangu alipata
bahati mbaya, bwana.

Last year, my m̄jomba had some bad
luck.

Abasi

Bahati gani?

What kind?

Mirambo

badala (N)

a substitute

m̄nyama (WA)

animal

-vua

to fish

bahari (N)

sea, ocean

Badala ya kupata cheti cha kuwinda
wanyama m̄wituni, alipewa cha
kuvua samaki baharini.

Instead of getting a license for
hunting game in the forest, he was
given one for fishing in the sea.

Abasi

Ilikuwaaje?

How did that happen?

Mirambo

hati (N)

document

Kwa sababu, hakuwa na hati ya
kumwezesha kukata cheti cha
kuwinda.

Because he didn't have the document
to enable him to get a hunting
license.

Abasi

Kama akija kuishi kwetu atafurahi, kwa sababu ni vyepesi kupata cheti cha kuwinda huko.	If he comes to live at our place, he will be glad, because it is easy to get a hunting license there.
---	---

2.

A. Ki-tense; lázima with subjunctive.

kuwinda Ukihitaji cheti cha kuwinda, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a hunting license, you must get a written note from the District Office.
kuvua Ukihitaji cheti cha kuvua, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a fishing license, you must get a written note from the District Office.
njia Ukihitaji cheti cha njia, lázima upate hati kutoka bomani.	If you need a road license, you must get a written note from the District Office.

B. badala ya

uma Umeleta uma badala ya kijiko.	You have brought a fork instead of a spoon.
bakuli Umeleta bakuli badala ya kikapu.	You have brought a bowl instead of a basket.
panga Umeleta panga badala ya kisu.	You have brought a big knife instead of a knife (ordinary).
shuka Umeleta shuka badala ya kitambaa.	You have brought a sheet instead of a piece of cloth.
thúmni Umeleta thúmni badala ya shilingi.	You have brought a fifty cent piece (E. African) instead of a shilling.

C. Location with -ni.

bahari	Niliangusha ufunguo baharini.	I dropped the key into the sea.
mwitu	Niliangusha ufunguo mwituni.	I dropped the key in the forest.
chini	Niliangusha ufunguo chini.	I dropped the key on the ground.
nto	maji ua nyasi	

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Anakuja kuishi kwetu.	He is coming to live at our place.
uliopita	Alikuja kuishi kwetu mwezi uliopita.	He came to live at our place last month.
ujao	Atakuja kuishi kwetu mwezi ujao.	He is coming to live at our place next month.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye atakayekuja kuishi kwetu mwezi ujao.	He is the one who is coming to live at our place next month.
uliopita	Yeye ndiye aliyekuja kuishi kwetu mwezi uliopita.	He is the one who came to live at our place last month.

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Unapata bahati mbaya siku hizi.	You are unlucky these days.
jana	Ulipata bahati mbaya jana.	You were unlucky yesterday.
hapana	Hukupata bahati mbaya jana.	You were not unlucky yesterday.
kesho	Hutapata bahati mbaya kesho.	You will not be unlucky tomorrow.
sasa	Hupati bahati mbaya sasa.	You are not unlucky now.

Unit 114

1. Basic Dialogue. Time to get up.

Asha

-cha

to dawn

-amka

to wake up

Juma, Juma, kumekucha bwana! Amka!

Juma, Juma, it's daybreak, Mister!

Get up!

Juma

mapema

early, soon

Sitaki kumka mapema hivi.

I don't want to get up so soon as all
this.Asha

dirisha (MA)

window

Hebu angalia dirishani, jua lawaka.

Please, will you look out the window!
The sun is shining.Juma

Tafadhali usiniamshesha sasa,

Please don't get me up now; I'll get
up later.

nitaamka baadaye.

Asha

-lala

to sleep, lie down

Wewe Juma u mivivu kweli, wapenda
kulala sana.You're really lazy, Juma. You really
like to sleep.Juma

-kasirika

to be angry

Unataka kunikasirisha bure tu.

You just want to make me angry for
nothing.

Asha

-uso (U-N)

face

-nawa

to wash face/hands

Utanawa uso kwa maji moto au baridi?

Are you going to wash your face with
hot water, or cold?

Juma

Kwa maji ya uvuguvugu.

With lukewarm water.

2.

A. Three verbs with subject prefix ku-.

kupambazuka Kumepambazuka.

Morning has come.

kucha Kumekucha.

It is dawn.

kuchwa Kumekuchwa.

The sun has set.

B. yu, u, ni, tu, ni plus adjective.

Juma Juma ya nivivu kweli.

Juma is really lazy.

wewe Wewe u nivivu kweli.

You are really lazy.

mimi Mimi ni nivivu kweli.

I am really lazy.

sisi Sisi tu wavivu kweli.

We are really lazy.

ninyi Ninyi ni wavivu kweli.

You are really lazy.

wao Wao ni wavivu kweli.

They are really lazy.

C. -wa na wivu

Juma Juma ana wivu sana.

Juma is very jealous.

wewe Wewe una wivu sana.

You are very jealous.

ninyi Ninyi nina wivu sana.

You are very jealous.

sisi mimi wao

3.

A. Stative vs. causative stems.

Kwa nini umekasirika?	Why are you angry?
Kwa sababu umenikasirisha.	Because you have annoyed me.
Kwa nini amekasirika?	Why are you (pl) angry?
Kwa sababu umetukasirisha.	Because you have annoyed us.
Kwa nini amekasirika?	Why is he angry?
Kwa sababu umemkasirisha.	Because you have annoyed him.
Kwa nini wamekasirika?	Why are they angry?
Kwa sababu umewakasirisha.	Because you have annoyed them.

B. Causative vs. causative-passive stems.

mimi	Sitaki kuanishwa mapema kesho. Usiniamshe mapema. Sitakuanisha mapema.	I do not want to be awakened early tomorrow. Don't wake me up early. I'll not wake you up early.
yeye	Hataki kuanishwa mapema kesho. Usimwamshu mapema. Sitamwamsha mapema.	He does not want to be awakened early tomorrow. Don't wake him up early. I'll not wake him up early.
sisi	Hatutaki kuanishwa mapema kesho. Usituamshu mapema. Sitawaamsheni mapema.	We do not want to be awakened early tomorrow. Don't wake us up early. I'll not wake you (pl) up early.
wao	Hawataki kuanishwa mapema kesho. Usiwaamshu mapema. Sitawaamsha mapema.	They do not want to be awakened early tomorrow. Don't wake them up early. I'll not wake them up early.

Unit 115

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Asha

udevu (U-N)

a hair of the face

-nyoa

to shave

Utanyoa ndevu leo?

Are you going to shave today?

Juma

kioo (VI)

mirror

wembe (U-N)

razor

Ndiyo, nipatie kioo na wembe.

Yes, get me the mirror and a razor.

Asha

-fagia

to sweep

Ukimaliza kunyoa utanisaidia

When you finish shaving, will you

kufagia?

help me sweep?

Juma

Hapana, anza kufagia sasa.

No, begin sweeping now.

Asha

vumbi (N)

dust

Hujali vumbi?

Don't you mind the dust?

Juma

Kwanza mwaga maji kidogo, kisha

First, sprinkle a little water, and

ufagie.

then sweep.

Asha

-oga

to bathe

mwili (MI)	body
~zima	whole
-kawia	to take a long time
Ninakwenda kuoga mwili mzima, sitakawia.	I'm going to take a bath; I won't be long.

Juma

m̄swaki (MI)	twig used as toothbrush
Na mimi nitapiga m̄swaki.	And I'm going to brush my teeth.

2.

A. -kawia plus infinitive.

kuoga	Kwa nini ulikawia kuoga?	Why did it take you long to bathe?
kunyoa	Kwa nini ulikawia kunyoa?	Why did it take you long to shave?
kuongea	Kwa nini ulikawia kuongea?	Why did it take you long to converse?
kutembea	Kwa nini ulikawia kutembea?	Why did it take you long to take a walk?
kulala	Kwa nini ulikawia kulala?	Why did it take you long to go to bed?
kupiga	Kwa nini ulikawia kupiga m̄swaki?	Why did it take you long to brush your teeth?

B. 'whole/all'

ng'ombe	Walikula ng'ombe mzima.	They ate the whole cow.
kuku	Walikula kuku mzima.	They ate the whole chicken.
mbuzi	Walikula mbuzi mzima.	They ate the whole goat.
nguruwe	Walikula nguruwe mzima.	The ate the whole pig.
nanasi	Walikula nanasi lote.	They ate the whole pineapple.
kabiji	Walikula kabiji yote.	They ate the whole cabbage.

C. ovyo-ovyo

kunyoa	Alijinyoa ovyo-ovyo.	He shaved himself carelessly.
kuoga	Alioga ovyo-ovyo.	He bathed himself carelessly.
kupiga	Alipiga meno mswaki ovyo-ovyo.	He brushed his teeth carelessly.
kuandika	Aliandika ovyo-ovyo.	He wrote carelessly.
kulima	Alilima shamba ovyo-ovyo.	He cultivated his farm carelessly.

3.

A. Plurals.

kioo	Nilipata kioo kipya. Twahitaji vicoo viwili zaidi.	I got a new mirror. We need two more mirrors.
wembe	Nilipata wembe mpya. Twahitaji nyembe mbili zaidi.	I got a new razor blade. We need two more razor blades.
uma	Nilipata uma mpya. Twahitaji nyuma mbili zaidi.	I got a new fork. We need two more forks.
ufagio	Nilipata ufagio mpya. Twahitaji fagio mbili zaidi.	I got a new broom. We need two more brooms.
kengele	Nilipata kengele mpya. Twahitaji kengele mbili zaidi.	I got a new bell. We need two more bells.
kitanda	Nilipata kitanda kipya. Twahitaji vitanda viwili zaidi.	I got a new bed. We need two more beds.
cheti	Nilipata cheti kipya. Twahitaji vyeti viwili zaidi.	I got a new certificate. We need two more certificates.

bunduki	Nilipata bunduki mpya. Twahitaji bunduki mbili zaidi.	I got a new rifle. We need two more rifles.
mswaki	Nilipata mswaki mpya. Twahitaji miswaki miwili zaidi.	I got a new tooth brush. We need two more tooth brushes.

Unit 116

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Hamisi

-ng'oa

to uproot

Chukua kofia yako tung'oke bwana.

Take your hat and let's be off.
(colloquial)Hadija

niende haja)	(Each is offensive to some speakers.)	toilet
niende msalani)		
nikimbie chooni)		
niende uani)		

Ngoja kidogo niende uani.

Wait a bit while I go to the toilet.

Hamisi

Nimesahau kupiga viatu rangi.

I forgot to shine my shoes.

Hadija

Viache, vyenyewe vyang'aa.

Leave them alone, they're shiny!

Hamisi

kiko (VI)

pipe

Kiko changu kiko wapi tena?

Now where is my pipe?

Hadija

-nuka

to smell bad

Waniuliza? Hata sikipendi.

(Why) do you ask me? I don't even
like it. It stinks.

Chanuka.

Hamisi

-nukia

to smell good

-fahamu

to know, bear in mind

Hakinuki, kinanukia, wafahamu?
Mimi nakwenda kazini. Kwa heri.

It doesn't stink. It smells good,
understand? I'm going to work.
Goodbye.

Hadija

Usiniache, nakuja.

Don't leave me. I'm coming.

2.

A. ka-tense

viatu Alirudi nyumbani akapiga
viatu rangi.

He went back home and shined his
shoes.

vidonge Alirudi nyumbani akapata
vidonge vya dawa.

He went back home and got pills.

nyama Alirudi nyumbani akapata
kipande cha nyama.

He went back home and got a piece
of meat.

chupa Alirudi nyumbani akapata
chupa ya pombe.

He went back home and got a bottle
of beer.

B. -ahidi kwamba plus future verb.

viatu Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia
viatu rangi.

He promised me that he would shine
my shoes.

nguo Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia
nguo pasi.

He promised me that he would iron
my clothes.

simu Aliniahidi kwamba atanipigia
simu.

He promised me that he would call
me on the phone.

sindano Aliniahidi kwamba atanipiga
sindano.

He promised me that he would give
me an injection.

C. ni-locatives

nto Twende tukasukume motokaa
kutoka mtoni.

Let's go and push the car from (in)
the river.

matope Twende tukasukume motokaa
kutoka matopeni.

Let's go and push the car from the
mud.

bonde Twende tukasukume motokaa
kutoka bondeni.

Let's go and push the car from the
valley.

barabara Twende tukasukume motokaa
kutoka barabarani.

Let's go and push the car from the
highway.

D. ki-tense followed by ta-tense.

msaada Ukihamia huko, utapata msaada.

If you move there, you will get
help.

nafuu Ukihamia huko, utapata nafuu.

If you move there, you will
recover.

matata kazi shamba

3.

A. -nuka vs. -nukia.

machungwa Machungwa mabovu yananuka.
Mazima yananukia.

Rotten oranges smell bad.
Good one smell good.

maembe Maembe mabovu yananuka.
Mazima yananukia.

Rotten mangoes smell bad.
Good ones smell good.

ndizi Ndizi mbovu zinanuka.
Nzima zinanukia.

Rotten bananas smell bad.
Good ones smell good.

mananasi Mananasi mabovu yananuka.
Mazima yananukia.

Rotten pineapples smell bad.
Good ones smell good.

B. -nukia vs. nuka.

chungwa Chungwa hili zima linanukia.
Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.

This good orange smells good.
The rotten one smells bad. I
don't like it.

embe Embe hili zima linanukia
Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.

This good mango smells good.
The rotten one smells bad. I
don't like it.

nanasi	Nanasi hili zima linanukia. Bovu linanuka. Silipendi.	This good pineapple smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.
ndizi	Ndizi hii nzima inanukia. Mbovu inanuka. Siipendi.	The good banana smells good. The rotten one smells bad. I don't like it.

Conversation Starters

1. Talk about the routine activities of getting up and getting ready for work.

Unit 117

1. Basic Dialogue. Where does this highway go?

Hamisi

Barabara hii inakwenda wapi?

Where does this highway go?

Hasani

Inapita Nairobi, Naivasha mpaka
Kisumu.

It goes past Nairobi and Naivasha
to Kisumu.

Hamisi

-nyoka

to become straight

Yaonekana imenyoka sana.

It seems very straight.

Hasani

Ndiyo, imenyoka mpaka Naivasha.

Yes, it is straight as far as Naivasha.

Hamisi

Na kutoka Naivasha kuendelea mbele
je?

And how [is it] from Naivasha on?

Hasani

-pinda

to bend

Imejipinda huku na huku.

It winds here and there.

Hamisi

Hivi ni lazima kuendesha polepole?

So it's necessary to drive slowly?

Hasani

~pana

broad, flat

Ndiyo, lakini barabara yenyewe ni
pana na laini.

Yes, but the road itself is broad and
smooth.

2.

A. Relative of me-tense.

kunyoka	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyonyoka.	I intend to follow a road which is straight.
kupinda	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyojipinda.	I intend to follow a road which is winding.
~refu	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo ndefu.	I intend to follow a road which is long.
~pana	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo pana.	I intend to follow a road which is broad.
~embamba	Nakusudia kufuata njia iliyo nyembamba.	I intend to follow a road which is narrow.

B. -nung'unika juu...

njia	Mwandishi Mkuu anung'unika juu ya njia afuatayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the road he follows.
matata	Mwandishi Mkuu anung'unika juu ya matata apatayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the complications he faces.
fujo	Mwandishi Mkuu anung'unika juu ya fujo afisini.	The General Secretary grumbles about the disturbances in the office.
mshahara	Mwandishi Mkuu anung'unika juu ya mshahara apatao.	The General Secretary grumbles about the pay he gets.
motokaa	Mwandishi Mkuu anung'unika juu ya motokaa aendeshayo.	The General Secretary grumbles about the car he drives.

3.

A. -onekana

pua	Pua yake imeumia? Inaonekana imeumia sana.	Is his nose hurt? It appears to be seriously injured.
-----	---	---

mgongo Mgongo wake umeumia?
Unaonekana umeumia sana.

Is his back hurt?
It appears to be seriously
injured.

shingo mkono kidole

B. afadhali plus subjunctive.

kunyoka Tufuate njia iliyonyoka au
iliyopindapinda?
Afadhali tufuate iliyonyoka.

Shall we take a straight road, or
a crooked one?
We'd better take the straight one.

pana Tufuate njia pana, au
nyembamba?
Afadhali tufuate pana.

Shall we take a wide road, or a
narrow one?
We'd better take the wide one.

mweusi au mwekundu Tuchukue mzigo mweusi, au
mwekundu?
Afadhali tuchukue mweusi.

Shall we take a black bag, or a
brown one?
We'd better take the black one.

mabivu au mabichi Tule machungwa mabivu, au
mabichi?
Afadhali tule mabivu.

Shall we eat ripe oranges, or the
green ones?
We'd better eat the ripe ones.

yote au nusu Tupeleke gharama yote, au
nusu?
Afadhali tupeleke yote.

Shall we send the whole amount,
or half?
We'd better send the whole
[thing].

Hasani

-tumbukia	to break, cut into, to fall into
kijito (VI)	dim. of <u>mtu</u> 'river'
Ndiyo, na yakivunjika utatumbukia katika kijito.	Yes, and if they get broken, you'll fall in the stream.

Hamisi

(-vua)	(to save, get out of difficulty)
-vuka	to pass safely over
Lakini njia nyingine hazina madaraja ya kuvukia.	Some have no bridges to (enable one to) pass safely over the streams.

2.

A. ~enye

vumbi	Sipendi njia zenye vumbi nyingi.	I don't like very dusty roads.
matope	Sipendi njia zenye matope mengi.	I don't like very muddy roads.
mawe	Sipendi njia zenye mawe mengi.	I don't like very stony roads.
miiba	Sipendi njia zenye miiba mingi.	I don't like very thorny paths.
daraja	Sipendi njia zenye madaraja mengi.	I don't like roads with many bridges.

B. -teleza

njia	Njia hii inateleza sana.	This footpath is very slippery.
ubao	Ubao huu unateleza sana.	This piece of board is very slippery.
barabara	Barabara hii inateleza sana.	This road is very slippery.
mahali	Mahali hapa panateleza sana.	This place is very slippery.
jiwe	Jiwe hili linateleza sana.	This stone is very slippery.

daraja Daraja hili linateleza sana. This bridge is very slippery.

3.

A. Switching tenses.

↓	Mvua inanyesha sasa.	It is raining now.
kesho	Mvua itanyesha kesho.	It will rain tomorrow.
alasiri	Mvua itanyesha alasiri.	It will rain in the afternoon.
usiku huu	Mvua itanyesha usiku huu.	It will rain tonight.
jana	Mvua ilinyesha jana.	It rained yesterday.
walipofika	Mvua ilinyesha walipofika.	It rained when they arrived.
tutafanya nini?	Mvua ikinyesha tutafanya nini?	If it rains, what shall we do?

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Alipigwa sindano na tabibu.	He was given a shot by the doctor.
usiku huu	Atapigwa sindano usiku huu.	He will be given a shot tonight.
kesho	Atapigwa sindano kesho.	He will be given a shot tomorrow.
juzi	Alipigwa sindano juzi.	He was given a shot the day before yesterday.
ndiye	Ndiye aliyepigwa sindano juzi.	He is the one who was given a shot the day before yesterday.
bado	Bado hajapigwa sindano.	He hasn't yet been given a shot.

C. -angalia plus ki-tense.

kunyoa	Nilimwangalia akinyoa.	I watched him shave.
kulima	Nilimwangalia akilima.	I watched him plow.
kuvua	Nilimwangalia akivua.	I watched him fishing.
kugeuza	Nilimwangalia akigeuza motokaa.	I watched him turn the car.

kufagia Nilimwangalia akifagia.

I watched him sweeping.

kutumbukia Nilimwangalia akitumbukia
mtoni.

I watched him fall into the river.

Unit 119

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Hasani

-teleŋka

to descend

ŋsitu (MI)

land covered with bushes,
small treesKule ŋsituni kuna njia nyembamba
sana.There in the forest, there are some
very narrow paths.

Zinateleŋka chini ya milima.

They lead down the mountains.

Hamisi

shimo (N)

pit, hole

Lakini nyingine zina mashimo mengi,
sivyo?But some have a lot of holes (in them)
don't they?Hasani

siafu (N pers.)

army ants
(kind of red ant)Hasa, hata siafu wapitapita njiani
humo.Yes, indeed, (and) even army ants pass
back and forth over the path.Hamisi

tundu (MA)

nest, hole

Je, unaweza kuyaona matundu ya
siafu?

Can you see the nests of the ants?

HasaniPengine, ikiwa kama unatembea
polepole utayaona.Sometimes, if you walk very slowly
you'll see them.

Hamisi

Wanyama wanapitia njia hizi vile vile? Do wild animals pass along these paths?

Hasani

Ndiyo, wanapotaka kuwinda. Yes, when they want to hunt.

2.

A. hu-tense.

Siafu hukaa matunduni.	Red ants live in holes.
Siafu hula wanyama wadogo.	Red ants eat small animals.
Siafu hupitapita njiani.	Red ants pass back and forth on the path.
Siafu ni hatari.	Red ants are dangerous.

B. -pitia.

wanafunzi Wanafunzi wapitia njia hii.	Students pass along this way.
wengi Wengi wapitia njia hii.	Many pass along this way.
wanyama ng'ombe siafu	

C. -po- 'when'

kuwinda Twapita njiani humu tunapotaka kuwinda.	We use this path when we want to hunt.
kuvua Twapita njiani humu tunapotaka kuvua.	We use this path when we want to fish.
kuoga kuogelea kwenda msituni	

3.

A. ku class.

mbu Kuna mbu kwenu?	Are there mosquitoes at your place?
Ndiyo bwana, kuna wengi.	Yes, there are many.

siafu	Kuna siafu kwenu?	Are there ants at your place?				
	Ndiyo, bwana, kuna wengi.	Yes. There are many.				
chuo	mawe	vijito	matope	milima	wanyama	vumbi

B. Switching tenses.

↓	Nilimpeleka hospitali pamoja na mjomba.	I took him to the hospital together with my uncle.
ndiye	Yeye ndiye niliyempeleka hospitali pamoja na mjomba.	He is the one I took to the hospital together with my uncle.
kesho	Nitampeleka hospitali pamoja na mjomba.	Tomorrow I will take him to the hospital together with my uncle.
sasa	Sasa ninampeleka hospitali pamoja na mjomba.	Now I am taking him to the hospital together with my uncle.

C. Switching tenses.

↓	Mtoto huyu alipigwa sindano.	This child was given an injection.
hapana	Mtoto huyu hakupigwa sindano.	This child was not given an injection.
ndiye	Mtoto huyu ndiye aliyepigwa sindano.	This child was the one given an injection.
kesho	Huyu ni mtoto ambaye atapigwa sindano kesho.	This is the child who will be given an injection tomorrow.
bado	Huyu ni mtoto ambaye hajapigwa sindano bado.	This is the child who hasn't been given an injection yet.

Conversation Starters

1. Discuss medium-distance travel within Africa.

Unit 120

1. Basic Dialogue. Firewood.

Hamisi

-pika

to cook

Utaanza kupika lini?

When are you going to begin cooking?

Hadija

kuni (N)

firewood

Nitaanza hivi upesi, nikipata kuni.

I'll begin right soon now, when I
get firewood.Hamisi

Utapata kuni wapi?

Where will you get it?

Hadija

Nitakwenda msituni kuziokota.

I'm going to the forest to gather it.

Hamisi

Huwezi kukata miti ya kuni?

Can't you cut trees [suitable] for
firewood?Hadija

shoka (MA)

axe

Ninaweza, nikiwa na shoka na panga.

I can, if I had an axe and a panga.

Hamisi

Chukua shoka hili na panga.

Take this axe and panga.

Hadija

kamba (N)

rope, cord

Asante. Na kamba ya kufungia kuni
je?Thanks. And what about a rope for
tying the firewood up?

Hamisi

~fupi

short

-azima

to borrow, lend

Kamba yetu ni fupi sana. Nitaazima
nyingine.

Our rope is very short. I'll borrow
another.

2.

A. nusu

kuni Nipe nusu ya kuni zako,
nitazilipa.

Give me half of your firewood; I
will pay for it.

kamba Nipe nusu ya kamba yako,
nitailipa.

Give me half of your rope; I will
pay for it.

dawa Nipe nusu ya dawa yako,
nitailipa.

Give me half of your medicine; I
will pay for it.

misumari Nipe nusu ya misumari yako,
nitailipa.

Give me half of your nails; I will
pay for it.

kipande Nipe nusu ya kipande chako,
nitakilipa.

Give me half of your piece; I will
pay for it.

mbegu Nipe nusu ya mbegu zako,
nitazilipa.

Give me half of your seeds; I will
pay for them.

B. -pasuka

shati Shati langu limepasuka.

My shirt is torn.

nguo Nguo yangu imepasuka.

My dress is torn.

ngoma shuka chandalua

C. robo

mafuta Alinitilia robo ya mafuta
yake.

He poured me out a quarter of his
oil.

mtama Alinitilia robo ya mtama He poured me out a quarter of his
wake. millet.

mchele dawa kinywaji chumvi

D. Imperative plus negative subjunctive.

kupotea Lindeni ngoma hizi zisipotee. Take care of these drums so that
they don't get lost.

kuanguka Lindeni ngoma hizi zisianguke. Take care of these drums so that
they don't fall.

kupasuka Lindeni ngoma hizi zisipasuke. Take care of these drums so that
they don't get split.

kuharibu Lindeni ngoma hizi zisiharibike. Take care of these drums so that
they don't get spoiled.

3.

A. -enda plus ka-tense.

shoka Shoka liko barazani. The axe is on the veranda.
Nendeni mkalichukue. Go to get it.

kamba Kamba iko barazani. The rope is on the veranda.
Nendeni mkaichukue. Go and bring it.

kuni Kuni ziko barazani. The firewood is on the veranda.
Nendeni mkazichukue. Go and bring them.

kikapu Kikapu kiko barazani. The basket is on the veranda.
Nendeni mkakichukue. Go and bring it.

viti Viti viko barazani. The chairs are on the veranda.
Nendeni mkavichukue. Go and bring them.

B. Switching Tenses.

↓ Anaokota kuni msituni. He is collecting firewood in the
forest.

utamwona Utamwona akiokota kuni You will see him collecting fire-
msituni. wood in the forest.

nilimwona	Nilimwona akiokota kuni msituni.	I saw him collecting firewood in the forest.
ndiye	Ndiye niliyemwona akiokota kuni msituni.	He is the one I saw collecting firewood in the forest.
C.		
↓	Alikwenda mwituni akaangusha miti.	He went in the forest to fell trees.
kesho	Atakwenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He will go in the forest to fell trees.
hapana	Hatakwenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He will not go in the forest to fell trees.
jana	Hakuenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He didn't go in the forest to fell trees.
bado	Hajaenda mwituni kuangusha miti.	He hasn't gone in the forest to fell trees.
nilimzuia	Nilimzuia asiende mwituni kuangusha miti.	I prevented him from going in the forest to fell trees.

Unit 121

1. Basic Dialogue. Fetching water.

Hamisi

-chota

to take a little water/firewood

kisima (VI)

well, water hole

Mwambie Adija akachote maji

Tell Adija to go draw some water at

kisimani.

the well.

Asha

mtungi (MI)

earthen pitcher/water jar

-toboa

to bore a hole in

Mtungi wetu unetoboka.

Our water jar has a hole in it.

Hamisi

Unalo tundu kubwa?

Does it have a big hole?

Asha

-vuja

to leak

Ndiyo, lavuja sana.

Yes, it leaks quite a bit.

ndoo (N)

bucket

Amesema atatumia ndoo.

She said she will use a bucket.

Hamisi

mfereji (MI)

ditch for carrying water

-teka

to draw water

Visuri, pengine anaweza kuteka maji

Good. Maybe she can get some water

pale mferejini,

there at the ditch.

Asha

mstari (MI)

line

Naona kuna watu wengi mferejini
waliofanya mstari.

I see there is a line of people at
the ditch. ('there are many people
there who formed a line.')

2.

A. pa-class concord

maji Pale mferejini hapana maji.

There at the ditch, there is no
water.

mtu Pale mferejini hapana mtu.

There at the ditch, there is nobody.

mstari ndoo mtungi

B. ka-tense

kuchota Mwambie Adija akachote maji.

Tell Adija to go and take up water
(a little at a time).

kuchukua Mwambie Adija akachukue pasi.

Tell Adija to go and take the iron.

kufungua Mwambie Adija akafungue
mlango.

Tell Adija to go and open the door.

kufunga Mwambie Adija akafunge
dirisha.

Tell Adija to go and close the
window.

C. -ngojeakisima Wapagazi wanakungojea
kisimani.

The porters are waiting for you at
the well.

baraza Wapagazi wanakungojea
barazani.

The porters are waiting for you on
the veranda.

barabara daraja mlima boma

3.

A.

mtungi	Mtungi wako umetoboka?	Is your water-jar leaking? (Has your water-jar a hole?)
	Ndiyo, unalo tundu kubwa.	Yes, it has a big hole.
ndoo	Ndoo yako imetoboka?	Is your bucket leaking?
	Ndiyo, inalo tundu kubwa.	Yes, it has a big hole.
bakuli	taa	

B. Imperative plus ka-tense.

mimi	Nataka maji.	I want some water.
	Nendeni mkanitekee maji bombani.	Go and bring me some water from the water tap.
sisi	Twataka maji.	We want some water.
	Nendeni mkatutekee maji bombani.	Go and bring us some water from the water tap.
yeye	wao	

Unit 122

1. Basic Dialogue. Planning a hunting expedition.

Butler

tarehe (N)

date

safari (N)

journey

Mwezi ujao tarehe kumi nitakwenda
safari.

On the tenth of next month, I'm going
to go on a trip.

Sangai

-elekea

to be directed towards

Utasafiri kuelekea wapi?

Which way are you going?

Butler

Nitasafiri kwenda mmituni
kuwinda wanyama.

I'm going to make a trip to the forest
to hunt game.

Sangai

Unakusudia kuwinda wanyama gani?

What kind of game do you plan to
hunt?

Butler

kifaru (VI-an.)

rhino

nyati (N-an.)

buffalo

simba (N-an.)

lion

tembo (N-an.)

elephant

Kama kifaru, nyati, simba, tembo na
wengineo.

[Things] like rhino, buffalo, lion,
elephant and such like.

Sangai

~kali

sharp, fierce

Hao ni wanyama wakali sana.

Those are very fierce animals.

Butler

~nene

thick, stout

Ndiyo, tena ni wanene sana.

Yes, and moreover, they are very big.

Sangai

~kuki (MI)

spear

Utawawinda kwa bunduki au kwa ~kuki?

Will you hunt with a gun, or with spears?

Butler

risasi (N)

lead, tin, solder, bullet

Kwa bunduki. Hata risasi

With a gun. I've even bought bullets.

nimenunua.

2.

A. ~ingineo

kifaru Niliona kifaru, nyati,
simba, na wengineo.

I saw rhino, buffalo, lion, and such.

walimu Niliona walimu, wanafunzi,
makarani, na wengineo.

I saw teachers, students, clerks and such.

minazi Niliona minazi, michungwa,
miembe na mingineyo.

I saw coco palms, orange trees, mango trees and such.

nguo Niliona nguo, suruali,
kofia na nyinginezo.

I saw cloths, trousers, hats and such.

sahani Niliona sahani, vikombe,
bilauri na vinginevyo.

I saw plates, cups, glasses and such.

B. Various translations for ~kali

kifaru Kifaru huyo ni ~kali sana.

That rhino is very fierce.

kisu Kisu hicho ni kikali sana.

That knife is very sharp.

pombe	Pombe hiyo ni kali sana.	That beer is very strong.
jua	Jua ni kali sana.	That sun is very hot.
mwalimu	Mwalimu huyo in mkali sana.	That teacher is very severe.
maneno	Maneno hayo ni makali sana.	Those words are very harsh.

C. nene

mtoto	Mtoto huyo ni mnene sana.	That child is very fat.
manyama	Manyama huyo ni mnene sana.	That animal is very fat.
mti	Mti huo ni mnene sana.	That tree is very thick.
mkono	Mkono huo ni mnene sana.	That arm is very thick.
ng'ombe	Ng'ombe huyo ni mnene sana.	That ox is very fat.

3.

A. The root b-d-l: badala and -badili.

kalamu	Nipe kalamu yako badala ya yangu. Nataka kubadili kalamu yangu na yako.	Give me your pen in place of mine. I want to exchange your pen for mine.
kitabu	Nipe kitabu chako badala ya changu. Nataka kubadili kitabu changu na chako.	Give me your book in place of mine. I want to exchange your book for mine.

shati kijiko foronya

B. The root s-f-r: safari and safiri.

mimi	Nilisafiri mpaka Amerika. Safari yangu kwenda Amerika. ilichukua muda wa wiki mbili.	I traveled to America. My trip to America took two weeks.
sisi	Tulisafiri mpaka Amerika. Safari yetu kwenda Amerika ilichukua muda wa wiki mbili.	We traveled to America. Our trip to America took two weeks.

yeye wao

C. The root z-d: zaidi and -zidi.

kuku	Nina kuku wengi zaidi kuliko wako.	I have more chickens than you.
	Kuku wangu wamezidi kushinda wako.	My chickens have increased more than yours.
mpunga	Nina mpunga mwingi zaidi kuliko wako.	I have more rice than you.
	Mpunga wangu umezidi kushinda wako.	My rice has increased more than yours.
pesa	watoto matata	

Unit 123

1. Basic Dialogue. May I go along?

Sangai

Nikiazima bunduki, utakubali niende
nawe?

If I borrow a gun, will you let me go
with you?

Butler

Ndiyo, ningependa mwenzi wa kwenda
naye.

Yes, I'd like a companion to go with.

Sangai

Kuwinda kwangu si kuzuri lakini
tutakwenda tu.

My hunting isn't so good, but at least
we'll go along.

Butler

umaskini (U)

poverty

Kama si umaskini tungekwenda kwa
motokaa.

If it weren't for poverty, we'd go by
car.

Sangai

mpumbavu

a fool, a dupe

Usinifanye mpumbavu bwana, pesa
unazo!

Don't take me for a fool, mister,
you've got the money!

Butler

-sadiki

to believe

Hunisadiki?

Don't ('can't') you believe me?

Sangai

-danganya

to cheat, deceive

mdanganyifu a cheat, deceiver
Hapana, mdanganye mwingine! No, cheat someone else.

Butler

Usisahau, tutaondoka baada ya juma moja. Don't forget, we're going to leave in a week.

Sangai

Kwa heri, bwana. Good-bye.

2.

A. A common way of using applied stems.

chupa	Nataka chupa ya kutilia mafuta.	I want a bottle to put some oil in.
sanduku	Nataka sanduku la kuwekea pesa.	I want a box to put some money in.
birika	Nataka birika la kutengenezea chai.	I want a kettle to make some tea in.
mtungi	Nataka mtungi wa kuchotea maji.	I want a water-jar to put some water in.
mshahara	Nataka mshahara wa kutosheleza mahitaji yangu.	I want pay sufficient for my needs.
nafasi	Nataka nafasi ya kufanyia kazi yangu.	I want a chance to do my work.
karatasi	Nataka karatasi ya kuandikia barua.	I want a sheet of paper to write a letter [on].

B. Infinitives in a noun slot.

kuwinda	Kuwinda kwake si kubaya.	His hunting is not bad.
kusoma	Kusoma kwake si kubaya.	His reading is not bad.
kuandika	Kuandika kwake si kubaya.	His writing is not bad.

kulima Kulima kwake si kubaya. His cultivating is not bad.

C.

kusema Kusema kwake kumenikasirisha. His talking has annoyed me.

kufika Kufika kwake kumenikasirisha. His arrival has annoyed me.

kulewa kuongea kulia kushangilia kuingia

3.

A. kama si

magugu Pana magugu mengi hapa. There are a lot of weeds here.
Kama si magugu, maua yako If it were not for weeds, your
yangeonekana vizuri. flowers would be seen clearly.

hatari Njia utakayofuata ni hatari The road you'll follow is very
sana. dangerous.
Kama si hatari, ningekwenda If it were not for danger, I
pamoja nawe. would go with you.

nauli Nauli ya kwenda Nairobi ni The fare to Nairobi is much.
kubwa.
Kama si hivyo, ningekwenda If it were not for that, I would
huko. go there.

miiba Njia hii ina miiba mingi. This road has many thorns.
Kama si miiba, ingekuwa If it were not for thorns, it
nzuri. would be good.

B. Numbers between 20 and 100. (Add 5 to the number in the first sentence.)

28 Nimesoma kurasa ishirini na I have read twenty-eight pages.
nane.

Mimi nimesoma thelathini na I have read thirty-three.
tatu.

37 Nimesoma kurasa thelathini na I have read thirty-seven pages.
saba.

- Mimi nimesoma arobaini na mbili. I have read forty-two.
- 46 Nimesoma kurasa arobaini na sita. I have read forty-six pages.
Mimi nimesoma hamsini na moja. I have read fifty-one.
- 59 Nimesoma kurasa hamsini na tisa. I have read fifty-nine pages.
Mimi nimesoma sitini na nne. I have read sixty-four.
- 66 Nimesoma kurasa sitini na sita. I have read sixty-six pages.
Mimi nimesoma sabini na moja. I have read seventy-one.
- 77 Nimesoma kurasa sabini na saba. I have read seventy-seven pages.
Mimi nimesoma themanini na mbili. I have read eighty-two.
- 88 Nimesoma kurasa themanini na nane. I have read eighty-eight pages.
Mimi nimesoma tisini na tatu. I have read ninety-three.

Unit 124

1. Basic Dialogue. Hunting.

Sangai

Sasa, mnyama akija nifanyeje?

Now, if any game comes, how do I act?

Butler

-ficha

to hide something

-sikiliza

to listen

Sikiliza, lazima kwanza ujifiche
asikuone.Listen, first you have to hide
[yourself] so that it can't see you.Sangai

-kimbia

to run away

Na akikimbia je? Nimpige risasi?

And how about if it runs away?

Shall I shoot it?

Butler

-lenga

to aim

Ukisha jificha, lenga bunduki.

When you've finished hiding yourself,
aim the gun.

-changa

to collect

-changanyika

to be mixed together

-chagua

to choose

ama ... ama

either ... or ...

Wakiwa wamechanganyika mchagua
umtakaye, kama nyati ama tembo.If they are all mixed up, choose the
one that you want, whether a buffalo
or a elephant.

Sangai

Halafu?

Then?

Butler

shabaha (N)

target

sawasawa

equally, just the same

Kama umelenga shabaha sawasawa, piga
risasi.

If you've aimed at the target just
right, shoot.

Sangai

-fa

to die

Mnyama akianguka maana yake anekufa?

If the animal falls, does that mean
it is dead?

Butler

Kwa kawaida, lakini usiinkimbilie.

Generally, but don't run up to him.

2.

A. Affirmative subjunctive followed by negative subjunctive.

kuficha Ilikuwa lazima wajifiche It was necessary for them to hide
ili wasipigwe risasi. so that they would not be shot.

kulala Ilikuwa lazima walale It was necessary for them to lie
chini ili wasipigwe risasi. down so that they would not be
shot.

kutoroka Ilikuwa lazima watoroke ili It was necessary for them to escape
wasipigwe risasi. so that they would not be shot.

kuangalia Ilikuwa lazima waangalie ili It was necessary for them to look
wasipigwe risasi. out so that they would not be
shot.

kukimbia	Ilikuwa lázima wakimbie ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to run away so that they would not be shot.
kugeuka	Ilikuwa lázima wageuke ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to turn around so that they would not be shot.
kupinda	Ilikuwa lázima wapinde ili wasipigwe risasi.	It was necessary for them to make a turn so that they would not be shot.

B. -changa

Bw. Hassani	Sultani anataka kuchanga fedha kwa Bwana Hassani.	The chief wants to collect money for Mr. Hassani.
askari	Sultani anataka kuchanga fedha kwa askari.	The chief wants to collect money for the soldiers.

wapagazi makarani vyakula

C. -changanya

mchele	Usichanganye mchele na mtama.	Don't mix rice with millet.
maji	Usichanganye maji na petroli.	Don't mix water with petrol.
machungwa	Usichanganye machungwa na maembe.	Don't mix oranges with mangoes.
vitabu	Usichanganye vitabu vyako na vyangu.	Don't mix your books with mine.
maua	Usichanganye maua na magugu.	Don't mix flowers with weeds.
risasi	Usichanganye risasi na misumari.	Don't mix bullets with nails.

Unit 125

1. Basic Dialogue. (continued)

Butler

-chungulia

to examine carefully

Kitu cha kwanza ni kumchungulia
kwanza.

The first thing is to take a good
hard look at him.

Sangai

-jongea

to move, make motion

-kamata

to seize

Nikiona hajongei naweza kumkamata?

If I see that he isn't stirring, can
I take hold of him?

Butler

dakika (N)

a minute

Ndiyo, baada ya dakika chache.

Yes, after a few moments.

Sangai

Kama si wewe, ningekimbilia
akianguka.

If it weren't for you, I'd have run
up to him when he fell.

Butler

-choka

to become tired

Unawaona wale wamechoka, watembea
polepole.

You see those are tired. They are
walking slowly.

Sangai

-fukuza

to pursue

-ua

to kill

twiga (N-pers)

Tuwafukuze, sitaki kuwaua twiga.

giraffe

Let's go after them. I don't want
to kill giraffe.

Butler

mbio (N)

Unafikiri unaweza mbio za twiga?

speed, running

Do you think you can [duplicate] the
speed of a giraffe?

Sangai

Siwezi, lakini napenda kumwona
akikimbia.

I can't, but I like to watch him run.

Butler

sauti (N)

Unasikia sauti za tembo?

voice

Do you hear the trumpeting of the
elephants?

Sangai

-nguruma

Ndiyo, wananguruma kwa sauti sana.

to rumble, roar

Yes, they are roaring with a great
voice.

Review Sentences, Units 1 - 125

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Ungependa tubadilishane kalamu? | Would you like to trade pens [with me]? |
| 2. Bilauri iliyohitajiwa iko hapa juu ya meza. | The glass that was needed is here on the table. |
| 3. Magari ya abiria yalifika saa nane leo alasiri. | The passenger lorries arrived at 2 p.m. today. |
| 4. Mtoto hataki maziwa wala maji ya machungwa. | The child doesn't want milk or orange juice. |
| 5. Ilikuwa lazima wajifiche wasishikwe na askari. | It was necessary for them to hide so as not to be seized by the policeman. |
| 6. Pale ng'ambo ya mto pamepatikana simba wengi. | Lots of lions have been found over there on the other side of the river. |
| 7. Kabla ya kuondoka tutachukua pesa za kutosha. | Before we leave, we'll take enough money. |
| 8. Choma karatasi zote zisizohitajiwa. | Burn all the papers that aren't needed. |
| 9. Mwaka ujao tutahamia huko Unguja. | We're going to move to Zanzibar next year. |
| 10. Wanafunzi wote waliojifunza huko Ulaya wamerudi makwao. | All the students who studied in Europe have returned to their homes. |
| 11. Je, wadhani atarudi hapa tena? | Do you think he will return here again? |
| 12. Itamlazimu kurudi hapa mapema sana. | He will have to return here very soon. |

13. Chakula hicho kilikuwa kimeiva sana. That food was quite thoroughly cooked.
14. Inafaa uangalie mbele unapoendesha motokaa. It's a good idea to look ahead when you drive a car.
15. Juma alisema ya kwamba, anataka nguo isiyotumiwa. Juma said that he wants brand new clothes.
16. Watu wa Ufaransa wanaongea upesi kuliko watu wa Kenya. The people of France speak more rapidly than the people of Kenya.
17. Nyumba aliyonunua ilikuwa haina mapambo mengi. The house that he bought didn't have much furniture.
18. Rafiki yangu amejiumiza kwa kisu. My friend has hurt himself with a knife.
19. Watu wengi walikusanyika katika uwanja wa mpira. Many people assembled on the football field.
20. Alifunga nyumba kwa ufunguo ili watoto wasiweze kufungua. He locked the house with a key so that the children wouldn't be able to unlock [it].
21. Amekwisha tembelea nchi zote za Afrika ya Mashariki. He has already visited all the countries of East Africa.
22. Anaweza kuongea lugha zote za Afrika ila Kiswahili. He can speak all African languages except Swahili.
23. Ukijaribu kutoroka askari atakupiga risasi. If you try to run away, the policeman will shoot you.
24. Mletee mchele badala ya nyama ya nguruwe. Bring him rice instead of pork.
25. Wao wana pesa nyingi sana. They have a very large amount of money.
26. Usimkimbize mtoto kwa mbio hivyo. Don't make the child run so fast.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 27. Wafanyi kazi wa Idara ya Elimu wananung'unika juu ya mishahara yao. | The workers in the Ministry of Education are complaining about their wages. |
| 28. Fuata barabara iliyonyoka mpaka kwenye mto. | Follow the straight road to where there is a river. |
| 29. Anakijua Kiswahili barábara. | He knows Swahili perfectly. |
| 30. Twendeni sokoni, au mjini? | Shall we go to market, or to town? |
| 31. Afadhali twende mjini. | It will be better if we go to town. |
| 32. Safari yangu ya kwenda Afrika ilichukua muda wa siku tano tu. | My trip to Africa took only five days. |
| 33. Wazazi wake ni maskini sana. | His parents are very poor. |
| 34. Anataka kalamu ya kukuandikia barua. | He wants a pen to write a letter with. |
| 35. Wasingalifanya hivyo, nisingaliwaambia waondoke. | If they hadn't done like that, I would not have told them to leave. |
| 36. Ukitaka kazi ni lázima kuitafuta. | If you want work, you have to look for it. |
| 37. Kama si wewe, ningempiga yule mtoto. | |
| 38. Chagua nguo utakayo, kama hii ama hiyo. | Choose whichever cloth you want, whether this or that. |
| 39. Ningejifunza Kiswahili ningejua kukiongea. | If I studied Swahili, I would know how to speak it. |
| 40. Hayo ndiyo niliyokuwa nikiongea juu yake. | That is what I was saying about him. |
| 41. Wakati wa joto umekwisha fika. | The hot season has already arrived. |
| 42. Alituingilia tulipokuwa tukila. | He burst in on us while we were eating. |

43. Nyumba yake imejaa mapambo ya
nyumba. His house is full of furniture.
44. Alipokuwa ametembelea jimbo la
Indiana nilifanya kazi peke
yangu. While he was visiting Indiana, I
worked on my own.
45. Penye moto hapakosi moshi. Where there is fire, there is no lack
of smoke.

Directions for use of Units 126 - 150

The last 25 units of this course are based on a series of spontaneous conversations recorded by Swahili speakers in Dar es Salaam. The editing of these texts which was done by speakers of Swahili in Washington, D. C., has been limited to the breaking up of long sentences into short ones, preserving insofar as possible the words which appear in the original. A free translation into English has been provided in lieu of grammatical notes.

It is suggested that the student listen several times to the unedited version before looking at the simplified version and translation which appear in the book. Having done so, the student may practice saying the sentences of the printed text after a tutor, with his book still closed.

Upon opening his book, the student should underline those Swahili words which are new to him, and also write them in the left-hand margin, if they do not already appear there. He should not write the English equivalent under or over the Swahili word in the body of the text.

At the next stage, the student should try to give each Swahili sentence in response to a cue taken either from the list of new words in the margin, or from the English translation. This in turn should lead to temporary memorization of 6 - 8 consecutive lines at a time.

Going beyond memorization, the student should collect, with the help of a tutor, several useful sentences containing each new word. Next, the student should listen again to the original unedited dialogue.

Finally, student and tutor may engage in a conversation which covers the same subject matter, but with no attempt at verbatim reproduction of the original.

Unit 126: Hospitali za mjini.

	Naam, Bwana Yusufu.	Hello, Yusufu.
	Naam bwana.	Hello.
tangu	Habari za tangu jana?	How are you today?
	Nzuri sana.	Very fine.
	Habari za nyumbani?	How are things at home?
	Salama tu.	Just fine.
-jisikia	Je, wasikiaje mwenzangu?	How do you feel, my friend?
-choka	Oh, nimechoka sana.	Oh, I'm very tired.
kule	Nama gani kule nyumbani?	How are things there at home?
	Hawajambo wote?	Is everyone all right?
	Watoto wote hawajambo,	All the children are fine
isipokuwa	isipokuwa mwanangu mdogo	except that my youngest
	ana homa.	has a fever.
-fikiri	Unafikiri ni homa gani hiyo?	What kind of fever do you think
		it is?
mbu	Bila shaka ni homa ya mbu.	It is undoubtedly malaria.
-wahi	Je, umewahi kuonana na	Have you seen the doctor
	daktari?	at all?
-peleka	Sasa hivi nampeleka	I'm just now taking him to the
	hospitalini.	hospital.
	Mnakwenda hospitali gani?	Which hospital are you going to?
	Tunakwenda hospitali ya	We're going to Mnazimoja
	Mnazimoja.	Hospital.
unayo	Je, unayo shilingi moja?	And do you have one shilling?
	La, sina.	No, I haven't.
gharama	Hujui kuwa kuna gharama ya	Don't you know that there is a
saa hizi	shilingi moja saa hizi?	one-shilling charge at this
		time of day?

mfanyakazi	Mimi ni mfanyakazi wa Serikali.	I'm a government employee.
huwa	Huwa sitoi gharama ya hospitali.	I don't generally pay the hospital fee.

Unit 127 (Inaendelea)

-tozwa	Hivi wafanya kazi wa serikali huwa hawatozwi pesa? Hawatozwi!	That is to say that government employees are not made to pay? They are not charged.
-danganywa	Kumbe mimi nimedanganywa siku nyingi.	Then I've been cheated for a long time.
-pata	Hujapata kwenda hospitali hata siku moja?	Haven't you ever been to the hospital even once?
mara	Nimepata kwenda mara nyingi.	I've had the occasion many times.
kila	Lakini, kila wakati nimekwenda saa tatu.	But I've always gone at 9 o'clock.
ndio	Najua saa tatu ndio wakati ambao hawatozi pesa.	I know that 9 is the time when they don't charge.
ye yote	Mtu ye yote anayefanya kazi serikalini ni lazima aende hospitali saa moja na nusu asubuhi.	Whoever works in the government is supposed to go to the hospital at 7:30 a.m.
-andikiwa	Akiandikiwa karatasi yake hupata dawa bila gharama yo yote.	If his sick sheet is signed, he gets medicine entirely free of charge.
-jitahidi	Nitajitahidi siku nyingine.	I'll try some other day.

mtumishi	Lakini, Bwana Yusufu kwa nini hata ukiwa mtumishi wa serikali unatozwa pesa?	But, Yusufu, why is one charged even when one is a government employee?
-wahi	Mimi nimewahi kulipa mara mbili au mara tatu hivi.	I've already paid two or three times.
-tegemea	Inategemea hali ya mtu mwenyewe.	It depends on the [financial] condition of the individual himself.
-lalia thamani	Kuna wengine wanataka kulalia vitanda vya thamani.	There are many [who] want to occupy the most expensive beds.
kawaida	Wengine hulalia vitanda vya kawaida.	Others occupy ordinary beds.

Unit 128 (Inaendelea)

	Vitanda vya kawaida ndivyo vitanda vya namna gani?	What are the ordinary beds like?
vile ambavyo	Vitanda vya kawaida ni vile ambavyo wanalala watu wote wasiokuwa na pesa.	The ordinary beds are those which are occupied by anyone who lacks money.
kama	Kama watu gani?	For instance?
wale	Ni wale wanaotoka mashamba.	They are those who come from rural areas.
wageni	Wako wengine wageni wasiokuwa na pesa.	There are some transients who have no money.
wale wale	Lakini, kumbuka, wale wale washamba wanaweza kulalia vitanda ghali.	But remember that some rural people are able to occupy expensive beds.
ikiwa	Wanaweza ikiwa wana pesa.	They can if they have money.

-dhani	Oh, Mimi nilidhani mtu ye yote anayetoka shamba halipi pesa! La, bwana!	Oh! I had the impression that anyone from the country didn't pay! No!
wenye	Vile vile nakumbuka kule shamba kuna watu wenye pesa nyingi.	I also remember that out there in the countryside there are people with lots of money.
tuliopo	Wana pesa nyingi kuliko hata sisi tuliopo hapa mjini.	They have more money than even those of us who are here in town.
hivyo	Bila shaka ni hivyo! Asante sana Bwana Yusufu.	No doubt about it! Thanks a lot, Yusufu.
-potezea	Sitaki kukupotezea wakati. Mtoto wako ni mgonjwa.	I don't want to waste your time. Your child is ill.
-faa	Sasa yafaa uchukue karatasi hii umkimbilie Bwana	Now it's best that you take this paper and get to the doctor in a hurry.
mganga	Mganga.	
-wezekana	Mkimbilie upesi iwezekanavyo.	Run to see him as fast as you can.
	Vyama. Nitakavyosikia nitakuja kukuambia. Kwaheri! Asante, kwaheri bwana!	All right. I'll come and tell you what I find out. Good bye! Thanks! Good bye!

Unit 129: Uuzaji wa vyakula sokoni

Karibu Bwana Juma!	Welcome, Juma!
Oh, asante sana!	Thanks!
Je, unataka nini leo?	And what do you want today?
Leo nataka machungwa bwana.	Today I'd like some oranges.

	Leo machungwa ni ghali sana.	Oranges are very high today.
	Chungwa moja ni senti kumi, bwana.	Oranges are -/10 apiece.
wakati	Unajua, siku hizi ni wakati wa mvua.	You know, this is the rainy season.
gari	Magari mengi huwa hayafiki hapa upesi.	Not many lorries get here on schedule.
uhaba	Kwa hiyo tuna uhaba wa machungwa.	For that reason, we're having a shortage of oranges.
mlimaji	Lakini walimaji wa machungwa ni wengi sana sehemu za kwenu.	But there are a lot of orange growers in the vicinity!
kwenu	Kwanini yanakuwa ghali hivi?	Why are they so expensive?
uchukuzi	Kwa sababu gharama za uchukuzi ni kubwa mno!	Because the transport charges are excessive.
ingawaje	Lakini, ingawaje gharama za uchukuzi ni kubwa mno,	But even though the cost of transportation is too high,
-chukua	huwezi kuchukua chungwa moja kwa gharama ya senti tano!	you can't sell a single orange for five cents!
	Aaaa, wewe ni rafiki yangu.	Oh well, you're my friend.
zamani	Wewe ni mnunuzi wangu wa zamani.	You've been my customer from way back.
-fanyia	Nitakufanyia chungwa moja senti tano.	I'll make you [a special price of] 5 cents an orange.

Unit 130 (Inaendelea)

Je, unataka nini zaidi -	And what else do you want?
Unataka ndizi au viazi	Would you like bananas, or
ulaya?	(Irish) potatoes?

	Oh, napenda sana viazi ulaya kama vipo.	Well, I like potatoes very much, if there are some.
vipo		
hebu	Hebu nitazame -----	Let me have a look -----
mbona	Lakini mbona vingine vidogo	But some are small and very
~embamba	na vyembamba sana.	irregular in shape.
~nene	Vingine sio vinene kama kawaida.	Some are not nice and round as [they] usual[ly are].
	Ah, bwana, sisi tuendapo madukani kununua, tunanunua	Ah, my friend, when we go to the shops to buy, we buy [them]
gunia	katika magunia.	in sacks.
-chagua	Hatuwezi kuchagua kuwa gunia hili lina viazi vikubwa au vidogo.	We aren't able to select whether this sack [or that] has large potatoes [in it].
	Lakini viazi hivi vinalimwa	But are these potatoes grown
kwenu	sehemu za kwenu, au vinatoka mbali sana?	nearby, or do they come from quite a distance?
-danganyika	Ah, watu wengi wanadanganyika.	Ah! Lots of people are fooled [by that].
	Wakisikia 'viazi ulaya,' wanadhani vinalimwa Ulaya.	When they hear 'Europe potatoes', they think they are grown in Europe.
-dhani	Hivi havilimwi Ulaya, bwana.	These aren't grown in Europe, my friend.
wenyewe	Tunavilima sisi wenyewe hapa hapa Tanganyika.	We grow them ourselves right here in Tanganyika.
	Vingine vyatoka karibu tu hapa pande za Morogoro.	Some come from right nearby, right around Morogoro.
pande	Hivi Morogoro pia kunalimwa viazi ulaya?	You mean that Irish potatoes are grown at Morogoro too?
	Naam!	Certainly!

Unit 131 (Inaendelea)

	Je, wataka nazi?	Do you want some coconuts?
	Nazi, nataka sana, kwa sababu mke wangu anazipenda sana.	Yes, I do want some coconuts, because my wife likes them very much.
	Mimi nilidhani unatumia	But I thought you used Kimbo!
Kimbo	Kimbo!	
	Kimbo sitaki, kwa sababu	I don't like Kimbo, because I
harufu	harufu yake hainipendezi sana.	don't particularly care for its smell.
	Sasa wasemaje?	Well, what do you say, Friend Juma?
-fungu	Nifunge, au unataka kununua nyama pia?	Shall I wrap [it] up, or do you want to buy some meat, too?
kifaa	Nitamunua nyama na vifaa vidogo vidogo.	I'll buy some meat and a few little items.
	Nadhani vinanitoshwa maana kikapu changu si kikubwa sana.	I think that will be enough, because my basket isn't very big.
-kaanga	Je, samaki wa kukaanga, unataka?	And do you want some fried fish?
	Siwapendi, napenda samaki wa makopo tu.	I don't like them; I only like canned fish.
kopo	Mimi naona labda hutaki	I see perhaps you don't like to
-pa	kumpa kazi nyingi bibi yako nyumbani.	give your wife a lot of work around the house.
	Bila shaka, kwa sababu juzi juzi hapa amepata mtoto.	Quite right, because just a few days ago she had a baby.
-paa	Kupaa samaki itakuwa kazi kubwa.	Cleaning fish would be a big chore.

~bichi	Unajua kuwa samaki wabichi wana vitamin?	Do you know that fresh fish have vitamins?
-faa	Pia unajua kuwa ni chakula cha kufaa kwa watoto?	And do you also know that it is good food for children?
-tiwa	Niliambiwa na mzungu mmoja kuwa wale samaki wa makopo hutiwa vitamin.	I was told by a European that that canned fish has vitamins added.
haja	Sina haja ya kumsumbua sana mke wangu.	I have no need to put my wife to a lot of trouble.

Unit 132 (Inaendelea)

~bichi	Je, maharagwe mabichi, hutaki?	And you don't want any [nice] fresh beans?
-chukua	Napenda maharagwe mabichi, nitachukua.	I like fresh beans; I'll take [some].
ulicho	Lakini, siwezi kuchukua mengi.	But I can't take many.
wewe	Nitachukua kila ulicho nacho, kidogo kidogo.	I'll take just a little bit of everything you have.
ratli	Nitachukua kwa sababu wewe ni rafiki yangu.	I'll take it because you are my friend.
taabu	Haya bwana. Sasa nifunge maharagwe ratli ngapi?	O.K. How many pounds of beans shall I wrap up?
	Ratli mbili tu zinatutosha.	Just two pounds will be enough for us.
	Wewe huoni kuja huku kila siku ni taabu?	[But] don't you find that coming here every day is tiresome?
	Ungechukua maharagwe ya kutosha kwa siku kumi!	You could take enough beans for ten days!
	Hapana, bwana, haya yana- tosha kwa leo.	No, my friend, these are enough for today.

zaidi	Nini tena zaidi, Bwana Juma?	And what else?
haja	Basi! Sina haja ya kitu kingine zaidi; asante sana.	That's all. I don't need anything else. Thank you very much.
	Haya, lete kikapu chako sawa sawa tufunge.	All right, bring your basket [hold it level] and we'll tie it up.

Unit 133 (Inaendelea)

hapa	Kikapu changu hiki hapa. Funga vizuri sana.	Here's my basket. Tie it up very carefully.
kamba	Weka kamba chini na juu.	Tie it below and above.
pikipiki	Nitakapofunga kwenye pikipiki yangu, kikapu hakitaweza kuanguka njiani.	When I tie it to my motorcycle, the basket won't be able to fall off in the street.
kumbe	Kumbe una pikipiki, bwana?	Oh, you've got a motorcycle?
-tarajia	Mimi nilitarajia kumpa mtoto akuletee nyumbani. Oh, asante, sina haja ya mtoto, pikipiki ninayo. Haya basi nitamwambia mtoto akuletee kwenye pikipiki yako ufunge.	I was intending to give it to a boy to carry home for you. Oh, thanks a lot, I don't need a boy, I've got a motorcycle. I'll tell the boy to take it to your motorcycle so that you can tie it on.
-onana	Tutaonana kesho, bwana. Asante.	See you tomorrow! Thank you.
wee	Wee mtoto, funga vizuri hapo.	You, boy, tie it well there!
nyuma	Nyuma kusiwe na matata.	There mustn't be any trouble back there!

Unit 134: Mabadiliko mjini Dar es Salaam

	Bwana Yusufu!	Yusufu!
	Naam bwana!	Hello!
	Loo, ni bahati yangu nzuri.	I'm lucky.
-ongoza	Nilidhani sitampata mtu wa kuniongoza.	I thought I wouldn't find anyone to direct me.
	Ninakwenda Msimbazi, bwana.	I'm going to Msimbazi.
tangu	Siku nyingi zimepita tangu nitoke hapa.	Many days have passed since I left here.
-fuata	Sikumbuki vyema ni bara- bara gani nitafuata.	I don't remember very well which road to take.
	Unaweza kuniongoza?	Can you direct me?
	Ulikuwa wapi siku zote?	Where have you been all this time?
mwaka	Bwana, kwa muda wa miaka mitatu iliyopita, nilikuwa Nairobi.	I've been in Nairobi for the past three years.
uhamisho	Unajua nilipewa uhamisho kutoka hapa mpaka Nairobi!	You know, I was given a transfer from here to Nairobi!
kumbe	Ahaa, kumbe! Unataka kwenda Msimbazi, sivyo?	Oh, is that so! You want to go to Msimbazi, don't you?
	Naam bwana.	Yes.
-alikwa kufunguliwa jengo	Nimealikwa kwenda kule kuhuhuria kufunguliwa kwa jengo jipya.	I was invited to go there to attend the opening of a new building.
	Jengo jipya hilo ni la Community Centre.	The new building is (of) the Community Center.

nje	Ulikuwa nje kwa muda mrefu, kiasi cha miaka mitatu.	You've been outside the country for a long time--three years.
vigumu	Nadhani itakuwa vigumu sana kwenda peke yako.	I think it would be very difficult for you to go by yourself.
-elekeza	Nitakuelekeza namna ya kufika huko.	I'll show you the way to get there.
-shukuru	Nitashukuru sana, Bwana Yusufu.	I'll be very grateful, Yusufu.

Unit 135 (Inaendelea)

forodha	Hapa ulipo ni forodhani. Forodhani--hapa najua.	Here where you [now] are is the customs house. The customs house--I know this place.
-itwa	Barabara hii inaitwa Azania Front. Ukitoka hapa Azania Front utakwenda moja kwa moja mpaka Main Avenue. Naam bwana.	This road is called Azania Front. When you leave here, you go straight ahead as far as Main Avenue. Yes.
mwisho	Halafu utafika mwisho wa Main Avenue.	Then you get to the end of Main Avenue.
pale	Pale mwisho utaona pana majumba mawili.	There at the end you will see where there are two buildings.
pahali	Jumba moja lina pahali pameandikwa 'Railway Station.'	One building has a place [where] is written 'Railway Station.'
-andikwa	Jumba jingine lina pahali pengine pameandikwa 'Police Station.'	A sign on the other says 'Police Station.'

	Naam Bwana.	Yes.
-shika	Pale Police Station utashika barabara inayoelekea	There at the Police Station you will take a road which
machweo	machweo ya jua.	runs west.
	Utakwenda moja kwa moja	Go right ahead to where there
penye	mpaka penye 'Keep Left.'	is a traffic circle.
kibao	Hapo pana kibao kilichoandikwa 'Keep Left.'	There, there is a small sign with the words 'Keep Left.'
hapo	Hapo napakumouka bwana. Ehee, pale penye 'Keep Left' pamebadilika.	I rememoer that place. That place at the circle has changed.
sura	Sura yake imekuwa mpya.	The place looks different. ('Its appearance has become new. ')
-chukua	Utachukua barabara hiyo moja kwa moja mpaka Ring Street.	You take that road straight ahead to Ring Street.
kuwa	Ulipoondoka, pale king, hapakuwa na 'Keep Left.'	When you left, they didn't have a traffic circle at King.
	Ah, hivi siku hizi pale	Oh, there is one there
ipo	ipo?	nowadays?
	Kdiyo, ipo!	Yes, there is.
hapo	Baada ya hapo, endelea tu mpaka Msimbazi Street.	From there, just continue on to Msimbazi Street.
mpya	Pale Msimbazi Street pana 'Keep Left' mpya.	There at Msimbazi Street there is another 'Keep Left.'
-tengenezwa	Hapo barabara imetengenezwa vizuri sana.	There the road has been surfaced very nicely.
kupendeza	Barabara hiyo ni safi ya kupendeza.	That road is delightfully smooth.

Unit 136 (Inaendelea)

matokeo	Loo, Bwana Yusufu, matokeo hayo yote yametokea katika miaka hii mitatu?	Say, Yusufu, all this progress has come about in these three years?
nyuma	Matokeo makubwa sana yametokea hapa nyuma.	Great progress has taken place lately.
orofa	Zipo nyumba za orofa nyingi na kubwa.	There are many and large [multi- story] buildings.
uzuri	Nyumba hizo, kidogo kama Amerika, kwa uzuri wake.	Those buildings are a little like America[n buildings] with respect to their beauty.
	Kweli?	You don't say?
kabisa	Kweli kabisa!	Yes, indeed.
pale	Tena nasikia pale Mnazimoja pamejengwa majumba.	And I also hear that buildings have been put up there at Mnazimoja.
-kubwa	Majumba hayo ni makubwa ya orofa.	Those buildings have many stories.
	Kabisa!	That's quite true.
-zidi	Sasa ukisha toka Msimbazi Street utazidi kwenda moja kwa moja.	Now, after you get past Msimbazi Street, you continue straight ahead.
kwenye	Baadaye utafika kwenye barabara inayokwenda Kigogo.	Then you will come to where there is a road that goes to Kigogo.
pana	Hapo pia pana 'Keep Left.' Vizuri sana Bwana Yusufu!	There's another circle there. Very good!
kushoto	Kwa mkono wa kushoto wa barabara ya Kigogo kuna nyumba kubwa.	On the left side of the Kigogo road, there is a large building.

Boma	Nyumba hiyo kubwa iliyo- jengwa ni Boma.	That large [recently built] building is the District Office.
-acha	Mbona Boma hilo nililiacha Acacia Avenue!	('Why, I left that Boma on Acacia Avenue!')
-hamishwa	Imekuwa kuwaje likahamishwa?	How did it happen that it got moved?
-hama	Oh, limehamishwa huko kwa sababu siku hizi mji umekuwa mkubwa sana!	It was moved there because nowadays the city has become very large.

Unit 137 (Inaendelea)

-fanya	Wanafanyia kazi gani katika jumba lile kubwa kule Acacia Avenue?	What kind of work do they use that large building on Acacia for?
	Unajua, kazi za serikali ni nyingi sana.	You know, the work of the government is very extensive.
-gawanya	Kazi hizo za serikali zime- gawanywa kwa ma - D.C.	These duties have been divided among the D.C.'s.
	Sasa ukitoka pale Kigogo, nenda moja kwa moja	Now, when you leave Kigogo, go straight ahead until you
-karibia	mpaka ukaribie daraja la Kigogo.	get near the Kigogo Bridge.
-pita	Halafu pita mkono wa kushoto wa daraja hilo.	Then bear left past the bridge.
-andika	Utaona pahali pameandikwa 'Msimbazi.'	You will see a sign saying 'Msimbazi.'
-kuta mlinzi	Pale bila shaka utamkuta mlinzi atakayekuelekeza njia.	There, you will no doubt run into a watchman who will show you the way.

ugeni	Mwonyeshe kadi yako ya	Show him your visitors card
-karibisha	ugeni na utakaribishwa.	and you will be made welcome.
	Asante sana, Bwana Yusufu.	Thanks a lot!
-wahi	Je wewe umewahi kufika katika	And you, have you ever been
jengo	jengo hilo, likoje?	in that building? What is
		it like?
-penda	Oh, ni zuri la kupendeza	Oh, it's lovely - very
	zuri sana.	beautiful.
-onekana	Je, linaweza kuonekana kwa	And is it visible from any
mbali	mbali kidogo?	distance?
umbali	Naam! Hata umbali wa	Yes! You can even see it
	maili moja unaweza	from a mile off.
	kuliona.	
-lingana	Je, Bwana Yusufu, unalilinga-	How do you compare it with
	nishaje na Arnautoglu	Arnatoglu Community Center?
	Community Centre?	
kwa	Kwa kweli siwezi kulilingani-	I can't really compare it.
	sha sana.	
	Siwezi kulilinganisha kwa	I can't compare it because
	sababu Arnautoglu ni la	Arnatoglu has been there for
siku	siku nyingi.	some time.
mazoea	Watu wamekuwa na mazoea	People have become accustomed
	nalo.	to it.
jipya	Hilo la Msimbazi ni jipya.	The one at Msimbazi is new.
matokeo	Hatujui matokeo yake	('We don't know what will come
	yatakuwa namna gani.	of it.')
	Asante sana Bwana Yusufu.	Thanks!
-ona	Nadhani tutaonana kabla	('I'll see you before I go
-ondoa	sijaondoka kurudi	back to Nairobi.')
	Nairobi.	

Unit 138 (Inaendelea)

-shukuru	Ningeshukuru sana kama ungefika nyumbani kwangu.	I'd be most grateful if you would drop by the house.
-fika	Hivyo tafadhali ufike	So please do come.
jambo	Hilo ni jambo zuri sana Bwana Yusufu.	That's very kind [of you], Yusufu!
-kawia	Lakini, kama unavyojua sisi watu wa mjini hatukawii	But as you know, we city dwellers change our
-hama	kuhama.	residence frequently.
mtaa	Hivi wakati huu uko mtaa gani?	So what street are you living on right now?
	Mini sasa ninakaa Msimbazi Street.	Right now, I'm living on Msimbazi Street.
mwenyewe	Nyumba yangu nimejenga mwenyewe.	I built my own house.
orofa	Nyumba hiyo ni nzuri na ina orofa moja.	The house is very nice, and it has an upstairs.
tajiri	Lo! Bwana Yusufu umekuwa tajiri sana.	Hey! You've been doing all right for yourself!
mara	Mara umekwisha jenga nyumba!	You've already built a house.
	Ehe, kwa sababu ya kulima!	Yes, because of farming.
-hama	Aaa, kumbe sisi tunaohamishwa kutoka hapa kwenda hapa	Ah, [yes], so those of us who are transferred hither and thither just lose out!
hasara	tunapata hasara tu.	
-furahi	Nitafurahi sana kuiona nyumba yako.	I'll be very glad to see your house.

mpango	Vyema! Na nitakueleza mipango mingi.	Fine! ('I'll fill you in on all the details!)
--------	--------------------------------------	---

Unit 139: Duka la nguo

	Habari Bwana Salumu?	How are you, Mr. Salumu?
	Oh, nzuri sana, Bwana Juma.	Oh, very well.
	Karibu bwana!	Come in!
	Asante sana, bwana!	Thanks very much.
-fungua	Karibu bwana! Siku hizi nimefungua duka kubwa sana.	Come in! In the last few days I've opened a large store.
duka	Ni duka la nguo, vitu vya kula, na vitu vingine mbali mbali.	It's a [combination] dry goods store, grocery, and general emporium.
mbali mbali	Kuna nguo gani unauza?	What kind of clothes do you sell?
kuna	Kuna nguo za aina nyingi ambazo ninauza.	There are a lot of kinds that I sell.
aina	Ninauza kanga, shuka za kitanda, mashati fulana za ndani, na fulana ndogo za watoto.	I sell kangas, bed linens, shirts, undershirts and baby clothes.
kanga	Pia ninauza nguo nyingine nyingi.	I also sell many other [kinds of] clothes.
fulana za ndani	Nimepata nguo hizo kutoka Mombasa.	I've gotten these dry goods from Mombasa.
-toka	Nguo hizo niliziagiza.	I ordered those goods.
-agiza	Nataka nguo za watoto - kaptura na shati.	I want some children's clothing- shirts and shorts.
kaptura	Tena ningependa mashati mawili, yangu mimi mwenyewe.	I'd also like two shirts for myself.
mini		

	Vile vile ningependa suruali	I'd also like two pair of
khaki	mbili za kaki ya Amerika,	trousers [made] of American
	na koti moja.	khaki, and a coat.
	Je, una fundi anayeweza	Do you have a tailor who can
-shona	kushona koti?	make a coat?
mwenyewe	Ah, mimi mwenyewe na mke	Oh! My wife sews, and so do I.
	wangu tunashona.	
	Baada ya kufunga duka,	We do this work ourselves
-fanya	huzifanya kazi hizi	after hours.
	sisi wenyewe.	
	Huwa tunazifanya bila ya	We ordinarily do it without
taabu	kupata taabu ya kumpa	the bother of giving [it]
	fundi.	to a tailor.
	Lakini kumbuka kuna	But bear in mind that we also
	nyingine ambazo	have other [clothing] which
kwisha	zilikwisha shonwa kabisa.	is ready-made.
hebu	Hebu jaribu moja katika	Try one of these.
	hizi!	

Unit 140 (Inaendelea)

	Bwana, wasema 'nguo iliyo-	[But] they say that a ready-
-stiri	shonwa haistiri mtu.'	made garment does not cover
		one properly.
	Nisingependelea kuchukua	I wouldn't like to take a
-penda	nguo iliyokwisha shonwa.	ready-made garment.
	Ningetaka kupima mimi	I'd like to be measured in
-pima	mwenyewe.	person.

mawazo	Oh, kumbe bado una mawazo	Oh so! You still have old-
kizamani	yale yale ya kizamani!	fashioned ideas!
-vaa	Tazama shati nililovaa mimi.	Look at the shirt that I'm
		wearing.
Japan	Shati hili limetengenezwa	This shirt was made in Japan.
	Japan.	
	Shati hili ni zuri na la	This shirt is nice
-penda	kupendeza sana.	and very good-looking.
-chukua	Kushona kwake kunachukua	Sewing it takes a long time.
	wakati mrefu.	
	Shati, kama unavyohitaji	A shirt, as <u>you</u> want it, you
wewe	wewe, hulipati mpaka	won't get before tomorrow.
-pata	kesho.	
	Lakini, ukitaka lililoshomwa	But if you want a ready-made
tayari	tayari, unanunua na kuvaa	shirt, you buy it and put
pale pale	pale pale.	it on right on the spot. .
	Kweli, lakini kabla	True, but before we go any
-enda	hatujaendelea mbele,	further, what do you think?
-ona	waonaje Bwana Salumu!	['how do you see?']
ile ile	Bei hii ni ile ile kama ya	Is this price the same as
	mwezi jana?	last month's?
-panda	Au bei hii imepanda kidogo.	Or has it gone up a little?
ushuru	Nasikia kuwa ushuru wa	I hear that the customs duty
forodha	forodha umepanda siku	has gone up recently.
	hizi.	
	Kwa kuwa ushuru umepanda	Because of the fact that the
kuwa	bei ya nguo imekuwa ghali	duty has increased, the price
	sana.	of clothes has become very
		high.
	Je, vipi?	What about that?
-angalia	Usiangalie hayo; ni maneno	Don't pay any attention to
maneno	ya watu tu.	that! It's only a rumor.

hotuba	Watu wengine hawakuweza kuelewa ile hotuba ya Waziri Mkuu.	Some people misunderstood that speech of the Prime Minister's.
--------	--	--

Unit 141 (Inaendelea)

maana	Waziri Mkuu alisema 'Bei ya vitu itapanda.' Lakini watu wengine hawakuelewa maana ya maneno hayo.	He said, 'The price of things is going to rise.' But some people didn't understand the meaning of those words.
maadam -panda -panda	Maadam Bwana Waziri alisema bei itapanda, walianza kupandisha bei.	Because the minister said that prices would rise, they began to raise prices.
kila mara	Lakini mimi kila mara nilikuwa nikienda kwenye Baraza la Taifa.	But I was attending the National Assembly regularly.
-sikia mapato	Nilikuwa nikienda kusikiliza wanasema nini juu ya mapato.	I was going [in order] to listen to what they say about income.
-panda wakati	Kwa sababu hiyo sikuweza kupandisha bei yangu. Wakati huu bei ni ile ile.	For that reason I couldn't raise my price[s]. At the present time the price is the same.
faida kwa	Napata faida ndogo sana. Napata senti ishirini na tano au thelathini kwa kila shati.	I make a very small profit. I make 25 or 30 cents on each shirt.
kwanza humu	Kumbeka! Nadhani hii ni mara yangu ya kwanza kuingia humu dukani.	Really, I think this is my first time to be in this shop.

mwananchi	Hili ni duka la mwananchi ambaye mpaka sasa	This is the shop of a fellow African who up to now hasn't raised prices.
-panda	hajapandisha bei.	
-fahamu	Nafahamu, Bwana Salum, kuna wananchi wachache sana	It seems to me, Salum, that there are very few Africans who have shops.
wenye	wenye maduka.	
	Hivyo basi, wewe ulikuwa kutopandisha mtu wa kwanza kutopandisha bei.	And so you were the first person not to raise prices. [-to- is used to form negative infinitives. It stands immediately after ku-.]
Waarabu	Waarabu wamekwisha pandisha mahali bei kila mahali.	The Arabs have already raised prices everywhere.
hebu	Hebu, Bwana Salumu, kuna nguo za wanawake?	Well, then, Bwana Salumu, do you have women's clothes?

Unit 142 (Inaendelea)

	Nguo za wanawake ni hizi hapa.	The women's clothes are these here.
	Nyingine unaweza kuvaa hivi hivi hivi hivi kama kanga.	Some you can wear just like a kanga.
	Siku hizi bwana tunataka mavazi ya nchi za magharibi.	Nowadays we like Western clothing.
vazi		
kwa	Ningependa gauni mbili kwa bibi yangu.	I'd like two dresses for my wife.
itakiwavyo	Je, fundi wako anaweza kushona vizuri itakiwavyo?	And can your tailor sew as nicely as required?
	Oh, kabisa! Pia kuna mishono mingi.	Oh, by all means! Besides there are many styles.

kibwebwe	Kuna mshono wa kibwebwe na mingine mingi ya kila aina.	There is the kibwebwe style, and many others of every kind.
mkeo	Mshono gani mkeo anapenda?	What style does your wife like?
mchinjo	Naona kama anapenda mchinjo.	I think she likes the mchinjo style.
	Waelewa mchinjo ni nini bwana?	Do you understand what mchinjo is?
hitaji	Naelewa sana, maana mahitaji ya watu wengi nayapata hapa.	I know very well, because I (‘deal with’) the needs of many people here.
	Aha! Basi nataka mchinjo. Mpime, bwana.	Aha! Then I want mchinjo. Measure her, please.
kifua	Nampima kifua thelathini na sita.	I measure [her] bust [at] 36.
kiuno	Pia nampima kiuno ishirini na sita.	And [her] waist at 26.
bega	Pia nampima mabega kumi na nane.	And [her] shoulders at 18.
urefu	Urefu wataka, tuseme, kama arobaini na moja?	The length you want, let's say, about 41?
	Tuseme mpaka hapa. Ina- tosha.	Let's say to here. This is all right.

Unit 143 (Inaendelea)

-fuata	Je, lini atazifuata nguo hizi?	And when shall she come for these clothes?
	Leo ni Jumatatu. Nadhani	This is Monday. I think they
-kuta	Jumatano ijayo atazikuta tayari.	will be ready next Wednesday.

	Asante sana, Salumu.	Thanks very much.
wakati	Hivi sasa naona kuwa wakati wetu wa kuondoka umefika.	Well, now, I see it's come time for us to leave.
kwenda	Tutakwenda na nguo.	We'll take the clothing with us.
-funga	Tufungiefungie zile nguo.	Could you sort of wrap it up?
-fuata	Hizo nyingine tutazifuata baadaye.	We'll come after those others later.
-sahau	Asante. Lakini umesahau kitu kimoja.	Thank you. But you've forgotten one thing.
mbona	Mbona pesa bado hujanipa.	You haven't paid me yet.
hizi	Aha, pesa hizi! Kiasi gani, bwana?	Oh, of course, the money! How much, sir?
	Ni shilingi thelathini na saba na senti hamsini.	It's Sh. 37.50.
	Haya bwana! Hizi ni shilingi ishirini; hizi sh. kumi; sh. saba; senti hamsini.	O. K.! Here's a 20, a 10, seven shillings and 50 cents.
	Oh, asante sana, bwana, asante.	Thank you very much.
	Haya, kwaheri bwana!	Well, good bye!

Unit 144: Watu wazima na maendeleo

	Naam Bwana Yusufu!	Hello, Yusufu!
	Naam, bwana!	Hello!
	Habari za siku nyingi?	How have you been?
	Nzuri sana bwana.	Very well [thank you].
	Ulikuwa wapi siku hizi?	Where have you been these [last few] days?
safari	Ulikwenda shamba au	Did you go to the farm or were
kazi	ulikuwa safarini kazini?	you on a business trip?

sehemu	Nilikuwa sehemu za Kilosa. Habari za Kilosa? Habari za Kilosa nzuri sana.	I was around Kilosa. How are things at Kilosa? Fine.
jamaa	Hawajambo jamaa wote? Hawajambo wote.	Is everybody fine? [Yes], they're fine.
-nyima	Wanatumya nini kule? Huko wanatumya mpunga sasa.	What do they have more of there than we have? They've got more rice than we have.
kidogo vipi	Je, namna gani, umeleta mpunga kidogo au vipi? Nimeleta kidogo; kiasi cha	Well, what about it? Have you brought a little rice, or what? I've brought a little; an amount
-tosha	kuwatosha watoto wangu na mimi mwenyewe. Watoto wako tu? Naam!	sufficient for my children and myself. Your children only? Yes.
-karibisha	He! Sisi rafiki zako je? Ninyi mtakaribishwa siku moja.	Hey! What about us, your friends? You'll be invited one day.
hata	Mimi ningependa hata watoto wako pia waje. Wanaweza kuja siku ya Jumapili saa sita.	I'd even like for your children to come also. They can come Sunday noon.
-karibisha chakula	Ninaweza nikakukaribisheni chakulani. Asante sana, bwana.	I can invite you (pl.) for food. Thank you very much.
tena	Nini tena ulicholeta?	What else have you brought?
jambo	Mimi sikuleta kitu kingine cho chote.	I didn't bring anything else at all.
-tazama	Nilikwenda kutazama pahali pa kulima.	I went to look at a field.

Unit 145 (Inaendelea)

ukulima	Ukulima wa aina gani?	[For] what kind of farming?
	Eee, nataka kulima mahindi,	Oh, I want to raise maize, millet,
pamoja	mtama, mpunga pamoja	and rice, along with peas.
mbaazi	na mbaazi.	
	Je, Bwana Yusufu, unataka	Then I take it you're planning
-acha	kutuacha nini?	to leave us?
mbona	Mbona una mipango	Gee, you seem to have great plans!
	mikubwa mikubwa!	
siyo	Siyo kukuacheni.	It's not a matter of leaving you.
hivyo	Ninafanya hivyo kwa sababu	I'm doing this because I have a
	nina watoto wengi.	large number of children.
	Sasa nina watoto watano,	I have five children now.
-tegemea	Nikitegemea tu mshahara	If I depend entirely on the salary
	ninaopata, hauwezi	that I'm getting, it won't be
-tosh	kunitosha.	enough for me.
namna	Bwana Yusufu, namna gani	Say, what about the work at
	habari ya kazi huko	Kilosa now?
	Kilosa sasa?	
hiyo	Hiyo Community Centre	Is that Community Center getting
	inaendelea vizuri?	along well?
-enda	Inaendelea vizuri sana.	Very well.
-zima	Watu wazima wanasoma.	Adults are studying.
	Wanatumia kitabu kile cha	They're using that book called
	'Twende Tusome Sote.'	<u>Twende Tusome Sote.</u>
kile	Kile kitabu kinachoanzia na	That book that begins with <u>baba</u> ,
-anza	'baba mama.'	<u>mama</u> [and so forth].
hicho	Kitabu hicho kinaeleza sana	That book also contains other
	mambo mengine vile vile.	subject matter.
	Je, Kiswahili na Kiingereza?	And what about Swahili and
		English?

-kimbilia	Wengi sana wanakimbilia kwenye Kiswahili kuliko kwenye Kiingereza.	A lot of people are flocking into the Swahili [classes], as compared with the English [classes].
	Maendeleo ya wanawake	What kind of progress are the
namna	namna gani?	women making?
maendeleo	Nasikia maendeleo ya wanawake yamekuja juu sana.	I hear that the level of achieve- ment of the women has risen sharply.
mwanamke	Wanawake wanaendelea vizuri sana.	The women are progressing very nicely.
-staajabu	Kisha inastaajabisha kuona ya kuwa wanawake wanafanya kazi sana.	In fact, it is astonishing to see that the women are working hard.
	Wanawake wanafanya kazi	The women do a lot more work
mwanamume	sana kuliko wanaume.	than the men.
hapa hapa	Basi ni kama hapa hapa Dar es Salaam.	So it's just like here in Dar es Salaam.
darasa	Yale madarasa yetu yanaendelea vizuri sana.	Our classes are getting along very well.
bidii	Wanawake wanaonyesha bidii kuliko wanaume.	The women display more energy than the men.
	Wakati wa mtihani, wanawake	At exam time, the women are ahead of
-tangulia	wanawatangulia wanaume.	the men.

Unit 146 (Inaendelea)

	Je, kuna sababu yo yote?	Is there any reason [for that]?
mambo	Kwanini mambo yanakuwa hivi, Bwana Yusufu?	Why is this so, Yusufu?

sababu	Ndiyo, kuna sababu kubwa mbili:	Yes, there are two important reasons.
nafasi	Kwanza, wanawake wana wakati mwingi zaidi kuliko wanaume.	In the first place, the women have more free time than the men.
pili	Pili, wanawake wanafikiri mambo machache zaidi kuliko wanaume.	In the second place, they have fewer things to worry about than men [have].
-fikiri	Wanaume wanakwenda kazini.	The men go to work.
huwa	Wanaume huwa wamechoka	The men are generally tired when they come back from work.
-rudi	warudipo kutoka kazini.	
pengine	Pengine husema, 'Mimi leo siwezi kwenda shuleni. Nitakwenda kesho.'	Sometimes they say, 'I can't go to school today.'
kumbe	Kumbe wanachelewa!	'I'll go tomorrow.'
namna	Je, namna gani mpango ule kama huu wa hapa Dar es Salaam?	In that case, they fall behind. Say, what about that plan like the one (of) here in Dar es Salaam?
vita	Mpango ule wa vita vya kupigana na ujinga.	That plan for a war against ['of fighting against] illiteracy?
ujinga		
huo	Mpango huo bado haujaanza huko Kilosa?	Hasn't that plan gotten under way there in Kilosa?
kule	Tunasikitika sana, bwana, kwa sababu kule kuna Community Centre tu.	We very much regret that there's only a Community Center there.
ingawaje	Ingawaje kuna jumba hilo,	Although that building is in existence, that campaign has not yet started.
jumba	vita hivyo havijaanza.	
-tazama	Je, wanatazamia kuanza	And are they thinking about starting in the near future?
karibu	hivi karibuni?	Definitely! I've heard the D. O.
Bwana Shauri	Bwana Shauri wa huko	of that area discussing it with the local people.
-zungumza	akizungumza na wenyeji.	

-anza	Wamezungunza juu ya kuanzisha mpango huo.	They have discussed getting that plan under way.
-------	--	---

Unit 147 (Inaendelea)

wo wote	Watataka msaada wo wote kutoka hapa? Msaada ni lazima	Will they want any kind of help from here? It is necessary to get aid from here.
-pata	upatikane kutoka hapa.	Without aid it is impossible.
-weza	Bila msaada haiwezekani.	How do you mean, impossible?
namna	Haiwezekani, namna gani? Jambo lo lote linataka	Anything at all requires leader- ship.
uongozi	uongozi.	Without leadership, it's impossible.
-weza	Bila uongozi haiwezekani.	Do they think we won't be able to get leaders there at Kilosa?
-fikiri	Wanafikiri hatuwezi kupata kule	We'll be able to get leaders, all right.
kiongozi	Viongozi tunaweza kuwapata. Viongozi wanaweza kuja hapa wafunzwe.	Leaders can come here to be trained.
kule kule	Wakisha onyeshwa watarudi kule kule kuwaonyesha	Once they have been shown [how], they'll go right back to show their fellow townsmen.
ndugu	ndugu zao.	Now, then, Yusufu, your plan indicates [that you are] going to farm.
mpango	Sasa Bwana Yusufu, mpango wako unaonyesha kwenda kulima.	

-tazama jamaa	Unatazamia kwenda kuwa- ongoza jamaa wa Kilosa, au vipi?	Do you anticipate going to lead the people of Kilosa, or what?
-omba bila	Mpaka niombwe. Bila kuombwa nitasaidia kidogo sana. Haya, Bwana Yusufu.	If I'm asked. I will be of very little assistance if I am not asked. Fine, Yusufu.
-tazama	Natazamia baada ya muda mfupi watu watafika huko Kilosa.	I anticipate that people will get to Kilosa within a short time. You'll [be able to] give them adequate advice.
mawaidha ule -piga mbele	Utawapa mawaidha ya kutosha. Bila shaka mpango ule wa vita vya kupigana na ujinga utaendelea mbele.	I'm sure that the literacy campaign will move forward.
-shukuru	Nitashukuru ikiwa watafika.	If they get there, I'll be grateful.
tu	Natumaini watafika tu, Bwana Yusufu. Haya bwana, asante sana, kwaheri.	I think they'll get there all right, Yusufu. Well, thanks a lot. Good bye.

Unit 148: Safari ya kwenda bara

	Habari za siku nyingi, bwana?	How have you been?
	Habari nzuri Bwana Yusufu.	Fine, Yusufu.
-fungua bara	Mbona unafungafunga mizigo, unakwenda wapi? Nafungafunga mizigo nataka kwenda bara.	How come you are packing [your] bags? Where are you going? I'm packing [my] bags; I want to go up country.

-anza	Wamezungumza juu ya kuanzisha mpango huo.	They have discussed getting that plan under way.
-------	--	---

Unit 147 (Inaendelea)

wo wote	Watataka msaada wo wote kutoka hapa? Msaada ni lazima	Will they want any kind of help from here? It is necessary to get aid from here.
-pata	upatikane kutoka hapa.	Without aid it is impossible.
-weza	Bila msaada haiwezekani.	How do you mean, impossible?
namna	Haiwezekani, namna gani? Jambo lo lote linataka	Anything at all requires leader- ship.
uongozi	uongozi.	Without leadership, it's impossible.
-weza	Bila uongozi haiwezekani.	Do they think we won't be able to get leaders there at Kilosa?
-fikiri	Wanafikiri hatuwezi kupata	We'll be able to get leaders, all right.
kule	viongozi kule Kilosa? Viongozi tunaweza kuwapata.	Leaders can come here to be trained.
kiongozi	Viongozi wanaweza kuja hapa wafunzwe. Wakisha onyeshwa watarudi	Once they have been shown [how], they'll go right back to show their fellow townsmen.
kule kule	kule kule kuwaonyesha	Now, then, Yusufu, your plan indicates [that you are] going to farm.
ndugu	ndugu zao.	
mpango	Sasa Bwana Yusufu, mpango wako unaonyesha kwenda kulima.	

-tazama jamaa	Unatazamia kwenda kuwa- ongoza jamaa wa Kilosa, au vipi?	Do you anticipate going to lead the people of Kilosa, or what?
-omba bila	Mpaka niombwe. Bila kuombwa nitasaidia kidogo sana. Haya, Bwana Yusufu.	If I'm asked. I will be of very little assistance if I am not asked. Fine, Yusufu.
-tazama mawaidha	Natazamia baada ya muda mfupi watu watafika huko Kilosa. Utawapa mawaidha ya kutosha.	I anticipate that people will get to Kilosa within a short time. You'll [be able to] give them adequate advice.
ule -piga mbele	Bila shaka mpango ule wa vita vya kupigana na ujinga utaendelea mbele.	I'm sure that the literacy campaign will move forward.
-shukuru tu	Nitashukuru ikiwa watafika. Natumaini watafika tu, Bwana Yusufu. Haya bwana, asante sana, kwaheri.	If they get there, I'll be grateful. I think they'll get there all right, Yusufu. Well, thanks a lot. Good bye.

Unit 148: Safari ya kwenda bara

	Habari za siku nyingi, bwana?	How have you been?
	Habari nzuri Bwana Yusufu.	Fine, Yusufu.
-funga	Mbona unafungafunga mizigo, unakwenda wapi?	How come you are packing [your] bags? Where are you going?
bara	Nafungafunga mizigo nataka kwenda bara.	I'm packing [my] bags; I want to go up country.

	Baraa! Sehemu gani?	The country? Which part?
Ziwa	Bukoba, huko Jimbo la Ziwa la Magharibi.	Bukoba, in West Lake Province.
	Nimeambiwa kuwa kumetokea	I've been told that there has
fulani	kazi fulani ya ghafla	come up some kind of unexpected
ghafla	huko.	opening there.
	Hivi kutoka hapa mpaka	So how many miles is it from
kutoka	Bukoba ni maili ngapi?	here to Bukoba?
	Bwana Yusufu, siwezi kusema	I can't say for sure how many
hakika	kwa hakika ni maili ngapi.	miles it is.
-pata	Lakini yapata kama maili	But it's about 750 miles.
	mia saba na hamsini hivi.	
-chukua	Unachukua muda wa siku	How many days do you take [to get]
	ngapi kutoka hapa mpaka	from here to there?
huko	huko?	
chombo	Unakwenda kwa chombo gani	By what means [of transport] are
	mpaka huko?	you going there?
muda	Nitachukua muda wa siku	I'll take (a period of) about
	tatu hivi.	three days.
	Nitatoka hapa kwa gari la	I'll go from here by train to
	moshi mpaka Morogoro,	Morogoro, Dodoma, Tabora and
	Dodoma, Tabora na Mwanza.	Mwanza.
-ingia	Nikifika Mwanza nitaingia	When I get to Mwanza, I'll take
meli	melini.	a steamboat.
mle	Mle nitalala siku moja.	I'll be on it over one night.
-lala		
yake	Asubuhi yake nitafika	The next morning I'll get to
	Bukoba.	Bukoba.
mote	Humo mote utakamosafiri	In all that traveling that you
	kutoka hapa mpaka Mwanza	will do from here to Mwanza by
	kwa gari la moshi, utakaa	train, what class of coach will
daraja	chumba daraja gani?	you take?

-safiri	Utasafiria daraja la pili au la kwanza au la tatu?	Will you travel by second class, or first or third?
	Bwana Yusufu, siwezi kuku-	I can't tell you for sure which
-hakikisha	hakikishia ni daraja	class I'll travel [by].
-safiri	gani nitakayosafiria.	
-jua	Mpaka wakati huu sijajua kwa hakika.	Up to this moment I'm not yet sure.
kwamba	Lakini ninalojua ni kwamba	But what I know is that I'll
	nitafiriria daraja la	travel [by] second class.
yaani	pili, yaani 'second class.'	

Unit 149 (Inaendelea)

	Aha, sasa katika 'second class' mnapata vitanda?	Aha! Now in second class do you get berths.
kitanda	Vitanda vimo, Bwana Yusufu.	There are berths in [second class].
vimo	Hata ukitaka chandalua utapata.	You even get a mosquito net if you want one.
chandalua	je?	What about food?
je?	Chakula unapata kwa pesa.	You pay for the food.
kwa	Ni sharti ulipe, bwana.	You have to pay.
sharti	Alá! Nauli nayo uliyotoa je?	Ala! And what about the fare that you paid?
-toa	Nauli hiyo unayotoa ni ya ku-	The fare (that you pay) is only for transportation and berth.
-safiri	kusafirisha tu na kukupa kitanda.	
-pa	Je, wanaweza kukuacha ukiwa	Tell me, can they leave you behind if you don't have money to buy food?
huna	huna pesa za kununulia chakula?	
-ajali	Hiyo, bwana, wao hawajali.	For that, they don't care.

hali sawa	Sasa ufikapo Bukoba, hali ya huko ni sawa na ya Dar es Salaam?	Now when you get to Bukoba, is it similar to Dar es Salaam then?
	Aaa, Bwana Yusufu, hapo naweza nikakuhadithia hata kwa siku nzima.	Ah, Yusufu, about that I can tell you a story [that would last] even a whole day.
maana ndiko	Naweza kufanya hivyo kwa maana huko ndiko kwetu.	I can do that because that is where I am from.
hewa baridi	Hali ya hewa ikoje huko? Kuna baridi nyingi?	What is the climate like there? Is it very cold?
sio joto	Huko baridi siyo nyingi sana. Kule joto hakuna wala hali-	It's not very cold there. There there is no heat, and it
-jua	julikani kama hapa Dar es Salaam.	isn't known, the way it is here in Dar es Salaam.
jani mgomba kijani	Kule majani ya miti na migomba ni ya kijani kibichi tu kwa mwaka	There, the leaves of the trees and bananas are green all year round.
~bichi	mzima.	
rangi	Kwa hiyo kila kitu kule ni cha rangi ya kijani kibichi tu, sivyo?	Thus, everything there is green, isn't it?
	Naam!	Yes, it is.
sisi	Kwa hiyo ninyi hamna njaa zaidi kama sisi.	And so you don't have more famine than we [have].
kuja bahati	Bwana, kule njaa inakuja kwa bahati mbaya tu.	We have famine there only in the case of very bad luck.
hasa kwenu	Hasa mnatumia chakula gani huko kwenu?	Just what kind of food do you eat there where you live?
kule	Kule chakula kikubwa hasa ni ndizi, maharagwe, nyama, na samaki.	There, the really important food[s] are bananas, beans, meat, and fish.
kula	Hamli wali kama tuna- vyokula sisi huku?	Don't you eat rice as we do here?

wa	Kule wali tunakula lakini wa njaa tu.	We do eat rice there, but only (‘when we can’t get anything else.’)
	Kwa nini?	Why?
tele	Kwa kuwa kule ndizi ni tele sana.	Because there bananas are very plentiful.

Unit 150 (Inaendelea)

majani	Nimesikia kuwa hamli mboga za majani kwenu.	I’ve heard that you don’t eat green leafy vegetables.
mnyama	Mnasema kuwa ni chakula cha wanyama.	You say that it is food for animals.
	Je, hii ni kweli?	Is that so?
uongo	Huo ni uongo mtupu Bwana	That’s nothing but a lie!
~tupu	Yusufu.	
-elewa	Kule watu wanaelewa.	The people there are not so dumb.
maana	Wanajua maana ya vitamin ni nini.	They know what ‘vitamin’ means.
-pata	Usipokula chakula cha majani huwezi kupata vitamin.	When you don’t eat leafy foods, you can’t get vitamins.
-staajabu	Mimi nilistaajabu sana. Nilistaajabu niliposikia kuwa kweli watu hawali mboga za majani.	I was quite surprised. I was surprised when I heard that people really don’t eat leafy vegetables.
hiyo	Hiyo si kweli hata kidogo.	That’s not true at all.
hata		
Mungu	Omba Mungu uitembelee	Ask God that you may visit that
-tembelea	nchi hiyo siku moja.	country some day.
-shuhudia	Wewe mwenyewe utashuhudia.	You’ll see it for yourself.

	Bwana Yusufu, sasa naona	I see that the time is approach-
-karibia	wakati unakaribia.	ing, Yusufu.
budi	Sina budi nikimbilie gari la	I must hurry [to catch] the train.
	moshi. Vema. Ningefurahi sana	Fine. I'd be very happy if you
-andika	kama ungeniandikia	would drop me a line as soon
mara	barua mara tu ufikapo	as you get to Mwanza.
	Mwanza.	
habari	Unieleze habari zote za	Tell me all about the trip
	safari uliyosafiri.	you've made.
	Safari ya kutoka hapa	The trip from here in Dar es
	Dar es Salaam, Morogoro,	Salaam, Morogoro, Kilosa,
	Kilosa, Dodoma, Tabora	Dodoma, and Tabora, as far
	mpaka Mwanza.	as Mwanza.
jinsi	Unieleze jinsi utakavyopanda	Tell me how you will take the
stima	stima kutoka pale Mwanza	steamer from Mwanza to Bukoba.
pale	mpaka Bukoba.	
	Kwaheri bwana. Safiri	Good bye, and safe trip, ['travel
	salama!	in peace'].
	Kwaheri bwana, asante!	Good bye, and thanks.

SWAHILI

Vocabulary

-A-

abiria	passenger	82	-ambia	to tell	66
-acha	to leave	99	-ambukizwa	to become infected	59
ada	fee	25	amekwenda	he is gone	24
adhuhuri	noon	102	-amka	to wake up	114
afadhali	it is better	43	-ankia	to greet, visit. The essential meaning is 'greet'; it can be used for 'pay a friendly call' but for a visit more formal than one of friendly greeting, as for business etc., -zuru is commonly used.	56
afisi (N)	office	103	amri (N)	a command; authority, rule	100R
afya (N)	health	39	-andika	to write	45
-agiza	to order	72	-angalia	to be careful	73
-ahidi	to promise	57	angu	my	11
aina (N)	kind, sort	60R	-angusha	to cause to fall, drop, even accidentally	47
ajabu (N or MA)	amazement	112	-anza	begin	30
-ajabu	to be surprised	106	ao	their	29
ajili (N)	cause, reason, sake	80R	ardhi (N)	soil	111
ake	his/her/its	17	asante	thank you	10
akili (N)	ability, intelligence	111	askari (WA)	policeman	112
ako	your	17	asubuhi (N)	morning	1
alasiri (N)	early afternoon	102			
-alika	invite	134			
ama... ama...	either...or...	124			

SWAHILI

au	or	14	baraza (N)	verandah, place of public council, court	112
-azima	to borrow/lend	120	baridi (N)	coldness	111
	-B-		barua	letter	46
baada	after	71	basi	nothing more	12
baada ya	after	56	~baya	bad	31
baba	father	26	-beba	to carry a child on back or hip	78
badala (N)	a substitute	113	bega (MA)	shoulder	142
-badili	to change, exchange	90R	bei	price	16
bado	not yet	25	biashara (N)	trade, commerce	112
bahari (N)	sea, ocean	60R	bibi	lady	33
bahasha (N)	envelope	103	-bichi	unripe	24
bahati (N)	luck (good or bad)	113	bichaa (N)	merchandise	103
baiskeli(N)	bicycle	44	bila shaka	undoubtedly	85
bakuli (MA)	bowl, basin	96	bilauri (N)	glass	47
balozi	consul	88	birika (MA)	pot (tea)	96
bara (N)	the hinterland, 'up-country', country (of); thus <u>Bara Hindi</u> , 'India,' <u>Bara Arabu</u> , 'Arabia.'	70R	~bivu	ripe	17
barábara	thoroughly very well	39	boma	District Office	25
barabára	road, highway	99	bonde (MA)	valley, low-lying country	100R
barafu (N)	ice	111	bora	best	108
			~bovu	bad (i.e. spoiled)	19
			bunduki (N)	gun	112

BASIC COURSE

bure	for nothing	68	-chosha	to make tired	90R
bwana	master, sir	1	-choma	to burn, apply fire to	100
	-C-		chombo	vessel. Used of utensils and ships at sea	47
-cha	to dawn	114	-chota	to take a little water/firewood	121
~chache	few	18	chumba (VI)	room	104
~chafu	dirty	90	chumvi (N)	salt	36
-chagua	to choose	124	-chungu	to care for	99
chai	tea	14	-chungu-lia	to examine carefully	125
chakula	food	8	chungwa (MA)	orange	9
chama (VI)	union, party	110R	chuo (VI)	Alone usually means 'school,' <u>chuo kikuu</u> 'college or university'	51
chandalua (VI)	mosquito net	94	chupa (N)	bottle	48
-changa	to collect	124	chweo (MA)	appears in plu. <u>machweo</u> 'sunset, west'	135
~changa	young	78			
-changa-nya	to mix	70R			
cheche (N)	a small slice	120R			
			-D-		
-chelewa	to be late	63	dada	sister	65
-chemsha	to heat	70R	dakika (N)	a minute	125
cheti (VI)	certificate	112	damu	blood	62
-cheza	to play	70	-danga-nya	to cheat, deceive	123
chini (N)	below, under	107	dansi	dance	70
-choka	to become tired	125			

SWAHILI

daraja (MA) or (N)	bridge	105	embe (MA) or (N)	mango	9
			-enda	go	23
darasa	class	51	-endelea	to continue	30
dari (N)	upper floor	104	endeleo	appears in plu. <u>maendeleo</u> 'progress'	145
dawa (N)	medicine	26	-endesha	to run (cause to go)	67
debe (MA)	a four-gallon tin	100R	-enea	to fit	86
desturi (N)	a custom, practice	73	~enyewe	-self	45
-dhani	to think	17	-epa	to avoid, escape	99
-dhuru	to harm	83	~erevu	shrewd, clever	111
dini (N)	religion	51	~eupe	white	86
dirisha (MA)	window	114	~eusi	black	81
dobi	laundryman	90			
~dogo	small	20			
				-F-	
duka (MA)	shop	60R			
			-faa	to be suitable	60
			-E-		
			-fa	to die	124
			-fagia	to sweep	115
ee	a casual way of saying 'yes'	10	-fahamu	to know, bear in mind	116
~ekundu	red	81	faida (N)	profit, advantage	90R
-elekea	to be directed toward	122	-fanana	to resemble one another	70R
-elewa	understand	21	-fanya	make, do	23
-eleza	explain	27	farasi	horse	40
-elimisha	to educate	80R	fedha (N)	money	102
elimu (N)	education	31	-ficha	to hide something	124
~embamba	narrow	100R	-fika	to arrive	80

BASIC COURSE

-fikiri	to think	47	gani?	what kind?	8
fitina (N)	jealousy, discord	111	gari la moshi	train	40
forodha (N)	customs house	135	gavana	governor	60R
foronya (N)	pillowcase	93	-gawanya	to divide up, distribute	90R
-fua	to launder	91	-geuka	to turn	101
-fuata	to follow	71	ghali	expensive	60R
fujo (MA)	disturbance	76	gharama	expense	69
-fukuza	to pursue	125	giza (sg. of MA)	darkness	48
fulana (N)	undervest	138	godoro (MA)	mattress	93
fulani	such-and-such	90R	gogo (MA)	log	105
fundi	skilled worker of any kind	44	-goma	to refuse; to strike (work)	110R
-funga	to lock	104	gugu (MA)	weed	98
-fungua	to unlock	104	~gumu	hard, difficult	69
-funika	to close	63	gunia (MA)	gunny sack	130
-funua	to open	64			
funzo (MA)	course of instruction	80R			
				-H-	
~fupi	short	120			
furaha (N)	rejoicing	70	haba	few	69
-furahi	be happy	28	habari (N)	news	1
-futa	to wipe up	43	hafifu	poor in quality	108
			haja (N)	need	131
			haki (N)	justice	68
			hakika (N)	certainty	56

-G-

SWAHILI

hali (N)	condition	59	hoja(N)	necessity	67
-hama	to move from one place to another	57	homa(N)	fever	58
Hamisi	given name (male)	12	hotuba (N)	a speech	140
hamu (N)	desire, longing	68	-hudhuria	to attend	66
hapa	here	21	huko	there	38
hapana	no	16	huo	that	20
haraka (N)	haste	49	huwa	generally	146
-haribika	to get broken	44			
-haribu	to injure	44			
harufu (N)	scent	131		-I-	
harusi(N)	wedding (see <u>arusi</u>)	80			
hasa	exactly, very much	78	idara (N)	department	31
hasara (N)	loss, damage	100R	ijapokuwa	even so, even if, although	41
hatari (N)	danger	99	ikiwa	if, whether	24
hati (N)	document	113	ila	except, unless, but	111
haya	O.K.	85	ili	in order that	70R
hazina(N)	treasury	110R	~ingi	many	18
hebu	'well, then!'	107	-ingia	to enter	48
hesabu (N)	arithmetic	51	~ingine	some, other	33
heshima (N)	respect	111	-isha	finish	24
-hitaji	we need	18	ishara(N)	signal	101
-hitimu	to finish training	65	-ishi	dwell	37
hodari	clever	33	isipokuwa	except that	126
			-ita	to call	88
			itakiwayyo	as is desired	142

BASIC COURSE

	-J-		jina (MA)	name	34
			jino	tooth (pl. meno)	61
-ja	come	27	jinsi	way, method (often	80R
-jaa	to fill up	38	(N)	used with concords of VI class)	
-jali	to give honor to	100	jioni	evening	48
-jalia	to assist, enable, show favor to, of God's will	51	-jitahidi	try hard	127
jamaa	family	29	jiwe (MA)	stone (pl. mawe)	22
(N. pers.)			-jongea	to move, make a motion	125
jambo	matter, affair, trouble (pl. mambo)	1	jozi (N)	pair	108
(MA)			jua (MA)	sun	100
jana	yesterday	36	-jua	know	16
jani (MA)	leaf	75	juhudi	effort, exertion	80R
-jaribu	to try	42	(N)		
jasho	sweat	103	-julikana	to be known	70R
(MA)			Jumamosi	Saturday	70
je	(used to introduce a yes-no question)	8	Jumatano	Wednesday	56
-je	how? how about?	19	jumba (MA)	Generally used of very large buildings, mansions (Government House or the Sultan's Palace) etc.	
jembe	hoe	74	jumla	altogether	90
(MA)			(kwa)		
-jenga	to build	110R	jumla		
jengo (MA)	building	134			
-jeruhi	to bruise, wound	62	-jumlisha	add	66
jibu (MA)	answer, reply	73	juu (N)	on, concerning, top	35
-jifunza	to study	39	juzi (MA)	day before yesterday	65
jiko (MA)	stove, oven, kitchen, cooking place (pl. meko)	42			
jimbo (MA)	province	29			

SWAHILI

	-K-		kasisi	priest	80
			kaskazini	north	21
			(N)		
-kaa	live (reside), remain	20	-kata	to cut	46
-kaanga	fry	131	kati (N)	between, among	110
kabáti	cupboard	97	katika	in	29
kabila (MA)	tribe	37	katikati	in the midst	60R
			(N)		
kabisa	quite	19	-kauka	to get dry	92
kabla	before	70R	~kavu	dry	70R
			(N)		
kadhalika	likewise, similarly	90R	kawaida (N)	custom	17
kahawa (N)	coffee	14	-kawia	to take a long time	115
kalamu (N)	pen	45	kazi (N)	work	30
~kali	sharp, fierce	122	kelele	noise	94
			(MA)		
kama	as	60R	kengele	bell	101
			(N)		
-kamata	to seize	125	kesho (N)	tomorrow	40
kama vile	for example	60R	kiasi (VI)	amount	82
kamba	rope, cord	120	kiazi (VI)	potato	18
			(N)		
kanga (N)	woman's garment	139	kibarua	day labor, one day laborer (VI anim.)	35
kanisa (MA)	church	41	kibao	a small board	135
			(VI)		
kanuni	a general rule	102	kiberiti	match	49
			(VI)		
kaptura (N)	shorts	138	kibwebwe	style of women's dress	142
			(VI)		
karatasi	paper	103	kichwa	head	25
			(VI)		
karibu (N)	near	10	kidole	finger, toe	62
			(VI)		
-kasirika	to be angry	114	kidonge	tablet	58
			(VI)		

BASIC COURSE

kifaa (VI)	a household necessity	131	kisahani (VI)	saucer, small plate	47
kifaranga (VI anim.)	chick (dim.)	100	kisasa	modern-style	87
kifaru (VI anim.)	rhino (also faru (N anim.))	122	kisemu (VI)	a small section	90R
kifua (VI)	chest	142	kisima (VI)	well, water hole	121
kifungo (VI)	button	92	kisu (VI)	knife	53
kijana (VI anim.)	young fellow	35	kitabuu	book	63
kijiji (VI)	village	22	kitambaa (VI)	cloth, material	87
kijiko (VI)	spoon	95	kitambo (VI)	early	75
kijiti (VI)	small tree, under- brush	74	kitanda (VI)	bed	93
kijito (VI)	dim. of <u>mto</u> 'river'	118	kiti (VI)	chair	43
kikapu (VI)	basket	83	kitowoo (VI)	a relish	70R
kike	femininity (see Unit 55.)	55	kitu (VI)	thing	23
kiko (VI)	pipe	116	kiturguu (VI)	onion	32
kikombe (VI)	cup	47	kiume	masculinity (See Unit 55.)	55
-kirbia	to run away	99	kiuno (VI)	waist	81
kinanda (VI)	stringed instrument, gramophone	104	kiwanja (VI)	plot of ground	90R
kinywaji (VI)	a drink	50	kizaramo	(language of the WaZaramo)	37
kiongozi (VI anim.)	leader	110R	kodi (N)	tax	25
kioo (VI)	piece of glass, mirror	115	-kohoa	to cough	60
kipande (VI)	piece	86	-kopa	to borrow	73
kipimo (VI)	measurement	86	kopo (MA)	metal vessel	131
			kosa (MA)	a mistake	64
			-kosa	to lack, err	67

SWAHILI

koti	coat	90	*kuu	big, principal	39
-kua	to grow	100	kwa	by, with, at	15
-kubali	to accept, to agree	67	kwa heri	with peace, to, with, in happiness	44
*kubwa	large	20	kwa hivyo	therefore	32
kufuli (N/MA)	padlock	104	kwamba	that, Lit. 'to say;' also 'ya kwamba'	57
kuku (N anim.)	chicken	90R	kweli	true	55
kuliko	than, Lit. 'where there is/are' used particularly in comparisons	60R	kwenye	where there is	81
				-L-	
kumbeki	(expression of surprise)	34	la	no	13
-kumbuka	to remember	46	labda	perhaps	56
kumi (MA)	ten	19	laini	soft, smooth	74
kuna	there is	8	lakini	but	15
kuni (N)	firewood	120	-lala	to sleep, lie down	114
-kunja	to fold, wrap up, crease	120R	-laza	to cause to lie	120R
-kusa- nyika	to be gathered together	110R	lázima	necessary	42
			-lazimu	to be necessary	45
kusini (N)	south	21	-lea	to rear	100
-kusudia	plan	40	-lenga	to aim	124
-kuta	to find	88	leo	today	13
-kutania	to meet one another	110R	-leta	bring	16
			-letea	to bring for/to	8
			-lewa	to become drunk	52

SWAHILI

mawaidha	advice (also, mavidha)	147	mchukuzi (WA)	porter	35
			mchumba (WA)	boy/girl friend fiancé(e)	79
mazao (MA)	crops	33	mchuzi (MI)	gravy, soup, sauce	70R
maziwa (MA)	milk	14	mdanga- nyifu (WA)	a deceiver	123
mbaazi (N)	peas	145			
mbali- mbali	various	60R	-mea	to grow	98
mbavuni	by the side	78	meza (N)	table	46
mbegu (N)	seed	75	-meza	to shoot out	75
mbele (N)	ahead	88	mfereji (MI)	ditch for carrying water	121
mbeleko (N)	cloth or sling for carrying a child	78	mganga (WA)	doctor	128
mbio (N)	speed	125	mgeni (WA)	guest	93
mboga (N)	(general word for leafy vegetables)	36	mgongo (MI)	back	76
mbolea	fertilizer	72	mgonjwa (WA)	a sick person	26
mbona?	why? Lit. 'do I observe' and should only be used when this sense fits.	58	mguu (MI)	leg, foot	53
			mia	hundred	69
			mimi	I	14
mbu (N anim.)	mosquitoes	59	mji (MI)	town	20
mbuzi (N anim.)	goat	90R	mjomba (WA)	kinship term used reciprocally by brother and son of a woman	113
mchezo (MI)	game	40	mjumbe (WA)	messenger, representative	110R
mchinjo (MI)	style of womens dress	142	mkasi (MI)	scissors	98

BASIC COURSE

mkate (MI)	bread	11	mpaka (MI)	boundary	110
mke (WA)	wife	29	mpango (MI)	plan, arrangement system	70
mkono (MI)	arm, hand	53	mpishi (WA)	a cook	34
mkono wa kulia	right hand	89	mpumbavu (WA)	a fool, dupe	123
mkono wa kushoto	left hand	88	mpunga (MI)	rice	32
mkubwa (WA)	the chief	20	msaada (MI)	assistance	67
mkuki (MI)	spear	122	mshahara (MI)	pay	31
mkulima (WA)	farmer	32	mshipa (MI)	vein, artery, nerve, tendon	62
mlango (MI)	door	62	mshono (MI)	style, cut	142
mlima (MI)	mountain	110	msitu (MI)	land covered with bushes, small trees	119
mlinaji (WA)	grower	129	mstari (MI)	line	121
mlinzi (WA)	guard	137	msumari (MI)	nail	118
mmea (MI)	plant	32	mswaki (MI)	twig used as tooth brush	115
mno	much	108	mtaa (MI)	street	138
mnunuzi (WA)	customer	85	mtama (MI)	millet	70R
mnyama (WA)	wild animal	113	mti (MI)	tree	74
~moja	one	19	mtihani (MI)	a school examination	65
moto (MI)	fire	92	mto (MI)	pillow	93
motokaa (N)	automobile	40	mto (MI)	river	110
moyo (MI)	heart	73	mtoto (WA)	child	11
mpagazi (WA)	(replaced in revised edition by <u>mchukuzi</u>)	35	mtu (WA)	person	38
mpaka	to, until	51			

SWAHILI

mtumishi (WA)	employee	127	mwenyeji (WA)	the regular possessor, inhabitant	70R
mtungi (MI)	earthen pitcher, water jar	121	mwenzi (WA)	companion	92
muda (MI)	period of time	35	mwezi (MI)	month, moon	68
muhogo (MI)	cassava	32	mwiba (MI)	thorn	98
muhuri (MI)	postmark Also 'seal.' For 'post- mark' generally <u>alma</u> <u>ya posta, chapa ya</u> <u>posta.</u>	46	mwiko (MI)	large wooden spoon	70R
mume (WA)	husband	80	mwili (MI)	body	115
Mungu	God	51	mwisho (MI)	end, last (price)	73
			mwishowe	finally	51
			mwitu (MI)	forest	110
mvua (N)	rain	32	mwundo (MI)	shape, form	107
-mwaga	to spill	43	mzazi (WA)	parent	26
-mwagika	to become spilled	43	mzungu (WA)	a European	34
mwaka (MI)	year	32			
mwaliwu (WA)	teacher	61			
mwana- chama (WA)	member	110R		-N-	
mwana- funzi (WA)	student	69	na	and	8
mwanamke	woman (pl. wanawake)	55	nafasi (N)	opportunity	56
mwana- mume	man (pl. wanaume)	55	nafuu (N)	profit, gain	76
mwananchi (WA)	citizen	141	namna (N)	kind, sort	59
			nanasi (MA)	pineapple	16
			nani?	who?	20
mwandishi (WA)	secretary	39	nauli (N)	fare	82
mwendo (MI)	journey	82	-nawa	to wash face/hands	114

BASIC COURSE

nazi (N)	coconut/coconuts	16	nini	what?	19
nchi (N)	land, country	27	njaa (N)	hunger	11
ndani (N)	inside of	93	nje (N)	outside of	89
ndege (N pers.)	bird, airplane	65	njia (N)	path	71
ndizi (N)	banana/bananas	9	njia panda	junction	88
ndoo (N)	bucket	121	njugu (N)	groundnuts	19
ndugu (N pers.)	kinsman of same generation	53	-nuka	to smell bad	116
~nene	thick, stout	122	-nukia	to smell good	116
nenno (MA)	word	63	-nung'u- nika	to complain	35
-ng'aa	to shine	92	-nunulia	buy for	26
ng'ambo (N)	on the other side	90	-nunua	buy	23
-ng'a- ng'ania	to stick to	97	nyama	meat	13
~ngapi?	how many?	36	nyasi (N pl.)	grass	98
-ng'oa	to uproot	116	nyati (N anim.)	buffalo	122
-ngoja	to wait	79	-nyesha	to rain	72
ngoma (N)	drum	70	-nyima	withhold, deprive	144
ng'ombe (N anim.)	cow, ox	13	-nyoa	to shave	115
nguo	cloth, clothes	41	-nyoka	to become straight	117
-nguruma	to rumble, roar	125	-nyonya	to suck	78
nguruwe	pig	13	nyuma (N)	after, on far side of	110
ni	is/are	17	nyumba (N)	house	22
-ni	in, at, on	23	-nywa	to drink	50
nibu (N)	nib	45			

SWAHILI

-O-			-P-		
ˆo ˆote	any at all	41	-pa	to give	60
-oa	to marry	79	-paa	scrape off	131
Ochieng	(a Luo surname)	30	pahali	dialect variant of	135
-oga	to bathe	115	(PA)	<u>mahali</u>	
-ogelea	to swim	38	-paka	to apply	103
-okota	to pick up	120	-pakulia	to divide	47
-omba	to request	103	-palilia	to weed	75
-ona	see	24	pambo	(used in original	104
-onana	to see one	98	(MA)	edition to mean	
	another			'furniture'; should	
-ondoa	to get rid of	91		be replaced by <u>fanicha</u>	
-ondoka	to leave	36	pamoja	or <u>vifaa vya nyumbani</u>)	
-onekana	to seem	59	ˆpana	together	56
-ongea	to converse	63	-panda	broad, flat	100R
-ongeza	to increase	120R	-panda	take	40
	something, to		-panda	raise	32
	add to		panga	large knife	74
			(MA)		
-ongoza	to lead, cause	110R	pasi(N)	iron (for pressing)	92
	to go right		-pasua	to split something	120
-onja	to taste, try	100	-pata	get	31
orofa(N)	story	89	-patikana	be available	24
ˆote	all	47	pato(MA)	income (appears in	141
-otesha	raise	32		plu. <u>mapato</u>)	
ovyoy	at random,	111	peke	solitude	47
	carelessly		-peleka	take	33
			-penda	like, love	31
			pengine	sometimes	17
			pesa(N)	coins	49

BASIC COURSE

~pi?	which?	47			
				-R-	
pia	also, too	28			
-piga	to hit, strike	58	rafiki	friend	14
			(N pers.)		
-pika	to cook	70R	rafu (N)	shelf	104
pikipiki (N)	motorcycle	133	raha (N)	rest, comfort	100R
			rahisi	cheap	84
pilipili (N)	pepper	36	rangi (N)	color	86
-pima	to measure	77	-raruka	to get torn	87
-pinda	to bend	117	ratli (N)	1 lb.	132
-pita	to pass	71	~refu	long, tall	82
~pole	kind, gentle	60	risasi (N)	bullet	122
-pokea	to accept	80R	robo (N)	1/4	72
pombe (N)	beer	52	roho or tamaa (N)	spirit	46
-pona	recover from illness or injury	62	-rudi	to return	56
-ponda	to crush by pounding	70R	-rudishwa	to be caused to return	57
-poteza	to lose	46	-ruhusu	to allow	99
povu (MA)	froth, lather, suds	120R	-ruka	to fly, jump	65
pua (N)	nose	61			
-pumzika	to rest	77			
-punga hewa	to change air	38		-S-	
-punguza	to make less	83	saa (N)	hour	36
pwani	beach	38	sababu (N)	reason	41
~pya	new	40	sabuni (N)	soap	91
			-sadiki	to believe	123

SWAHILI

safari (N)	journey	122	-shangi- lia	to make rejoicing for	80
safi	clean	41	sheria (N)	law	101
-safiri	to travel	65	shida (N)	difficulty	106
-saga	to pulverize	70R	-shika	grasp, take	84
sahani (N)	plate	47	shilingi (N)	shilling	68
-sahau	to forget	95	shimo (MA)	pit, hole	119
-saidia	help	31	-shinda	spend the day	40
salama (N)	with peace	28	-shinda	to surpass, overcome	80R
-salimia	to convey regards to	60	shingo (N)	neck	61
samaki (N anim.)	fish	13	shoka (MA)	axe	120
sana	very much	15	-shtaki	to accuse, prosecute	112
sanduku (N or MA)	box	49	shughuli (N)	business	60R
sasa	now	13	-shughu- lika	be busy	60
sauti (N)	voice	125	shuka (N)	sheet	93
sawa	like	61	-shuka	to disembark	82
sawa-sawa	equally, just the same	124	-shukuru	thank	134
sehemu (N)	section	37	shule (N)	school	25
-sema	speak, say	30	si	is not/are not	17
senti (N)	cent (E. African), small change	19	siafu (N anim.)	'driver ants' (kind of red ant)	119
serikali (N)	government	27	siagi (N)	butter	15
shabaha (N)	target	124			
shamba (MA)	farm	71			

BASIC COURSE

sifa (N)	praise, reputation	100R	sufuria	a metal cooking pot	120R
-sifu	to praise	70R	(N or MA)		
sijambo	I do not have trouble	1	-sugua	to polish	92
-sikia	hear	37	sukari	sugar	14
-sikiliza	to listen	101, 124	(N)		
-sikitika	to be sorry	58	-sukuma	to push along	44
siku (N)	day	28	-sumbua	to annoy	94
-simama	to stand up	80	supu(N)	soup	13
-simamia	to stand by, oversee	80R	sura (N)	appearance	135
			suruali	pair of trousers	86
			(N)		
			-T-		
simba (N anim.)	lion	122	taa(N)	a light	48
simu (N)	telephone, telegraph	81	taabu (N)	trouble, toil	110R
sindano (N)	needle	58	tabibu	doctor	61
sinema (N)	cinema	70	(daktari)		
sita	six	36	tafadhali	please, I ask you	8
siyo	(negative of ndio)	19	-tafuta	to look for	46
-sogeza	to bring near	96	tajiri	rich	138
soko (MA)	market	23	-taka	want	8
soli (N)	sole	108	~tamu	sweet, pleasant	70R
-soma	to read, study	51	-tandika	to spread	93
somo (MA)	an academic subject	51	tangu	since	69
starehe (N)	welfare, comfort	10	-tangulia	to lead	71
-stiri	to conceal	140	~tano	five	24
			-tarajia	to expect	133

SWAHILI

tarehe (N)	date	122	tokeo (MA)	results (appears in plu. <u>matokee</u>)	136
-tawanya	to scatter	90R	-tolewa	to be put out, be taken out, produced	67
tayari	ready	24	tope (MA)	mud, mire	118
-tazama	look at	26	-toroka	to run away	124
-tegemea	depend	127	-tosha	be sufficient	15
-teka	to draw water	121	-toza	make to pay	127
-telemka	to descend	119	tu	only	12
-teleza	cause to come down; be slippery	118	-tuma	to send	65
-tembea	to go for a walk	38	-tumaini	to hope	51
-tembelea	to visit	95	-tumbuka	to have a cut or hole made in	116
tembo (N anim.)	elephant	122	-tumia	to use	14
tena	again	37	-tumwa	be sent	27
-tengen- eza	to repair	44	tunda (MA)	a piece of fruit	8
thamani (N)	price, value	127	-tundika	to hang up, suspend	120R
thumni (N)	50¢ piece	90	tundu (N or MA)	nest, hole	119
-tia	pour	48	-tunza	to care for	77
-tii	to obey	100	tunzo (MA)	care	77
-toa	to take away	42	-twa	to set (of the sun)	80
-toboa	to bore a hole in	121	twiga (N anim.)	giraffe	125
tofauti (N)	difference, discrepancy	90R		-U-	
-toka	come from, go from	27	-ua	to kill	125
			ua (MA)	flower	98

ua (U)	hedge, yard	98	-ungua	to burn	42
ubao (U-N)	blackboard, board, plank	64	upande (U)	direction	21
udevu (U-N)	a hair of the face	115	upes (U)	quickly	87
udongo	mud	22	upishi (U)	work or status of a cook	34
ufunguo (U-N)	key	104	urefu (U)	length	86
ugali (U)	stiff porridge	70R	usaha (U)	pus	62
ugonjwa (U)	illness	59	ushuru (U)	tax, duty	140
uji (U)	porridge	8	usingizi (U)	sleep	94
ujinga (U)	ignorance	146	uso (U-N)	face	114
ukarani (U)	the work or status of being a clerk	31	utetezi (U)	politics	51
			~vuguvugu	lukewarm	91
ukurasa (U - N)	page	63	-uza	sell	19
Ulaya (U)	Europe	65		-V-	
-uliza	to ask	93			
uma (U-N)	rake, fork (gardening)	74	-vaa	to put on clothes	41
umaskini (U)	poverty	123	vazi (MA)	garment	142
umbali (U)	distance	137	vile-vile	also	60R
-umia	be hurt	53	-vimba	swell	62
umri (U)	age	55	vita (VI)	war	146
unga (U)	flour, meal	70R			
-unga	to join	80	~vivu	lazy	111

SWAHILI

-vua	to fish	113	wembe (U-N)	razor	115
-vunjika	to become broken	45	wewe	you	32
-vuja	to leak	121	-weza	to be able	44
-vuka	to pass safely over	118	wiki (N)	week	80
vumbi (N)	dust	115	wilaya (N)	district, province	90R
			-winda	to hunt (game)	112
	-W-		wino (U)	ink	45
			wivu (U)	jealousy, envy	111
-wa	be	36			
-wahi	be in time, be ready	126		-Y-	
wakati (U-N)	time, occasion	52	ya kwamba	that...	65
-wala	neither, nor	76	yaani	that is to say	80R
wali (U)	cooked rice	70R	yai (MA)	egg	8
wanga(U)	starch	91	yeye	he	29
wapi?	where?	20			
-washa	to ignite	48		-Z-	
wasiwasi(U)	doubt	73			
wazi	open, evident	100R	-zaa	bear (fruit, seed)	77
wazo	thoughts - appears in plu. mawazo	140	zaidi	many	69
			zamani	time, ancient times	80R
wee	you	133	-zidi	to increase	69
-weka	to put	46	~zima	good (i.e. not rotten)	19

~zito	heavy	81
-zoea	to become familiar with	90R
zoea	habit - appears in plu. <u>mazoea</u>	137
-zua	to prevent	79
-zunguka	to go around and around	100R
-zungumza	to converse	146
~zuri	good	17